MISSING PAGE I TO IV, IN BOOK

By His Majesty's Command

2548

Adjutant General's Office,
June 1, 1792.

RULES AND REGULATIONS

FOR THE

RMATIONS, FIELD-EXERCISE,

AND

MOVEMENTS,

OF

HIS MAJESTY'S FORCES.

WAR-OFFICE, PRINTED;
AND SOLD BY
ALTER, AT HOMER'S HEAD, CHARING-CROSS.
MDCCXCV.

[*Price Six Shillings, in Boards.*]

☞ ENTERED AT STATIONERS HALL.

Adjutant General's Office,
1st June, 1792.

HIS MAJESTY thinking it highly expedient and neceſſary, for the benefit of his ſervice at large, that one uniform ſyſtem of field-exercise and movement, founded on juſt and true principles, ſhould be eſtabliſhed, and invariably practiſed, throughout his whole army, is therefore pleaſed to direct, that the rules and regulations approved of by his MAJESTY for this important purpoſe, and now detailed and publiſhed herewith, ſhall be ſtrictly followed and adhered to, without any deviation whatſoever therefrom:—And ſuch orders before given, as may be found to interfere with, or counteract, their effect and operation, are to be conſidered as hereby cancelled and annulled. It is his MAJESTY's farther pleaſure, that the General Officers appointed to review his troops ſhall be inſtructed to pay particular attention to the performance of every part of theſe Regulations, and to report their obſervations

a there-

thereupon, for his MAJESTY's information, so that the exact uniformity required in all movements may be attained and preserved, and his Royal intentions thereby carried into full effect.

BY HIS MAJESTY'S COMMAND,

WILLIAM FAWCETT,

ADJUTANT GENERAL.

2548.

RULES AND REGULATIONS

FOR THE

FORMATION, FIELD EXERCISE,

AND

MOVEMENTS,

OF

HIS MAJESTY'S FORCES.

THE great object in view, from the following regulations, is to establish one general and just system of movement, which directing and governing the operations of great, as well as of small bodies of troops, is to be rigidly conformed to and practised by every regiment in HIS MAJESTY'S service.

To attain this important purpoſe, it is neceſſary to reconcile celerity with order; to prevent hurry, which muſt always produce confuſion, loſs of time, unſteadineſs, irreſolution, inattention to command, &c.; to enſure preciſion and correctneſs, by which alone great bodies will be able to arrive at their object in good order, and in the ſhorteſt ſpace of time; to inculcate and enforce the neceſſity of military dependance, and of mutual ſupport in action, which are the great ends of diſcipline; to ſimplify the execution, and to abridge the variety of movements, as much as poſſible, by adopting ſuch only as are neceſſary for combined exertions in corps, and that can be required or applied in ſervice, regarding all matters of parade and ſhow merely as ſecondary objects; to aſcertain to all ranks the part each will have to act in every change of ſituation that can happen, ſo that explanation may not retard at the moment when execution ſhould take place; to enable the commanding officer of any body of troops, whether great or ſmall, to retain the whole relatively as it were in his hand and management, at every inſtant, ſo as to be capable of reſtraining the bad effects of ſuch ideas of independant and individual exertion as are viſionary and hurtful, and of directing them to their true and proper objects, thoſe of order, of combined effort, and of regulated obedience, by the united force of all which a well-diſciplined enemy can only be defeated.

The

The rules hereafter laid down will be found few, ſimple, and adapted to the underſtanding and comprehenſion of every individual; but they will require perfect attention in all ranks.—In the ſoldier an equal and cadenced march, acquired and confirmed by habit, independant of muſic or ſound.—In the officer preciſion and energy of command; the preſervation of juſt diſtances; and the accurate leading of diviſions on given points of march and formation. Theſe circumſtances, together with the united exertions of all, will ſoon attain that preciſion of movement which is ſo eſſential, and without which valour alone will not avail.

Theſe REGULATIONS are divided into PARTS, and each part ſub-divided into HEADS, and *Sections* of explantion.

PART I. OF THE DRILL OR INSTRUCTION OF THE RECRUIT.——The ſeveral articles of Inſtruction, and the progreſſion and manner in which they are to be taught, are explained in 40 *Sections.*

PART II. OF THE PLATOON OR COMPANY.——The Inſtruction, and various operations of the company which enable it to act in battalion, are explained in 265 *Sections.*

PART

PART III. OF THE BATTALION.——The ſeveral operations, changes of poſition, and movements neceſſary for the battalion, when acting ſingly, or in line with others, are explained in 108 *Sections*.

PART IV. OF THE LINE.——The principal circumſtances relative to the movements of a conſiderable line are explained in 32 *Sections*.

CONTENTS.

CONTENTS.

RECRUIT.

Without Arms.

	Sect.		Page
Each Recruit separately instructed.	1.	*Position of the soldier*	3
	2.	*Standing at ease*	4
	3.	*Turning eyes*	5
	4.	*The facings*	5
	5.	*Position in marching*	7
	6.	*Ordinary step*	7
	7.	*The halt*	8
	8.	*Oblique step*	9
Three or four Recruits formed at open files.	9.	*Dressing when halted*	10
	10.	*Stepping out*	12
	11.	*Mark time*	13
	12.	*Stepping short*	13
	13.	*Changing the feet*	14
	14.	*The side or closing step*	14
	15.	*Back step*	15
	16.	*The quick step*	16

17. *The*

	Sect.	Page
Six or eight Recruits in one rank, at close files.	17. *The quickest step* — —	17
	18. *File marching* — —	19
	19. *Wheeling a single rank from the halt*	20
	20. *Wheeling a single rank from the march*	21
	21. *Wheeling a single rank backward*	22
	22. *Wheeling a single rank on a moveable pivot*	23

With Arms.

Each Recruit.	23. *Position of the soldier* —	25
	24. *Different motions of the firelock*	26
Six or Eight Files of Recruits in a Squad.	25. *Attention in forming the squad*	27
	26. *Open order* — —	28
	27. *Close order* — —	28
	28. *Manual order* — —	29
	29. *Platoon exercise* — —	29
	30. *Firings* — —	29
	31. *Marching to the front and rear*	30
	32. *Open and close order on the march*	32
	33. *March in file to a flank* —	33
	34. *Wheeling in file* — —	34
	35. *Oblique marching in front* —	35
	36. *Oblique marching in file* —	36
	37. *Wheeling forward from the halt*	37
	38. *Wheeling backward* —	37
	39. *Wheeling from the march on a halted and moveable pivot* —	38
	40. *Stepping out, stepping short, mark time, changing feet, the side step, stepping back*	38

End of First Part.

PLATOON

Platoon or Company.

Sect.		Page
41.	*Formation of the Platoon* — —	41
42.	*Marching to the front* — —	43
43.	*The side step* — —	45
44.	*The back step* — —	46
45.	*File marching* — —	47
46.	*Wheeling from a halt* — —	47
47.	*Wheeling forward by sub-divisions from line*	48
48.	*Wheeling backward by sub-divisions from line*	49
49.	*Marching on an alignement in open column of sub-divisions* — —	50
50.	*Wheeling into line from open column of sub-divisions*	51
51.	*Sub-divisions wheeling into a new alignement*	53
52.	*Sub-divisions wheeling into a new direction on a moveable pivot* — —	55
53.	*Counter-march by files* — —	56
54.	*Wheeling on the center of the platoon*	58
55.	*Oblique marching* — —	59
56.	*Increasing and diminishing the front of an open column halted* — —	59
57.	*Increasing and diminishing on the march*	51
58.	*Sub-divisions pass a defile, by breaking off files*	63
59.	*Marching in quick time* — —	65
60.	*Forming to the front from file* —	65
61.	*Forming from file to either flank* —	67
62.	*To form either flank from column of sub-divisions*	68
63.	*March in echellon by sections* —	69
64.	*From three ranks, forming in two ranks*	71
65.	*From two ranks, forming into three ranks*	72
66. 67. 68. 69.	*Exercise of the company* — —	73

End of Second Part.

PART

PART THIRD.

BATTALION.

Sect.		Page
	FORMATION OF THE COMPANY —	78
70.	*Company to take open order from close order*	80
71.	*Company to take close order from open order*	81
	FORMATION OF THE BATTALION —	82
72.	*Battalion to take open order* — —	86
73.	*Battalion to resume close order* —	88
	GENERAL CIRCUMSTANCES OF MOVEMENT	90
74.	*Commands* — —	90
75.	*Distance of files* — —	92
76.	*Distance of ranks* — —	94
77.	*Depth of formation* — —	95
78.	*Music and drums* — —	96
79.	*Marching* — —	97
80.	*Wheeling* — —	99
81.	*Movements* — —	106
82.	*Points of march* — —	108
83.	*The alignement* — —	109
84.	*Points of formation* — —	110
85.	*Dressing* — —	113
	OPEN COLUMN — —	116
	BATTALION OPEN COLUMN —	118
	ASSEMBLY, &c. OF THE BATTALION	128
86.	*Exercise of the battalion* —	129
	BATTALION STANDING IN OPEN COLUMN	130
	DIMINISH OR ENCREASE FRONT OF COLUMN	137
87.	*Diminish* } *On the march* —	139
88.	*Encrease* } *On the march* —	140
89.	*Diminish* } *When halted* —	142
90.	*Encrease* } *When halted* —	143

PASSAGE

Sect. Page

PASSAGE OF BRIDGE OR DEFILE FROM LINE — — 144

91. *To the front* — — 144
92. *To the rear* — — 146
93. *Marching off in column from one flank towards another* — 147

94. MARCH OF THE BATTALION IN FILE 149

95. *General formations from file* — 150
96. *Formation in open column from file* 151

COUNTER-MARCH BY FILES — 153

97. } *Counter-march* { *from both flanks* — 154
98. } *Counter-march* { *from the center* — 155
99. *Counter-march by divisions* — 156

COUNTER-MARCH IN COLUMN — 158

100. *Divisions by files* — — 158
101. *The column by divisions from the rear* 160
102. *By wings standing, and exchanging ground* 162
103. *By wings passing through each other* 163

GENERAL CHANGES OF POSITION 164

104. *The several changes of position of a battalion* 167
105. *The several entries on a new line in open column* 170

WHEEL AND MARCH FROM LINE INTO COLUMN, AND FROM COLUMN INTO LINE — — 175

106. } *Wheel forward into open line* — { 175
107. } — { 177
108. } *Wheel back into open column* — { 178
109. } — { 179

Sect.		Page
110.	*Wheel into column of sub-divisions* —	179
111.	*March in prolongation of the line* —	180
112. 113.	*Change of direction on a movable pivot*	181
114.	*Wheel on a halted pivot into an alignement*	182
115. 116. 117.	*Wheel of open column into an alignement*	182, 185, 186
118.	*Halt, and wheel up of column into line*	187
119.	*Wheel of sub-division column into line*	191

CHANGES OF POSITION IN OPEN COLUMN FROM LINE — — 192

Sect.		Page
120.	*On a flank halted division* { *to the front*	193
121.	*to the rear*	195
122.	*On a central division halted* —	197
123.	*To a distant position, by filing divisions*	199
124.	*When the open column arrives where its head is to remain* —	202
125.	*When the open column arrives where its rear is to remain* —	204
126.	*When the open column arrives where a central division is to remain*	205
127.	*When the open column enters the new line by the echellon march* —	207
128.	*When the divisions of the open column pass each other to form on the line.*	208
129.	*When the open column forms in line by the eventail movement.*	209

CHANGES OF POSITION OF THE OPEN COLUMN — — 211

Sect.		Page
130.	*Change of position halted on a front division*	211
131.	*Change of position halted on a central division*	212
132.	*Change of position halted on a rear division*	212

133. *Change*

Sect.		Page
133. 134. 135.	*Change to a distant position* { *In front* / *In rear* / *To either flank.*	213 / 214 / 214
136.	*Formation to flank not the pivot one*	215
	CLOSE COLUMN — . —	216
	FORMATION OF CLOSE COLUMN FROM LINE.	218
137.	*Before or behind a flank company*	218
138.	*On a central company* —	219
139.	*March of column to a flank* —	221
140.	*March of column to the front* —	222
141.	*The column halted, takes a new direction*	222
142.	*The column marching, changes direction*	223
143.	*Counter-march in close column* —	224
	DEPLOYMENT INTO LINE. —	225
	CLOSE COLUMN OF COMPANIES DEPLOYS	227
144.	*On the front* } *division* — —	227
145.	*On the rear* } *division* — —	229
146.	*On a central* } *division* — —	231
147.	*Column of companies, forms column of two companies* —	232
	DEPLOYS — —	234
148.	*On the front* } *division* — —	234
149.	*On the rear* } *division* —	235
150.	*On a central* } *division* — —	236
	OBLIQUE DEPLOYMENTS —	237
151.	*On an oblique line* { *advanced*	238
152.	*On an oblique line* { *retired*	239

 153. *Formation*

Sect. Page

153. *Formation of the line in the prolongation of the flank of the column, and on any division* — — 240

ECHELLON — — 241

CHANGES OF POSITION BY COMPANY ECHELLONS — — 245

154. *Wheel of battalion into echellon* 246
155. *March and halt into echellon* — 248
156. *Wheel back into parallel line* — 250
157. *March up into oblique line.* — 251
158. *Formation in line from open column by the echellon march* — 253
159. *The battalion thrown forward on a flank company* 255
160. *The battalion thrown backward on a flank company* 258
161. *Change of position, on a central company* 260
162. *Change of position, on a distant point* 262
163. *March of direct echellon to the front and formation in line.* — 263

ECHELLON CHANGES BY SUB DIVISIONS 264

164. *If the battalion is halted* — 265
165. *If the battalion is marching in line* 268

MARCH OF THE BATTALION IN LINE 270

166. *When the battalion advances* 272
167. *When the battalion dresses* — 278
168. *When the battalion retires* — 281
169. *Changes of direction when in movement* 283

PASSAGE OF OBSTACLE — 286

170. *When front of obstacle is considerable* 287

Sect.		Page
171.	*When the obstacle encreases* —	288
172.	*When the obstacle is passed, or diminishes*	289
173.	*When the battalion fires in passing*	291
174.	*Passing the obstacle by files* —	292
175.	*Passing a wood by companies filing*	294
	Passing through another battalion	295
176.	*Retiring by alternate companies*	298
177.	*Advancing or retiring by half battalions, and firing*	299
178.	*When the battalion forms a square or oblong*	301
	March by a face —	302
	March by an angle —	303
	Oblong formed from open column of march	306
	March in open ground, prepared against cavalry	306

End of Third Part.

Inspection or review	310
Light infantry —	332

THE LINE.

Sect. Page

MOVEMENTS OF A LINE — 344

OPEN COLUMN OF THE LINE 349

GENERAL CHANGES OF POSITION OF A LINE 351

179. *Taking up lines of march and formation* 356
180. *Open column, enters, marches, forms on an alignement* — 359
181. *Formation in line, on detached adjutants from column, or assembly in mass of battalions* — 366
182. *Entry and formation of the rear battalions of a column, on an alignement, when the head ones have halted on it* 371
183. *Changes of position* { *On a fixed flank division* 373
184. *On a fixed central division* 374
185. *On a moving central division* — 375 }
186. *Change of position, by the vourff, or quick movement* — — 377

CLOSE COLUMN OF THE LINE 380

187. *From column of march, to form close column, and line* — 382
188. *Oblique deployments* — 386
189. *When battalion close column forms square* 388
190. *Several close columns, formed from the same line* 390
191. *Several close columns form in one line* 390
192. *Two columns exchange places* 391
193. *Two columns form in one line* 392
194. *Two columns form in two lines* 393

ECHELLON

Sect. Page

ECHELLON MOVEMENTS OF THE LINE 394

195. *Oblique position taken by the echellon march* 396
196. *When from an advance in echellon, the line changes position inwards* 397
197. *When echellons advance direct from flank of line to the front* — 398
198. *When a line formed on enemy's flank, attacks in echellon* — 400
199. *When a line formed oblique to an enemy, attacks from a flank* — 401
200. *Echellon taken from Parallel / Oblique / Column Position* 403
Change of leading flank during echellon movement — — 405

MARCH OF THE LINE IN FRONT 406

201. *Advance in line* — 408
202. *Halt, and dressing of the line* 415
203. *Retire in line* — — 418
Lengthening the line to a flank 421
204. *When a line passes a bridge or defile* 422
205. *When a line advances or retires by half battalions* 423
206. *Firing in line* — — 425
207. *Square or oblong of several battalions* 427

CHEQUERED RETREAT OF THE LINE 429

Oblique position taken — — 431
Retreat of two lines — — 433

PASSAGE OF LINES — — 434

When the second line advances to relieve the first 434
When the second line remains posted — 435

When

Sect.		Page
	When a height is to be crowned	436
	When a wing is thrown back —	437
	When a wing is refused —	437
	SECOND LINES — —	438
208.	*Two lines change position on a central point of the first* — —	442
209.	*Two lines change position forward on a flank of the first*	444
210.	*Two lines change position backward on a flank of the first*	445
211.	*Two lines in march change to a flank position forward by an alteration of their direction.*	446
	Two lines in march change to a flank position backward by an alteration of their direction.	447
	COLUMN OF ROUTE —	448
	General Remarks — —	455

End of Fourth Part.

PART I.

INSTRUCTION OF THE RECRUIT.

THE ſeveral heads of inſtruction for recruits are to be attended to, and followed, in the manner and order here ſet forth. It requires in the inſtructors to whom this duty is intruſted, and who are to be anſwerable for the execution of it, the moſt unremitting perſeverance, and accurate knowledge of the part each has to teach, and a clear and conciſe manner of conveying his inſtructions; but with a firmneſs that will command from men a perfect attention to the directions he is giving them.—He muſt allow for the weak capacity of the recruit; be patient, not rigorous, where endeavour and good-will are evidently not wanting: quickneſs is not at firſt to be required, it is the reſult of much practice. If officers and inſtructors are not critically exact in their own commands, and in obſerving the execution of what is required from others, ſlovenlineſs muſt take place, labour be ineffectual, and the end propoſed will never be attained.

The recruit muſt be carried on progreſſively; he ſhould comprehend one thing before he proceeds to another.—In the firſt circumſtances of poſition, firelock, fingers, elbows, &c. are to be juſtly placed by the inſtructor; when recruits are more advanced, they ſhould not be touched; but from the example ſhewn, and the directions preſcribed, be taught to correct themſelves when ſo admoniſhed. Recruits ſhould not be kept too long at any particular part of their exerciſe, ſo as to fatigue or make them uneaſy; and marching without arms ſhould be much intermixed with the firelock inſtruction,—fife, or muſic, muſt on no account be uſed; but the recruit is to be confirmed by habit alone in that cadence of ſtep which he is afterwards to maintain in his march to the enemy, in ſpite of every variety of noiſe and circumſtance, that may tend to derange him.

In the manner hereafter preſcribed, muſt each recruit be trained ſingly, and in ſquad; nor until he is ſteadied in theſe, and in other points of his duty, is he to be allowed to join the battalion; for one aukward man, imperfect in his march, or whoſe perſon is diſtorted, will derange his diviſion, and of courſe operate on the battalion and line, in a ſtill more conſequential manner.—Every ſoldier on his return from long abſence, muſt be redrilled before he is permitted to act in the ranks of his company.

Remarks upon the neceſſity, utility, or application, of what is hereafter preſcribed, are as much as poſſible avoided in the firſt and ſecond parts: ſuch remarks properly belong to the third, or battalion part, with the principles of whoſe movements it muſt be ſuppoſed an inſtructor is ſufficiently acquainted.

WITH-

WITHOUT ARMS.

S. 1. *Position of the Soldier.*

THE equal squareness of the shoulders and body to the front is the first and great principle of the position of a soldier.—The heels must be in a line, and closed.—The knees straight, without stiffness.—The toes a little turned out, so that the feet may form an angle of about 60 degrees.—Let the arms hang near the body, but not stiff, the flat part of the hand and little finger touching the thigh; the thumbs as far back as the seams of the breeches;—The elbows and shoulders to be kept back; the belly rather drawn in, and the breast advanced, but without constraint; the body upright, but inclining forward, so that the weight of it principally bears on the fore part of the feet; the head to be erect, and neither turned to the right nor left.

The position in which a soldier should move, determines that in which he should stand still.—Too many methods cannot be used to supple the recruit, and banish the air of the rustic. But that excess of setting up, which stiffens the person and tends to throw the body backward instead of forward, is contrary to every true principle of movement, and must therefore be most carefully avoided.

N. B. The words on the margin, which are printed in *Italicks*, are the words of command to be given by the instructor.

S. 2. *Standing at Eaſe.*

Stand at Eaſe. — On the words *Stand at Eaſe*, the right foot is to be drawn back about ſix inches, and the greateſt part of the weight of the body brought upon it; the left knee a little bent; the hands brought together before the body; but the ſhoulders to be kept back and ſquare; the head to the front, and the whole attitude without conſtraint.

Attention. — On the word *Attention*, the hands are to fall ſmartly down the outſide of the thighs; the right heel to be brought up in a line with the left; and the proper unconſtrained poſition of a ſoldier immediately reſumed.

When ſtanding at eaſe for any conſiderable time in cold weather, the men may be permitted, by command, to move their limbs; but without quitting their ground, ſo that upon the word *Attention*, no one ſhall have materially loſt his dreſſing in the line.

S. 3. *Eyes to the Right.*

Eyes Right. *Eyes Left.* *Eyes Front.*	On the words, *Eyes to the Right*, glance the eyes to the right, with the ſlighteſt turn poſſible of the head. At the words, *Eyes to the Left*, caſt the eyes in like manner to the left. On the words, *Eyes to the Front*, the look, and head, are to be directly to the front, the habitual poſition of the ſoldier.

Theſe motions are only uſeful on the wheeling of diviſions, or when dreſſing is ordered after a halt; and particular attention muſt be paid in the ſeveral turnings of the eyes, to prevent the ſoldier from moving his body, which ſhould be preſerved perfectly ſquare to the front.

S. 4. *The Facings.*

In going through the facings, the left heel never quits the ground; the body muſt rather incline forward, and the knees be kept ſtraight.

To the Right face.	1ſt. Place the hollow of the right foot ſmartly againſt the left heel, keeping the ſhoulders ſquare to the front. 2d. Raiſe the toes, and turn to the right on both heels.

To the Left face.	1ſt. Place the right heel againſt the hollow of the left foot, keeping the ſhoulders ſquare to the front. 2d. Raiſe the toes, and turn to the left on both heels.
To the Right about face.	1ſt. Place the ball of the right toe againſt the left heel, keeping the ſhoulders ſquare to the front. 2d. Raiſe the toes, and turn to the right about on both heels. 3d. Bring the right foot ſmartly back in a line with the left.
To the Left about face.	1ſt. Place the right heel againſt the ball of the left foot, keeping the ſhoulders ſquare to the front. 2d. Raiſe the toes, and turn to the left about on both heels. 3d. Bring up the right ſmartly in a line with the left.

The greateſt preciſion muſt be obſerved in theſe facings, for if they are not exactly executed, a body of men, after being properly dreſſed, will loſe their dreſſing, on every ſmall movement of facing.

S. 5. *Position in Marching.*

March. In marching, the ſoldier muſt maintain, as much as poſſible, the poſition of the body as directed in Sect. 1. He muſt be well balanced on his limbs. His arms and hands, without ſtiffneſs, muſt be kept ſteady by his ſides, and not ſuffered to vibrate. He muſt not be allowed to ſtoop forward, ſtill leſs to lean back. His body muſt be kept ſquare to the front, and thrown rather more forward in marching than when halted, that it may accompany the movement of the leg and thigh, which movement muſt ſpring from the haunch. The ham muſt be ſtretched, but without ſtiffening the knee. The toe a little pointed, and kept near the ground, ſo that the ſhoe-ſoles may not be viſible to a perſon in front. The head to be kept well up, ſtraight to the front, and the eyes not ſuffered to be caſt down. The foot, without being drawn back, muſt be placed flat on the ground.

S. 6. *Ordinary Step.*

The length of each pace, from heel to heel, is 30 inches, and the recruit muſt be taught to take 75 of theſe ſteps in a minute, without tottering, and with perfect ſteadineſs.

The *ordinary* ſtep being the pace on all occaſions whatever, unleſs greater celerity be particularly ordered, the recruit muſt be carefully trained, and thoroughly inſtructed in this moſt eſſential part of his duty, and perfectly made to underſtand, that he is to maintain it for a long period of time together, both in line and in column, and in rough as well as ſmooth ground, which he may be required to march over. This is the ſloweſt ſtep which a recruit is taught, and is alſo applied in all movements of parade.

S. 7. *The Halt.*

Halt. On the word *Halt*, let the rear foot be brought upon a line with the advanced one, ſo as to finiſh the ſtep which was taking when the command was given.

N. B. The words *Halt*, *wheel—Halt*, *front—Halt*, *dreſs*—are each to be conſidered as one word of command, and no pauſe made betwixt the parts of their execution.

S. 8. *Oblique Step.*

When the recruit has acquired the regular length and cadence of the ordinary pace, he is to be taught the oblique ſtep. At the words, *To the Left, Oblique —March*, without altering his perſonal ſquareneſs of poſition, he will, when he is to ſtep with his left foot, point, and carry it forward 19 inches in the diagonal line, to the left, which gives about 13 inches to the ſide, and about 13 inches to the front. On the word *Two*, he will bring his right foot 30 inches forward, ſo that the right heel be placed 13 inches directly before the left one. In this poſition he will pauſe, and on the word *Two*, continue to march, as before directed, by advancing his left foot 19 inches, pauſing at each ſtep till confirmed in his poſition; it being eſſentially neceſſary to take the greateſt care that his ſhoulders be preſerved ſquare to the front. From the combination of theſe two movements, the general obliquity gained will amount to an angle of about 25 degrees. When the recruit is habituated to the lengths and directions of the ſtep, he muſt be made to continue the march, without pauſing, with firmneſs, and in the cadence of the ordinary pace, viz. 75 ſteps in the minute.

To the Left, Oblique March.

Fig. 1.

As

As all marching (the ſide-ſtep excepted) invariably begins with the left foot, whether the obliquing commences from the halt, or on the march, the firſt diagonal ſtep taken is by the leading foot of the ſide inclined to, when it comes to its turn, after the command is pronounced.

The ſquareneſs of the perſon, and the habitual cadenced ſtep, in conſequence, are the great directions of the oblique, as well as of the direct, march.

Each recruit ſhould be ſeparately and carefully inſtructed in the principles of the foregoing eight ſections of the drill. They form the baſis of all military movements.

Three or four recruits will now be formed in one rank, at very open files, and inſtructed as follows.

S. 9. *Dreſſing when halted.*

Dreſs. Dreſſing is to be taught equally by the left as by the right. On the word *Dreſs*, each individual will caſt his eyes to the point to which he is ordered to dreſs, with the ſmalleſt turn poſſible of the head, but preſerving the ſhoulders and body ſquare to their front. The whole perſon of the man muſt move as may be neceſſary, and bending backward or forward is not to be permitted. He muſt take ſhort quick ſteps, thereby gradually and exactly to gain his poſition, and on no account be ſuffered to attempt it by any ſudden or violent alteration, which

must infallibly derange whatever is beyond him. The faces of the men, and not their breasts or feet, are the line of dressing. Each man is to be able just to distinguish the lower part of the face of the second man beyond him.

In dressing, the eyes of the men are always turned to the officer, who gives the word *Dress*; and who is posted at the point by which the body halts; and who from that point corrects his men, on a point at or beyond his opposite flank.

The faults to be avoided, and generally committed by the soldier in dressing, are, passing the line; the head too forward, and body kept back; the shoulders not square; the head turned too much.

Two, or more men, being moved forward, or backward, a given number of paces, and placed in the new line, and direction, the following commands will be given.

By the *Right*, *forward—Dress*.
By the *Right*, *backward—Dress*.
By the *Left*, *forward—Dress*.
By the *Left*, *backward—Dress*.

Eyes front. As soon as the dressing is accomplished, the words *Eyes front*, will be given, that heads may be replaced, and remain square to the front.

No rank, or body, ought ever to be dressed, without the person on its flank appointed to dress it, determining, or at least supposing a line, on which the rank, or body, is to be formed, and for that purpose taking as his object the distant flank man, or a point beyond such flank, or a man thrown out

on

on purpoſe;—dreſſing muſt then be made gradually, and progreſſively, from the fixed point, towards the diſtant flank one; and each man ſucceſſively, but quickly, muſt be brought up into the true line, ſo as to become a new point, from whence the perſon directing proceeds in the correction of the others; and he himſelf, when ſo directing, muſt take care that his perſon, or his eyes at leaſt, be in the true line, which he is then giving.

S. 10. *Stepping out.*

Step out. — The ſquad marches as already directed in ordinary time. On the words *Step out*, the recruit muſt be taught to lengthen his ſtep to 33 inches, by leaning forward a little, but without altering the cadence.

This ſtep is neceſſary when a temporary exertion in line, and to the front, is required; and is applied both to ordinary and quick time.

S. 11. *Mark Time.*

Mark Time. — On the words *Mark Time*, the foot then advancing completes its pace; after which the cadence is continued, without gaining any ground, but alternately throwing out the foot, and bringing it back ſquare with the other. At the words
Ordinary Step. — *Ordinary Step*, the uſual pace of 30 inches will be taken.

This ſtep is neceſſary marching in line, when any particular battalion is advanced, and has to wait for the coming up of others.

S. 12. *Stepping Short.*

Step Short. — On the word, *Step Short*, the foot advancing will finiſh its pace, and afterwards each recruit will ſtep as far as the ball of his toe, and no
Ordinary Step. — farther, until the word *Ordinary Step* be given, when the uſual pace of 30 inches is to be taken.

This ſtep is uſeful when a momentary retardment of either a battalion in line, or of a diviſion in column, ſhall be required.

S. 13. *Changing the Feet.*

Change Feet. — To change the feet in marching, the advancing foot completes its pace, the ball of the other is brought up quickly to the heel of the advanced one, which inftantly makes another ftep forward, fo that the cadence may not be loft.

This may be required of an individual, who is ftepping with a different foot from the reft of his divifion; in doing which he will in fact take two fucceffive fteps with the fame foot.

S. 14. *The Side or Clofing Step.*

The fide or clofing ftep is performed from the halt in ordinary time, by the following commands.

Clofe to the Right—March.
Clofe to the Left—March.

Clofe to the Right, March. — In clofing to the right, on the word *March*, eyes are turned to the right, and each man carries his right foot about 12 inches directly to his right (or if the files are clofed, to his neighbour's left foot), and inftantly brings up his left foot, till the heel touches

his

his right heel; he then pauſes, ſo as to perform this movement in ordinary time, and proceeds to take the next ſtep in the ſame manner; the whole with perfect preciſion of time, ſhoulders kept ſquare, knees not bent, and in the true line on which the body is formed.—At the word *Halt*, the whole halt, turn their eyes to the front, and are perfectly ſteady. (Vide *S.* 43.)

Halt.

S. 15. *Back Step.*

Step back,
March.
Halt.

The *Back Step* is performed in the ordinary time and length of pace, from the halt, on the command *Step back,*—*March,*—the recruit muſt be taught to move ſtraight to the rear, preſerving his ſhoulders ſquare to the front, and his body erect.—On the word *Halt*, the foot in front muſt be brought back ſquare with the other.

A few paces only of the back ſtep can be neceſſary at a time.

§. 16. *The Quick Step.*

The cadence of the ordinary pace having become perfectly habitual to the recruits, they are now to be taught to march a quick time, which is 108 ſteps in the minute, each of 30 inches, making 270 feet in a minute.—The command *Quick, March*, being given with a pauſe between them; the word *Quick*, is to be conſidered as a caution, and the whole to remain perfectly ſtill and ſteady; on the word *March*, they ſtep off with the left feet, keeping the body in the ſame poſture, and the ſhoulders ſquare to the front; the foot to be lifted off the ground, that it may clear any ſtones, or other impediments in the way, and to be thrown forward, and placed firm; the whole of the ſole to touch the ground, and not the heel alone; the knees are not to be bent, neither are they to be ſtiffened, ſo as to occaſion fatigue, or conſtraint.—The arms to hang with eaſe down the outſide of the thigh; a very ſmall motion to prevent conſtraint may be permitted; but not to ſwing out, and thereby occaſion the leaſt turn, or movement of the ſhoulder; the head is to be kept to the front, the body well up, and the utmoſt ſteadineſs to be preſerved.

Quick, March.

This

This is the pace to be uſed in all *filings* of diviſions from line into column, or from column into line; and by battalion columns of manœuvre, when independently changing poſition.—It may occaſionally be uſed in the column of march of ſmall bodies, when the route is ſmooth, and no obſtacles occur; but in the march in line of a conſiderable body it is not to be required, and very ſeldom in a column of manœuvre; otherwiſe fatigue muſt ariſe to the ſoldier, and more time will be loſt by hurry and inaccuracy, than is attempted to be gained by quickneſs.

The word *March*, given ſingly, at all times denotes that *ordinary* time is to be taken; when the *quick march* is meant, that word will precede the other.—The word *March* marks the beginning of movements from the *halt*; but is not given when the body is in previous motion.

S. 17. *The Quickeſt Step.*

The *quickeſt time*, or *wheeling march*, is 120 ſteps of 30 inches each, or 300 feet in the minute. The directions already given for the march in quick time relate equally to the march in quickeſt time.

This is applied chiefly to the purpoſe of wheeling, and is the rate at which all bodies accompliſh their *wheels*, the outward file ſtepping 33 inches, whether the wheel is from line into column, during the march in column, or from column into line.—In this *time* alſo ſhould diviſions double, and move up, when paſſing obſtacles in line; or when in the column of march, the front of diviſions is encreaſed, or diminiſhed.

Three or four recruits in one rank, with intervals of 12 inches between them, ſhould be practiſed in the different ſteps, that they may acquire a firmneſs and independence of movement.

Many different times of march muſt not be required of the ſoldier.—Theſe three muſt ſuffice, ORDINARY TIME (75 ſteps in the minute), QUICK TIME (108 in the minute), WHEELING, OF QUICKEST TIME (120 in the minute).

PLUMMETS, which vibrate the required times of march in a minute, are of great utility, and can alone prevent or correct uncertainty of movement; they muſt be in the poſſeſſion of, and conſtantly referred to by, each inſtructor of a ſquad,—the ſeveral lengths of plummets, ſwinging the times of the different marches in a minute, are as follows:

		In.	Hund.
Ordinary time, - - - the minute - - -	75 ſteps in	24	96
Quick time, - - -	108 - -	12	03
Quickeſt, or wheeling time,	120 - -	9	80

A muſket ball ſuſpended by a ſtring which is not ſubject to ſtretch, and on which are marked the different required lengths, will anſwer the above purpoſe, may be eaſily acquired, and ſhould be frequently compared with an accurate ſtandard in the adjutant's, or ſerjeant-major's poſſeſſion. The length of the Plummet is to be meaſured from the point of ſuſpenſion to the center of the ball.

Accu-

Accurate diſtances of ſteps muſt alſo be marked out on the ground, along which the ſoldier ſhould be practiſed to march, and thereby acquire the juſt length of pace.

Six or eight recruits will now be formed in a rank, at cloſe files, having a ſteady, well-drilled ſoldier on their flank to lead,—and FILE MARCHING may be taught them.

S. 18. *File Marching.*

To the—face. The recruits muſt firſt *face*, and then be inſtructed to cover each other exactly in file, ſo that the head of the man immediately before, may conceal the heads of all the others in his front.—The ſtricteſt obſervance of all the rules for marching is particularly neceſſary in marching by files, which is firſt to be taught at the *ordinary time*, and afterwards in *quick time*.

March. On the word *March*, the whole are immediately to ſtep off together, gaining at the very firſt ſtep 30 inches, and ſo continuing each ſtep without encreaſing the diſtance betwixt each recruit, every man locking or placing his advanced foot on the ground, before the ſpot from whence his preceding man had taken up his,—no looking down, nor leaning backward is to be ſuffered, on any pretence whatever,—the leader

is

is to be directed to march ſtraight forward to ſome diſtant object given him for that purpoſe, and the recruits made to cover one another during the march, with the moſt ſcrupulous exactneſs,—great attention muſt be paid to prevent them from marching with their knees bent, which they will be very apt to do at firſt, from an apprehenſion of treading upon the heels of thoſe before them.

S. 19. *Wheeling of a ſingle Rank, in ordinary Time from the Halt.*

Right Wheel.

March.

At the word, *To the Right wheel,* the man on the right of the rank faces to the right; on the word *March,* they ſtep off together, the whole turning their eyes to the left (the wheeling flank), except the man on the left of the rank, who looks inwards; and, during the wheel, becomes a kind of baſe line for the others to conform to, and maintain the uniformity of front.—The outward wheeling man always lengthens his ſtep to 33 inches,—the whole obſerve the ſame time, but each man ſhortening his ſtep in proportion as he is nearer to the ſtanding flank on which the wheel is made,—during the wheel, the whole remain cloſed to the ſtanding

Halt, Dreſs. ſtanding flank; that is, they touch, without incommoding their neighbour; nor muſt they ſtoop forward, but remain upright,—opening out from the ſtanding flank is to be avoided; cloſing in upon it, during the wheel, is to be reſiſted.—On the word *Halt, Dreſs*, each man halts immediately, without jumping forward, or making any falſe movements.

When the recruits are able to perform the wheel with accuracy in the *ordinary time*, they muſt be practiſed in wheeling in *quickeſt time.*

Nothing will tend ſooner to enable the recruit to acquire the proper length of ſtep, according to his diſtance from the pivot, than continuing the wheel without halting for ſeveral revolutions of the circle.—And alſo giving the word *Halt, Dreſs*, at inſtants not expected, and when only a 6th, 8th, or any ſmaller proportion of the circle is completed.

S. 20. *Wheeling of a ſingle Rank, from the March.*

The recruits are firſt to be taught to perform this wheeling at the *ordinary time*, and afterwards in the *quickeſt*, or *proper wheeling time*,—the rank, marching to the front at the

Halt, Right, Wheel. ordinary time, receives the word of command, *Halt, Right Wheel*, the man on the right of the rank inſtantly halts, and faces to his right; the reſt of the rank, turning their eyes to the wheeling flank (as directed in the preceding ſection), immediately change the ſtep together to *wheeling time*; as ſoon as the portion of the circle to be wheeled is completed, the words

Halt, Dreſs. *Halt, Dreſs*, will be given (a pauſe of 2 or 3 ſeconds may be

March. made), and then *March*, on which the whole rank ſteps off together at the ordinary time.

S. 21. *Wheeling Backwards, a ſingle Rank.*

On the Right backwards, Wheel.

March.

At the word *On the Right backwards, Wheel*, the man on the right of the rank faces to his left; at the word *March*, the whole ſtep backward in wheeling time, dreſſing by the outward wheeling man, thoſe neareſt the pivot man making their ſteps extremely ſmall, and thoſe towards the wheeling man encreaſing them as they are placed

placed nearer to him.—The recruit in this wheel muſt not bend forward, nor be ſuffered to look down; but by caſting his eyes to the wheeling flank, preſerve the dreſſing of the rank.—On the word *Halt*, the whole remain perfectly ſteady, ſtill looking to the wheeling flank till they receive the word *Right Dreſs*.

Halt.

Right Dreſs.

The recruits ſhould be firſt practiſed to wheel backwards at the ordinary ſtep; and at all times it will be neceſſary to prevent them from hurrying the pace; an error ſoldiers are very liable to fall into, particularly in wheeling backwards. Where large bodies wheel from line into column, this wheeling is neceſſary to preſerve the covering of pivot flanks, and the diſtances of the diviſions, which the line is to break into.

S. 22. *Wheeling of a ſingle Rank on a moveable Pivot.*

In wheeling on a moveable pivot, both flanks are moveable, and deſcribe concentric circles round a point, which is removed a few paces from what would otherwiſe be the ſtanding flank; and eyes are all turned towards the directing pivot man, whether he is on the outward flank, or on the flank wheeled to.

Right Shoulders forward.

Forward.

When the wheel is to be made to the directing pivot flank (suppose the left),—the rank marching at the ordinary pace, receives the word, *Right Shoulders forward*; on which the pivot man, without altering either the time or length of his pace, continues his march on the circumference of the lesser circle, and tracing out a considerable arch, on the principle of dressing, gradually brings round his rank to the direction required, without obliging the other flank which is describing the circumference of a larger circle to too great hurry;—on the word *Forward*, shoulders are squared, and the pivot marches direct to his front.

Left Shoulders forward.

When the directing pivot is on the outward flank, and has to describe the circumference of the larger circle, on the word *Left Shoulders, forward*, he will, without changing the time, or length of his pace, gradually bring round the rank to the required direction, so as to enable the inward flank to describe a similar arc of a lesser circle, concentric to the one he himself is moving on.—During both these wheels, the rank dresses to the proper pivot, and when he describes the smaller circle of the wheel, the other flank which has more ground to go over, will quicken its march, and step out.—When the pivot describes the greater circle of the wheel, the other flank, which

which has leſs ground to go over, will ſtep ſhorter, and gradually conform.—In the firſt caſe, the recruit muſt be cautioned againſt opening out from the pivot; and, in the latter, from crowding on him.

The juſt performance of this mode of wheeling depends ſo much on the directing pivot, that a well-drilled ſoldier ſhould, at firſt, be placed on the flank named, as the proper pivot, and changed occaſionally.—It is uſed, when a column of march (in order to follow the windings of its route), changes its direction in general, leſs than the quarter circle.

WITH ARMS.

S. 23. *Poſition of the Soldier.*

When the firelock is given, and is ſhouldered, the perſon of the ſoldier remains in the poſition deſcribed (Section 1.), except, that the wriſt of the left hand is turned out, the better to embrace the butt, the thumb alone is to appear in front, the four fingers to be under the butt, the left elbow is a little bent inwards, without being ſeparated from the body, or being more backward or forward than the right one. —The firelock is placed in the hand, not on the middle of the fingers, and carried in ſuch manner that it ſhall not raiſe, advance, or keep back one ſhoulder

ſhoulder more than the other; the butt muſt therefore be forward, and as low as can be permitted without conſtraint; the fore part nearly even with that of the thigh, and the hind part of it preſſed by the wriſt againſt the thigh; the piece muſt be kept ſteady and firm before the hollow of the ſhoulder; ſhould the firelock be drawn back or attempted to be carried high, in that caſe, one ſhoulder will be advanced, the other kept back, and the upper part of the body diſtorted, and not placed ſquare with reſpect to the limbs.

Each recruit muſt be ſeparately taught the poſition of ſhouldered arms, and not allowed to proceed until he has acquired it.

S. 24. *Different Motions of the Firelock.*

The following motions of the firelock will be taught and practiſed as here ſet down, until each recruit is perfect in them; they being neceſſary for the eaſe of the ſoldier in the courſe of exerciſe.

As mentioned in the manual exerciſe.	Supporting arms. Carrying arms. Ordering arms. Standing at eaſe. Attention. Shouldering from the order.

The recruit muſt be accuſtomed to *carry* his arms for a conſiderable time together; it is moſt eſſential

he

he ſhould do ſo, and not be allowed to ſupport *them* ſo often as is practiſed, under the idea of that long *carrying* them is a poſition of too much conſtraint.

A platoon, company, or battalion, are never to MARCH, or HALT, or FORM IN LINE, or to DRESS (which are ſituations where the greateſt accuracy of front is required), but with *carried Arms.*—When ſuch bodies are ſtanding and halted, arms may be occaſionally *ſupported.*—When marching in column, or that ſmall diviſions are moving any diſtance in file, firelocks may alſo be *ſupported.*

---

§. 25. *Attention in forming the Squad.*

When the SQUAD or diviſion (conſiſting of from ſix to eight files) is ordered to *fall in*, each man with carried arms, will as quick as poſſible take his place in his rank, beginning from the flank to which he is ordered to form; he will dreſs himſelf in line by the rule already given; aſſume the ordered poſition of a ſoldier, and ſtand perfectly ſtill, and ſteady, until ordered to ſtand at eaſe, or that ſome other command be given him.—Attention muſt be paid, that the files are correctly cloſed; that the men in the rear ranks cover well, looking their file leaders in the middle of the neck;—That the ranks have their proper diſtance of one pace (30 inches) from each other;—That all the ranks are equally well dreſſed:—That the men do not turn their heads to the right, or left; and that each man has the proper unconſtrained attitude of a ſoldier.

S. 26. Open

S. 26. *Open Order.*

Rear Ranks take Open Order.

"The recruits being formed in three ranks at close order, on the word *Rear Ranks take Open Order*, the flank men on the right and left of the centre, and rear ranks, step briskly back one and two paces respectively, face to their right, and stand covered, to mark the ground on which each rank is to halt, and dress at open order; every other individual remains ready to move.—

March.

On the word *March* the dressers front, and the center and rear ranks fall back one and two paces, each dressing by the right the instant it arrives on the ground.

S. 27. *Close Order.*

Rear Ranks take Close Order. March.

On the word *Rear ranks take Close Order*, the whole remain perfectly steady; at the word *March*, the ranks close within one pace, marching one and two paces, and then halting.

S. 28. *Manual Exercise.*

According to Regulation.

S. 29. *Platoon Exercise.*

According to Regulation.

S. 30. *Firings.*

When the recruits have acquired the management of their arms, and are perfect in the motions of the manual, and platoon exercises, they will be instructed at closed ranks in firing.

Direct to their front.
Obliquely to the right and left.
By files.

S. 31. *Marching to the Front and Rear.*

Fig. 2. The squad, or division, is to be particularly well dressed; files correct; arms carried; the rear ranks covering exactly, and each individual to have his just attitude and position before the squad is ordered to move.—The march will be made by the right or left flank, and a proper trained man will therefore conduct it.—The word *Squad*, or *Division*, may be given as a caution; and at the word *March*, each man steps forward a full pace.—The recruit must not turn his head to the hand to which he is d e ling, as a turning of the shoulders would undoubtedly follow.—His elbows must be kept steadv, without constraint; if they are opened from his body, the next man must be pressed upon; if they are closed, there arises an improper distance which must be filled up; in either case waving on the march will take place, and must therefore be avoided.

Caution.
March.

Halt, front.
March.

Turning to the right or left, or about, in march, is not to be at first practised; but the squad is to *halt, front* by command, and then *march*.

On many occasions where a body great or small after a movement to the rear, or in file, is immediately to resume its proper front; instead of the words to halt, and face about, the word *Halt front*, as one command, will be given, when it is instantly to face to its proper front in line. Nor in general should there be any sensible pause between the halt front

front of any body, and it is after fronting, that the dreffing, if neceffary, is ordered to take place.

As the being able to march ftraight forward is of the utmoft confequence, he who commands at the drill will take the greateft pains in making his fquad do fo;—For this purpofe he will often go behind his fquad, or divifion, place himfelf behind the flank file by which the fquad is to move in marching, and take a point, or object, exactly in front of that file; he will then command *March*, and, remaining in his place, he will direct the advance of the fquad, by keeping the flank file always in a line with the object.—It is alfo from behind, that one fooneft perceives the leaning back of the foldier, and the bringing forward or falling back of a fhoulder; faults which ought inftantly to be rectified, as productive of the worft confequence in a line, where one man, by bringing forward a fhoulder, may change the direction of the march, and oblige the wing of a battalion to run, in order to keep dreffed.

In fhort, it is impoffible to labour too much at making the foldier march ftraight forward, keeping always the fame front as when he fet off.—This is effected by moving folely from the haunches, keeping the body fteady, the fhoulders fquare, and the head to the front; and will without difficulty be attained by a ftrict attention to the rules given for marching, and a careful obfervance of an equal length of ftep, and an equal cadence, or time of march.

Changing from *ordinary* to *quick time*, and from *quick* to *ordinary time*, muft always be preceded by a previous, but inftantaneous *halt*; although this may not appear effential for the movements of a fquad, divifion, or battalion, it is abfolutely fo for thofe of a larger body, and is therefore required in fmall ones.

Turning

Right Turn.

Left Turn.

Turning on the march, in order to continue it, though inaccurate and improper for a large body, is neceſſary, when companies, or their diviſions are moving in file, and that without halting it is eligible to make them move on in front; or when moving in front, it is proper without halting to make them move on in file.

As helps for fixing the true time, or cadence of the march, the plummet muſt be frequently reſorted to; the words *left*, *right*, may when neceſſary be repeated, ſlowly for ordinary time, and quicker for quick time.—Strong taps of the drum, if in juſt time, and regulated by the plummet, are alſo directed to be given immediately before the word *March*, thereby to imprint the required meaſure on the mind of the recruit; but they are on no account, or in any ſituation, to be given during the march.

S. 32. *Open, and Cloſe Order, on the March.*

Rear ranks take Open Order.

The ſquad, when moving to the front in ordinary time, receives the word *Rear ranks take Open Order*, on which the front rank continues its march, without altering the pace, and the center and rear ranks mark the time, viz. the center once, and ſteps off at the ſecond ſtep; the rear ſtepping off on the third pace.

On

Rear Ranks take Close Order.

On the word *Rear Ranks take Close Order*, the centre and rear ranks ſtep nimbly up to cloſe order, and inſtantly reſume the pace, at which the front rank has continued to march.

---

§. 33. *March in File to a Flank.*

The accuracy of the march in file is ſo eſſential in all deployments into line, and in the internal movements of the diviſions of the battalion, that the ſoldier cannot be too much exerciſed to it. The whole battalion, as well as its diviſions, is required to make this flank movement without the leaſt opening out, or lengthening of the file, and in perfect cadence, and equality of ſtep.

To the—face March.

After *facing*, and at the word *March*, the whole ſquad ſteps off at the ſame inſtant, each replacing, or rather overſtepping the foot of the man before him; that is, the right foot of the ſecond man comes within the left foot of the firſt, and thus of every one, more or leſs over-lapping, according to the cloſeneſs, or openneſs of the files, and the length of ſtep.—The front rank will march ſtraight along the given line, each ſoldier of that rank muſt look along the necks of thoſe before him, and never to right

or left: otherwiſe a waving of the march will take place, and of courſe the loſs, and extenſion of the line, and diſtance, whenever the body returns to its proper front.—The center and rear ranks muſt look to, and regulate themſelves by, their leaders of the front rank, and always dreſs in their file. — Although file marching is in general made in quick time; yet it muſt alſo be practiſed, and made in ordinary time. The ſame poſition of feet, as above, takes place in all marching in front, where the ranks are cloſe, and locked up.

With a little attention and practice this mode of marching, which appears ſo difficult, will be found by every ſoldier to be eaſier than the common method of marching by files, when on every halt the rear muſt run up to gain the ground it has unneceſſarily loſt.

S. 34. *Wheeling in File.*

The ſquad, when marching in file, muſt be accuſtomed to wheel its head to either flank; each file following ſucceſſively, without loſing, or encreaſing diſtance.—On this occaſion, each file makes its ſeparate

rate wheel on a pivot moveable in a very ſmall degree, but without altering its time of march, or the eyes of the rear ranks being turned from their front rank.—The front rank men, whether they are pivot men, or not, muſt keep up to their diſtance, and the wheeling men muſt take a very extended ſtep, and loſe no time in moving on.

The head of a company or battalion marching in file, muſt change direction in the ſame manner on the moveable pivot, by gradually gaining the new from the old direction, and thereby avoiding the ſudden ſtop that otherwiſe would take place.

S. 35. *Oblique Marching in Front.*

Right Oblique. When the Squad is marching in front, and receives the word *To the Right, oblique*; each man, the firſt time he raiſes the right foot, will, inſtead of throwing it ſtraight forward, carry it in the diagonal direction, as has been already explained in Sect. 8. taking care not to alter the poſition of his body, ſhoulders, or head. — The greateſt attention is to be paid to the ſhoulders of every man in the ſquad, that they remain parallel to the line on which they firſt were placed, and that the right ſhoulders do not fall to the rear, which they are very

apt to do in obliquing to the right, and which immediately changes the direction of the front. — On the

Forward. word *forward*, the incline ceases, and the whole march forward. — In obliquing to the left, the same rules are to be observed, with the difference of the left leg going to the left, and attention to keep up the left shoulder.

The same instructions that are given for ordinary time, serve also for quick time; but this movement, though it may be made by a squad, or division, cannot be required from a larger body in quick time.

Obliquing to the right, is to be practised sometimes with the eyes to the left; and obliquing to the left, with the eyes to the right; as being absolutely necessary on many occasions; for if one of the battalions of a line in advancing be ordered to oblique to the right, or to the left, the eyes must still continue turned towards its center.

S. 36. *Oblique Marching in File.*

In obliquing to the right, or left, by files, the center and rear rank men will continue looking to their leaders of the front rank.—Each file is to consider itself as an entire rank, and is to preserve the same front, and position of the shoulders, during the oblique,

oblique, as before it began. — This being a very useful movement, the recruits are often to be practised in it.

S. 37. *Wheeling forward from the Halt.*

Right Wheel.

March.

The directions already given for the wheeling of a single rank (vide Sect. 19.) are to be strictly attended to in this wheel of the squad.—On the word *Right (or left) Wheel*, the rear ranks, if at one pace distance, lock up. At the word *March*, the whole step together in the quickest time, and the rear ranks during the wheel, incline so as to cover their proper front rank men.—At the word *Halt*, the whole remain perfectly steady.

S. 38. *Wheeling backward.*

The squad must be practised in wheeling backward in the quickest time.—In this wheel, the rear ranks may preserve their distance of one pace from each other.—Great attention should be paid, to prevent the recruits from fixing their eyes on the ground. (Vide Sect. 21.)

S. 39. *Wheeling from the March, on a halted, and moveable Pivot.*

The directions for wheeling on a *halted*, and on a *moveable* pivot, have already been given, in Sects. 20, and 22.——The squad should now be practised in both, until the recruits are thoroughly confirmed in those movements.

S. 40. *Stepping out,—Stepping short,—Marking the Time,—Changing the Feet,—The Side Step,—Stepping back.*

The squad must likewise be practised in, *stepping out*, *stepping short*, *marking the time*, *changing the feet*, *the side step*, and *stepping back*, the instructions for which have been fully detailed in the foregoing sections.

It

It cannot be too ſtrongly inculcated, or too often recollected, that upon the correct *equality* of *march*, eſtabliſhed and practiſed by all the troops of the ſame army, every juſt movement and manœuvre depends. When this is not attended to, diſunion, and confuſion, muſt neceſſarily take place, on the junction of ſeveral battalions in corps, although, when taken individually, each may be in moſt reſpects well trained: It is in the original inſtruction of the recruit, and ſquad, that this great point is to be laboured at, and attained.—The *time* and *length* of ſtep, on all occaſions, are preſcribed. The TIME is infallibly aſcertained, by the frequent corrections of the *plummet*, which, when ſo applied, will ſoon give to each man that habitual meaſure ſo much deſired; and therefore every driller muſt have it conſtantly in his hand; and, as it has been already obſerved, before any ſquad, or larger body is put in march, 5 or 6 ſtrong taps of the drum ſhould often be given in exact time, as regulated by the plummet; which will imprint the true meaſure on each ear, and prepare for taking an accurate ſtep at the word *March*. The length of ſtep is only to be required by repeated trial, and therefore, before the recruit, or ſquad, is put in motion, each inſtructor ſhould aſcertain the ſpace on which he is to drill his men; he will therefore (ſuppoſing that he himſelf is accurate in his paces, and that there is ground for that purpoſe) mark out an oblong ſquare of 40 paces by 20, or 30, the corners of which he will aſcertain by halberts, ſtones, or in any other viſible manner; along the ſides of this figure he will march the pivot flank of the ſquad, making correct wheels, and halts at the angles.—The time of March being ſo exactly aſcertained, he will then ſee that the ſides of the oblong are gone over at the known number of ſteps; and if there be any inaccuracy, he will lengthen or ſhorten the ſtep, till the ſquad marches with the utmoſt preciſion; every man preſerving his juſt poſition, and all the

other indifpenfible attentions in marching being ftrictly obferved. Where there is a fufficiency of *ground*, the fquads will occafionally march over greater fpaces, but the diftances fhould in the fame manner be exactly afcertained, fo that there may be no doubt as to the true length of the ftep.—In proportion to the ftrength of fquads or drills, one or more formed foldiers fhould accompany each, to march on the flank, give diftances, and in other points, to regulate the motions of the drill.

D. D.

End of PART FIRST.

PART

PART II.

OF THE PLATOON, OR COMPANY.

S. 41. *Formation of the Platoon.*

The recruit being thoroughly grounded in all the preceding parts of the drill, is now to be inſtructed in the movements of the platoon, as a more immediate preparation for his joining the battalion: for this purpoſe from 10 to 20 files are to be aſſembled, formed, and told off in the following manner, as a company in the battalion.

The platoon FALLS IN, in three ranks at cloſe order, with ſhouldered firelocks; the files lightly touching, but without crouding; each man will then occupy a ſpace of about 22 inches.—The commander of the platoon takes poſt on the right of the front rank, covered by a ſerjeant in the rear rank.—Two other ſerjeants will form a fourth or ſupernumerary rank, three paces from the rear rank.

The

The platoon will be told off into ſub-diviſions, and if of ſufficient ſtrength, into four ſections; but as a ſection ſhould never be leſs than five miles, it will often happen that for the purpoſes of march, three ſections only can be formed.

The four beſt trained ſoldiers are to be placed in the front rank, on the right and left of each ſub-diviſion.

When thus formed, the platoon will be practiſed in

Opening, and Cloſing of } Ranks. (Sec. 26 and 27.)

Dreſſing { to the front, to the rear, in an oblique direction, } by the right and left.

and be exerciſed in the ſeveral motions of the firelock, as have been ſhewn in the preceding part.

Cloſe order is the chief and primary order in which the battalion, and its parts, at all times aſſemble, and form.—*Open order* is only regarded as an exception from it, and occaſionally uſed in ſituations of parade, and ſhow.—In cloſe order, the rear ranks are cloſed up to within one pace; the length of which is to be taken from the heels of one rank to the heels of the next rank.—In open order, they are two paces diſtant from each other.

In

In order to diftinguifh the words of command given by the inftructor of the drill (who reprefents the commander of the battalion), from thofe given by the commander of the platoon, or its divifions, the commands of the former are in CAPITAL Letters, thofe of the latter in *Italic*.

S. 42. Marching to the Front.

Fig. 2. In the drill of the platoon, the perfon inftructing muft always confider it as a company in battalion, and regulate all its movements upon that principle; he will therefore, before he puts it in motion to front, or rear, indicate which flank is to direct, by giving the word EYES RIGHT, or EYES LEFT; and then MARCH.—Should the right be the directing flank, the commander of the platoon himfelf will fix on objects to march upon in a line truly perpendicular to the front of the platoon; and when the left flank is ordered to direct, he and his covering ferjeant will fhift to the left of the front rank, and take fuch objects to march upon.—To MARCH on one object only, and to preferve a ftraight line, is an operation not to be depended on; the conductor of the platoon before the word MARCH is given, will therefore endeavour to remark fome diftinct object on the ground, in his own

MARCH.

front,

front, and perpendicular to the directing flank: he will then obſerve ſome nearer and intermediate point in the ſame line, ſuch as a ſtone, tuft of graſs, &c. theſe he will move upon with accuracy, and as he approaches the neareſt of thoſe points, he muſt from time to time chuſe freſh ones in the original direction, which he will by this means preſerve, never having fewer than two ſuch points to move upon. If no object in the true line can be aſcertained, his own ſquareneſs of perſon muſt determine the direction of the march.

A perſon placed in the rear of a body can, more readily than if placed in its front, determine the line which is perpendicular to ſuch front; and could we ſuppoſe ranks and files moſt perfectly correct, the prolongation of each file would be a perpendicular to the front of the body.

As the MARCH of every body, except in the caſe of inclining, is made on lines perpendicular to its then front, each individual compoſing that body muſt in his perſon be placed, and remain perfectly ſquare to the given line; otherwiſe he will naturally and inſenſibly move in a direction perpendicular to his own perſon, and thereby open out, or cloſe in, according to the manner in which he is turned from the true point of his March.—If the diſtortion of a ſingle man operates in this manner, and all turnings of the head do ſo diſtort him, it may be eaſily imagined what that of ſeveral will occaſion, each of whom is marching on a different front, and whoſe lines of direction are croſſing each other.

Accuracy and ſquareneſs of poſition, the equality of cadence and ſtep, the light touch of the files,

which is never to be relinquished, just distances, and true lines of movement, will give, without apparent constraint, the head being turned, or the least trouble taken in dressing, the most decisive exactness in the marches, and operations of the largest bodies.

The platoon, during its march in line, will occasionally be ordered to

Step out	vide Sect.	10
Mark time	————	11
Step short	————	12
Open, and *close ranks*	————	32
Oblique	————	35

S. 43. *The Side Step.*

The *side*, or *closing step*, must also be frequently practised; it is very necessary and useful on many occasions, when halted, and when a very small distance is to be moved to either flank:—As for instance, to open, or close files; to join one division to, or open it from another; to regain an interval in line; to move a whole battalion, or parade, 20 or 30 paces to a flank; to regulate distances between close columns before deploying: alterations made in this manner are imperceptible from the front, and better made than by facing, and file marching: the words of command must be decided and strong.

TO THE RIGHT CLOSE. — When the whole platoon is to close, at the word TO THE RIGHT CLOSE, the platoon officer takes one step

MARCH.

HALT.

to the front and inſtantly faces about, the covering ſerjeant replacing him: On the word MARCH, the whole move together agreeably to the directions (in Sect. 14). On the word HALT, the platoon officer reſumes his place, having ſtepped in the ſame manner as the men, but fronting them, and thereby aſſiſted in preſerving the direction.

S. 44. *The Back Step.*

STEP BACK—MARCH.

The platoon muſt be accuſtomed from the halt, at the words STEP BACK—MARCH, to ſtep back any ordered number of paces in the ordinary time and length, as it is an operation that may be frequently required from a battalion.

S. 45. *File Marching.*

In marching by files, the commander of the platoon will lead the front rank; therefore when the movement is by the left, on the word

LEFT FACE. To THE LEFT FACE, he, and his covering ſerjeant, will inſtantly ſhift to the left flank of the platoon; at

QUICK MARCH. the word QUICK MARCH, the whole ſteps off together (vide ſect. 18);

Halt, Front. and on the word *Halt, Front*, the leader, and his ſerjeant, will return to their poſts on the right.

S. 46. *Wheeling from a Halt.*

In wheeling either forward, or backward from a halt, the commander of the platoon, on the word

RIGHT WHEEL RIGHT or LEFT WHEEL, moves out, and places himſelf one pace in front

MARCH. of the center of his platoon: during the wheel, he turns towards his men, and inclines towards that flank which has been named as the directing,

Halt, Dreſs. or pivot one, giving the word *Halt, Dreſs*, when his wheeling man has juſt completed the required degree of wheel: he then ſquares his platoon, but without moving what was the ſtanding flank, and takes his poſt on the directing flank.

S. 47. *Wheeling forward by Sub-divisions from Line.*

CAUTION. On the Caution BY SUBDIVISIONS, TO THE RIGHT WHEEL, the commander of the platoon places himself one pace in front of the center of the right sub-division, at the same time the men on the right of the front rank of each sub-division face to the right.

MARCH. At the word MARCH, each sub-division steps off in wheeling time, observing the directions given in (Sect. 19 and 37). The commander of the platoon turning towards the men of the leading sub-division, and inclining to its left (the proper pivot flank), gives the word *Halt, Dress*, for both sub-divisions, as his wheeling man is taking the last step that finishes the wheel square; and instantly posts himself on the left, the pivot flank.—The serjeant coverer, during the wheel goes round by the rear, and takes post on the pivot flank of the second sub-division.—It is to be observed, that the commander of the platoon invariably takes post with the leading sub-division; therefore, when the platoon wheels by sub-divisions to the left, the commander of the platoon moves out to the center of the left sub-division, and during the wheel inclines towards the right, now become the proper pivot flanks of the sub-divisions.

Fig. 3. A.

Halt, Dress.

The

The *proper* pivot flank in column, is that which, when wheeled up to, preserves the divisions of the line in the natural order, and to their proper front: the other may be called the *reverse* flank.

In column, divisions cover and dress to the proper pivot flank: to the left when the right is in front: and to the right when the left is in front.

S. 48. *Wheeling backward by Sub-divisions from Line.*

CAUTION. The platoon will also break into open column of sub-divisions by wheeling backwards.—When the right is intended to be in front; at the caution BY SUBDIVISIONS OF THE LEFT, BACKWARD WHEEL, the commander of the platoon moves out briskly and places himself in front of the center of the right sub-division.—The man on the left of the front rank of each sub-division at the same time faces to the right.

MARCH. Fig. 4. A. On the word MARCH, each sub-division wheels backward in quickest time, as directed in Sect. 21. and Sect. 38. During the wheel, the commander of the platoon turns towards his men, inclining at the same time to the left, or pivot flank, and on completing

Halt, Drefs. the wheel, gives the word *Halt, Drefs,* to both divifions: he, and his covering ferjeant, then place themfelves on the left flanks of their fub-divifions.

It may be confidered as a rule almoft general (the reafons for which are given in the following part) that all wheels of the battalion, or line, (when halted, and when the divifions do not exceed 16, or 18 files,) into column, fhould be backward.—And all wheels from column into line, forward.—The only neceffary exceptions feem to be in narrow ground where there is not room for fuch wheels.

S. 49. *Marching on an Alignement, in Open Column of Sub-divifions.*

The platoon having wheeled backwards by fub divifions from line, (as directed in the foregoing Section) and a diftant marked object in the prolongation of the two pivot flanks being taken; the commander of the platoon, who is now on the pivot flank of the leading fub-divifion, immediately fixes on his intermediate points to march on, (vide Sect. 42.) On the word MARCH, given by the inftructor of the drill, both divifions ftep off at the fame inftant; the leader of the firft divifion marching with the utmoft fteadinefs and equality of pace on the points he has taken; and the commander

Fig. 4. A.

of

of the ſecond diviſion preſerving the leader of the firſt in an exact line with the diſtant object; at the ſame time he keeps the diſtance neceſſary for forming from the preceding diviſion; which diſtance is to be taken from the front rank.—Theſe objects are in themſelves ſufficient to occupy the whole attention of the leaders of the two diviſions; therefore they muſt not look to, nor endeavour to correct the march of their diviſions, which care muſt be entirely left to the non-commiſſioned officers of the ſupernumerary rank.

S. 50. *Wheeling into Line from Open Column of Sub-diviſions.*

The platoon being in open column of ſub-diviſions, marching at the ordinary ſtep on the alignement, receives

HALT.

the word HALT, from the inſtructor of the drill; both diviſions inſtantly halt, and the inſtructor ſees that the leaders of the diviſions are correct on the line in which they have moved; he then gives the word (ſuppoſing the right of the platoon to be in front) by ſub-diviſions

LEFT WHEEL INTO LINE.

TO THE LEFT WHEEL INTO LINE; on which the commander of the platoon goes to the center of his ſub-diviſion, the two pivot men face to their

left

left exactly ſquare with the alignement, and a ſerjeant runs out and places himſelf in a line with them, ſo as to mark the preciſe point at which the right flank of the leading ſub-diviſion is to halt, when it ſhall have comple-

MARCH. ted its wheel.---At the word MARCH, the whole wheel up in quickeſt time; during the wheel, the commander of the platoon, turning towards his men, inclines to the wheeling flank, and

Halt, Dreſs. gives the word *Halt, Dreſs*, at the moment the wheel of the diviſion is completing; the commander of the platoon, if neceſſary, corrects the internal dreſſing of the platoon on the ſerjeant and pivot men; this dreſſing muſt be quickly made, and when done, the commander of the platoon gives

Eyes front. the word *Eyes front*, in a moderate tone of voice, and takes poſt in line as directed in Sect. 41.

In all wheels of the diviſions of a column that are to be made on a halted pivot in order to form line, the flank firelock of the front rank on the hand wheeled to, is ſuch pivot, not the officer who may be on that flank, and whoſe buſineſs is to conform to it.

All wheelings by ſub-diviſions, or ſections, from line into column, or from column into line, are performed on the word given by the commander of a battalion, when the whole of a battalion is at the ſame inſtant ſo to wheel, or on the word given by the commander of the company, when companies ſingly, or ſucceſſively, ſo wheel: they are not to be repeated by the leaders of its diviſions.

S. 51. *In Open Column of Sub-divisions wheeling into an Alignement.*

Halt, Wheel. The platoon being in open column of sub-divisions, marching in ordinary time; when its leading division arrives at the ground, where the wheel is to commence, it receives the word *Halt, right*, or *left, wheel*, from its commander, on which the rear ranks, if at one pace distance, lock up; the flank front rank man alone halts, and faces into the new direction, while the others quicken their pace to the wheeling time, and regulate their step by the outward hand (to which they have turned their eyes), until the wheel is completed.---

Halt, Dress. He then gives the word *Halt, Dress*, for his division to dress to the hand it is to move by; and whenever the second division, which has continued to advance in ordinary time, arrives close on the wheeling point, he gives his

March. division the word *March*, and moves on in ordinary time, so as its rear rank does not occasion even a momentary stop to the division behind it, which at

Halt, Wheel. *Halt, Dress.* *March.* that instant receives the word *Wheel*, then *Halt, Dress*, and finally *March*, whenever the leading division has gained its proper distance from it.

The officer conducting the leading (and every other) division of the column in march, on any given point or object where it is to wheel into a new direc-

 tion,

tion, and to its proper pivot hand on a halted pivot; always ſtops at that point, or object, cloſe on his own outward hand, and gives the word WHEEL, when the front rank of his diviſion has taken ONE pace beyond ſuch object; he thus allows ſpace for his own perſon (when the wheel is finiſhed) to move on cloſe behind the new direction of march.

But if the proper pivot flank is to be the wheeling one, each commander of a diviſion gives his word *Wheel*, as he ſucceſſively arrives at ſuch a diſtance from the point on which he has moved, as that at the completion of the wheel, his diviſion may *halt* perpendicular to the new line, but with the given point, of courſe, behind the proper pivot; and that he alſo in his own perſon be on the new direction, prepared to give his word *March*, and to proceed.

The ſub-diviſions muſt take care that they continue their march correctly upon, and wheel exactly at the point where the leading one wheeled, and that they do not ſhift to either flank, which without much attention they are apt to do.

In this manner the ſub-diviſions ſucceed each other; and if the words of command be juſtly given; no ſtop made on arriving at the wheeling point; the wheels performed at an increaſed time and ſtep; and the proper halt, dreſſing, and pauſe, be made after the wheel; no extenſion of the column will take place, but the juſt diſtances between the diviſions will be preſerved.

The officer conducting the directing flank of a diviſion may during the wheel be advanced one or two paces before it, and remain ſo, facing to the flank, that he may the more critically be enabled to give his word *Halt*; at which inſtant, he will again place himſelf on the flank ready to judge his diſtance, and to give the word *March*.

S. 52. In

S. 52. In Open Column of Sub-diviſions wheeling into a new Direction, on a movable Pivot.

RightShoulders forward.

Forward.

The commander of the leading ſub-diviſion, when at a due diſtance from the intended new direction, will give the word *Right* (or left) *Shoulders forward* (vide Sect. 22), and he himſelf carefully preſerving the rate of march, without the leaſt alteration of ſtep or time, will begin to circle in his own perſon from the old into the new direction, ſo as not to make an abrupt wheel, or that either flank ſhall be ſtationary; the reſt of his diviſion on the principle of dreſſing will conform to the direction he is giving them: when this is effected he will give the word *Forward.*— The leader of the ſecond ſub-diviſion, when he arrives at the ground on which the firſt began to wheel, will in this manner follow the exact tract of the firſt, always preſerving his proper diſtance from him.

Thus without the conſtraint of formal wheels; a column, when not confined on its flanks, may be

conducted in all kinds of winding and changeable directions: for if the changes be made gradual and circling, and that the pivot leaders of divisions pursue their proper path at the same uniform equal pace, the true distances of divisions will be preserved, which is the great regulating object on this occasion, and to which every other consideration must give way.

To whichever hand the wheel is made on a movable pivot, it is made within and cuts off the angle formed by the intersection of the old and new directions.

In wheeling in column of march on a fixed pivot, the outward file, whether officer or man, is the one wheeled on.

S. 53. Countermarch by Files.

The platoon, when it is to countermarch, must always be considered as a division of a battalion in column; the instructor of the drill will therefore, previous to his giving the caution to countermarch, signify whether the right or left is supposed to be in front, that the commander of the platoon, and his covering serjeant, may be placed on the pivot flank before such caution is given, as it is an invariable rule in the countermarch of the divisions of a column by files, that the facings be made from the flank, then the pivot one, to the one which is to become such.

On

FACE. On the word, TO THE RIGHT, or left, FACE, the platoon faces, the commander of it immediately goes to the other flank, and his covering serjeant advancing to the spot which he has quitted, faces to the right about.—

QUICK MARCH. At the word QUICK MARCH, the whole, except the serjeant coverer, step off together, the platoon officer wheeling short round the rear rank (viz. to his right, if he has shifted to the right of the platoon; or to his left, if he be on the left of it); and proceeds, followed by the platoon in file, till he has conducted his pivot front rank man close to his serjeant, who has remained immovable; he then gives the words

Halt, Front. Drefs. *Halt*, *Front*, and *Drefs*, squares, and closes his platoon on his serjeant, and then replaces him.

All countermarches by files necessarily tend to an extension of the files; unity of step is therefore absolutely indispensible, and the greatest care must be taken that the wheel of each file be made close, quick, and at an increased length of step of the wheeling man, so as not to retard or lengthen out the march of the whole.

Companies, or their divisions when brought up in file to a new line, are not to stand in that position, till the men cover each other minutely: but the instant the leading man is at his point, they will receive the word *Halt*, *front*, and in that situation close in, and dress correctly.

S. 54. Wheeling on the Center of the Platoon.

The platoon muſt be accuſtomed to wheel upon its center, half backward, half forward, and to be pliable into every ſhape, which circumſtances can require of it; but always in order, and by a decided command.

The Words of Command are,

PLATOON, ON YOUR CEN-TER TO THE { RIGHT, / LEFT, / RIGHT ABOUT, / LEFT ABOUT, } WHEEL.

MARCH.	When the wheel to be made is to the right, or right about, the right half platoon is the one to wheel backward, and the left forward.—The reverſe will take place, when the wheel is to be made to the left, or to the left about.—On the word MARCH, the whole move together in the quickeſt time, regulating by the two flank men, who during the wheel preſerve themſelves in a line with the center of the platoon;—as ſoon as the required degree of wheel is performed, the commander of the platoon gives the word
Halt, Dreſs.	*Halt, Dreſs,* and inſtantly ſquares it from that flank, on which he himſelf is to take poſt.

S. 55. Oblique

S. 55. *Oblique Marching.*

The inſtructor of the drill will have the oblique march frequently practiſed, in platoon, in ſub-diviſions, and in file: (Vide Sect. 35, 36.) He will ſee when in diviſions, that the rear-ranks lock well up, and cover exactly;—when in file, that the exact diſtances are preſerved between the files: and in both caſes, that the platoon during its march continues parallel to the poſition, from which it *commenced* obliquing.

S. 56. *Increaſing and diminiſhing the front of an open column halted.*

Fig. 5. B. *Increaſing.*

The platoon ſtanding in open column of ſub-diviſions (ſuppoſe the right in front) receives from the inſtructor of the drill a caution to Form Platoon——

FORM PLATOON.

The commander of the platoon turning round inſtantly orders, *Rear Subdiviſion, left Oblique,*—*Q. March.* When it has obliqued ſo as to open its right flank, he gives the word *Forward*; and on its arriving in a line with the firſt diviſion he orders, *Halt, Dreſs*, and takes poſt on the left, the pivot flank of the platoon.

Rear S. diviſion, left Oblique.
Q. March.
Forward.

Halt, Dreſs.

Fig.

Fig. 5. A *Diminiſhing.*

FORM SUBDIVISIONS	On the cautionary command from the inſtructor of the drill TO FORM SUBDIVISIONS, the ſerjeant coverer falls back to mark the point where the left flank of the ſubdiviſion is to be placed.—The commander of the platoon advancing one ſtep, orders *Left Subdiviſion, inwards face*, and inſtantly on facing, the three leading files diſengage to the rear.
Left Subdiviſion, inwards face.	
Q. March.	At the word *Q. March*, the file paſſes round, and behind the ſerjeant, and at the proper inſtant receives the words; *Halt, Front—Left, Dreſs.*—The commander of the platoon is now on the left flank of the firſt ſubdiviſion, and his ſerjeant on that of the ſecond.
Halt, Front. Left, Dreſs.	

It is to be obſerved as a general rule in diminiſhing the front of a column, by the doubling of ſub-diviſions or ſections (whether the column be halted or in motion) that the ſub-diviſion or ſection, on the *reverſe* flank, is the one behind which the other ſub-diviſions, or ſections, double.——Thus when the right is in front, the doubling will be in the rear of the right diviſion; and, vice verſa, when the left is in front; by which means, the column is at all times in a ſituation to form line to the flank, with its diviſions in their natural order, by ſimply wheeling up on the pivot flanks.—And in encreaſing the front of a column, the rear ſub-diviſions, or ſections, oblique

to

to the hand the pivot flank is on; ſo that when the right is in front, the obliquing will be to the left; and the reverſe when the left is in front.

S. 57. *Increaſing and diminiſhing the Front of an Open Column on the March.*

Fig. 6. B. *Increaſing.*

FORM PLATOON. *Left oblique.* *Quick March.* *Forward.* *Ordinary.*	The platoon marching at the ordinary time in open column of ſub-diviſions (ſuppoſe the right in front), receives from the inſtructor of the drill the cautionary command, FORM PLATOON; the commander of the platoon inſtantly turning round gives the words, *Left oblique—quick march*; on which the rear ſub-diviſion obliques to the left, and as ſoon as its right flank is open, receives the word, *Forward.*---When it gets up to the firſt ſub-diviſion (which has continued to march, with the utmoſt ſteadineſs, at the ordinary pace), the commander of the platoon gives the word *Ordinary*, and takes poſt on the pivot flank, towards which he has been moving.

Fig.

Fig. 6. A. *Diminiſhing.*

FORM SUBDIVISIONS.	When the inſtructor of the drill gives the caution to FORM SUBDIVISIONS, the commander of the platoon advancing one
Left Sub-diviſion, Mark time.	ſtep, immediately orders, *Left ſub-diviſion, mark, time*; this it does until the right one, which continues its march ſteadily at the ordinary pace, has cleared its flank; he then orders the
Quick Oblique.	left ſub-diviſion, *Quick oblique*, and when he perceives that it has doubled properly behind the right one, he gives the
Forward.	word, *Forward*, on which it takes up the ordinary march, and follows at its due diſtance of wheeling, he himſelf being then placed on the pivot flank of the ſub-diviſion, and his ſerjeant on that of the ſecond.

The ſame directions that apply to encreaſing or diminiſhing by ſub-diviſions, apply equally by ſections, which individually repeat the ſame operations.

Increaſing and reducing the front of a column, is an operation that will frequently occur in the march of large bodies; and it is of the utmoſt importance that it be performed with exactneſs.-- The inſtructor of the drill muſt therefore be particularly attentive, that the tranſition from one ſituation to the other be made as quick as poſſible; that the leading diviſion continues its march at the regular time and length of pace, and the exact diſtances between the diviſions

be

be accurately preferved.---During the operation, the ranks muft be clofed, arms carried, and the greateft attention required from each individual.

S. 58. *The Platoon in Open Column of Sub-divifions to pafs a fhort Defilé, by breaking off Files.*

Fig. 7. C.

The platoon is fuppofed in open column of fub-divifions, with the right in front, marching in ordinary time; when the leading divifion is arrived within a few paces of the defilé, it receives from the inftructor of the drill an order to break off a certain number of files, (fuppofe three).---The commander of the leading divifion inftantly gives the words, *Three files on the left, right turn*; the named files immediately turn to the right, and wheel out in rear of the three adjoining files.---The commander of the fub-divifion himfelf clofes into the flank of the part formed.---When the fecond fub-divifion comes to the fpot where the firft divifion contracted its front, it will

BREAK OFF 3 FILES.

Three files, right turn.

will receive the ſame words of command from its own leader, and will proceed in like manner.

Two files, right turn.

Should it be required to diminiſh the front of the column one or two files more, the commander of the leading diviſion will, as before, order the deſired number of files to *turn*; on which thoſe already in the rear will incline to the right, ſo as to cover the files now ordered to break off, and which are wheeling out in the manner already preſcribed.

In this movement, the files in the rear of the ſub-diviſions muſt lock well up, ſo as not to impede the march of the ſucceeding diviſion.

Three files to the front.

As the defilé widens (or the inſtructor of the drill ſhall direct) the commander of the leading ſub-diviſion will order files to move up to the front, by giving the word, *One, two,* or *three files to the front*; on which the named files turn to their front (the left), and lengthening their pace, march up, file by file, to the front of their ſub-diviſion, and immediately reſume the ordinary pace.---Thoſe files which are to continue in the

the rear will oblique to the left, lengthening alſo their ſtep, till they cover, and are cloſed up to the three files on the left flank of their ſub-diviſion.

S. 59. *Marching in Quick Time.*

The platoon muſt frequently be practiſed to march in quick time, particularly in file, until the men have acquired the utmoſt preciſion in this movement, which is ſo eſſential in all deployments from cloſe column.—The platoon will alſo occaſionally be marched in front at the ſame ſtep, as it may be frequently required from ſmall bodies.

S. 60. *Forming to the Front from File.*

HALT, FRONT.

CAUTION.

The platoon when marching in file may form to its front, either in ſections, ſub-diviſions, or in platoon.— The right flank being ſuppoſed to lead, on the word, HALT, FRONT, the platoon inſtantly halts, and faces to its left: the CAUTION is then given, BY SECTIONS, SUB-DIVISIONS, or PLATOON, ON THE

MARCH. — LEFT BACKWARD WHEEL, and at the word MARCH, the wheel ordered is made, in the manner directed in Sect. 48.

FRONT FORM PLATOON. — But in situations where it may have been necessary to order an extension of files, (such as will sometimes occur in marching through the streets of a town) a body thus moving, in order to avoid incorrect distances between the divisions, may form to the front in the following manner, either by platoon, sub-divisions, or sections.—On the word, TO THE FRONT FORM PLATOON; the front rank man of the leading file alone halts, and is instantly covered by his center and rear rank men: every other file of the platoon makes a half face to the left, and successively moving up, dresses on the right file; when the commander of the platoon sees it is properly dressed, he gives the word, *Eyes left*, and places himself on the pivot flank.

Eyes left.

FRONT FORM SUB-DIVISIONS. — Should the order have been, TO THE FRONT FORM SUB-DIVISIONS (FORM SECTIONS), the leading sub-division, or section, will proceed in the manner already detailed for the platoon; the succeeding sub-divisions,

divisions, or sections, will each continue moving on, until its front file arrives at the proper forming distance from the division in its front, when it will receive from its commander the word, *To the front form*, and will instantly form up, by files, in the manner already described.

Front form.

S. 61. Forming from File to either Flank.

The platoon marching in file (suppose from the right) has only to halt, and front to be formed to the left flank.

Right form.

To form to the right it will receive the word, *To the right form*; the front rank man of the leading file, instantly turns to his right, and halts; his center and rear rank men at the same time move round and cover him.—All the other files of the platoon make a half turn to their left, and move round successively, in a line with the right hand file; the center and rear rank men of each file, keeping closed well up to their file leaders.

S. 62. *To form to either Flank, from Open Column of Sub-Divisions.*

HALT.
LEFT WHEEL INTO LINE MARCH.

The platoon marching in the ordinary time in open column of ſub-diviſions, to form to its left, receives the words, HALT, LEFT WHEEL INTO LINE.—MARCH, &c. and proceed as has already been ſhewn in Section 50.

RIGHT FORM PLATOON.

Halt, right wheel.

Halt, right dreſs.

Left oblique.

Forward.

To form the platoon to its right flank, the inſtructor of the drill gives the cautionary word of command, TO THE RIGHT FORM THE PLATOON; on which the commanders of the ſeveral diviſions ſhift to the right flank, and the commander of the leading ſub-diviſion inſtantly gives the word to his diviſion, *Halt, right wheel*; and when it has wheeled ſquare, he orders, *Halt, right dreſs*; goes to the right flank of his diviſion, and dreſſes it on the intended line of formation.—The commander of the other ſub-diviſion, on the leading one being ordered to wheel, gives the word, *To the left oblique*, and gradually inclines, ſo as to be able to march clear of the rear rank of the diviſion forming; this being well effected, the word, *Forward* will be given

given to the division, and it will move on in the rear of the one formed.—When the second sub-division is arrived at the left flank of the first, its commander gives the word, *Right wheel*, then, *Halt, dress up*; on which the division moves up into the line, with the one formed; and its commander, from the left of his first division, dresses his own on the given flank point as quickly and as accurately as possible, and resumes his proper platoon place.

Halt, Right wheel. Halt, dress up.

S. 63. *The Platoon moving to the Front, to gain Ground to a Flank, by a March in Echellon, by Sections.*

Fig. 8.

In the drill of the platoon, when the soldier is completely formed, he may be taught to march in echellon, by sections. This is a very useful movement for a battalion, or large body moving in line, that is required to gain ground to a flank, and may be substituted instead of the oblique march.—It will be performed in the following manner.

SECTIONS, RIGHT.

FORWARD.

The platoon marching to the front in the ordinary time, receives the word, BY SECTIONS TO THE RIGHT; the right hand men of the front rank of each ſection, turning in a ſmall degree to their right, mark the time two or three paces, during which the ſections are wheeling in ordinary time on their pivot men; at the fourth pace, and at the word, *Forward*, the whole move on direct to the front that each ſection has now acquired, and the commander of each ſection, having taken poſt on the right of his diviſion, the platoon continues its march in echellon.

FORM PLATOON.

FORWARD.

On the word, FORM PLATOON, the pivot men mark the time for three paces, turning back in a ſmall degree to their left, the original front, and the ſections inſtantly wheel backward into line; at the fourth pace the whole move forward. When the platoon is in two ranks only, two paces inſtead of three will be ſufficient to mark time, and to ſtep off at the third, inſtead of the fourth pace.

S. 64.

S. 64. From three Ranks forming in two Ranks.

FORM TWO DEEP.	The platoon halted, is ordered, FORM TWO DEEP; the rear rank men of the left sub-division instantly step back one
LEFT FACE.	pace; on the word LEFT FACE, the rear rank of both sub-divisions face; the word QUICK
QUICK MARCH.	MARCH is then given, on which the men of the rear rank of the left sub-division step short, until those of the right get up to
Fig. 9.	them; they then move on with them in file; as their rear is clearing the left flank of the platoon, the commander (who has shifted to this flank during the movement) gives the words
Halt, front. Dress up.	*Halt, front, dress up*, he instantly dresses them on the standing part of his platoon, and resumes his post on the right.—One third, or one more sub-division, is thus added to the front of the company.

If a battalion is standing in open-column, it may thus encreafe the front of its companies, before it forms in line:—But if it is already in line and is thus to encreafe its front, its companies must take sufficient intervals from each other, before their respective rear ranks can come up.—If a battalion in line is posted, and without deranging its front is to lengthen out a flank by the aid of its rear rank; it would order that rank to wheel backwards by sub-divisions: The last sub-division of each company would close up to its

 first

first one: All the sub-divisions (on the head one) would move forward to open column: An officer would be named to command those of each two companies: The open column would move on, and wheel into line on the flank of the battalion.—In this manner also would a line of several battalions lengthen itself out by the rear ranks of each.

S. 65. *From two Ranks forming into three Ranks.*

Fig. 9. FORM THREE DEEP.	The platoon being halted and told off into three sections, it receives the word FORM THREE DEEP; on which the third section instantly steps back one pace;
RIGHT FACE.	the word RIGHT FACE is then given, and the man on the right of its front rank, on facing, disengages a little to his right;
QUICK MARCH.	on the word QUICK MARCH, the front rank men of the third section step off, those of the other rank mark the time till they have past, and then follow.——When the leading man has got to the right of the platoon, the commander gives
Halt, front.	the word *Halt, front*, on which each man halts, faces to his left, and instantly covers his proper file leader.

A rear rank which has lengthened out, and formed on the flank of its battalion, would return to its place, by wheeling back into open column of subdivisions; marching till each arrived at its flank point; the leading rank of each would wheel up and cover; and the second rank would move behind it, and also wheel up.

S. 66. 67. 68. 69. In

Exercise of Company.

In pursuance of the foregoing instructions, and on the principles they contain, every company of a battalion must be frequently exercised by its own officers, each superintending a rank, or an allotted part of the whole.—And on the space of 70 or 80 yards square, can every circumstance be practised that is necessary to qualify it for the operations of the battalion —That space being pointed out by under officers, or other marks, as directed at the latter end of the first part, the company will exercise, both at open and close files, without arms, and with arms, as follows.

By Ranks.

1. March in single file, by successive ranks, along the 4 sides of the square.—The same, by twos.

2. March, and wheel, by ranks of fours:—File off singly and double up, preserving proper distances, and not quickening on the wheel.

3. March, and wheel, by sub-divisions of ranks.

4. March, and wheel, by whole ranks.

5. March to front, and to rear; ranks at 10 paces asunder.

6. March

6. March the company in a ſingle rank, to front, and to rear, by a flank, and by the center.

7. Oblique by ranks.

8. Open, and cloſe files, and intervals, by the ſide ſtep.

9. March in file, to either flank.

10. Ranks ſucceſſively advance 6 or 8 paces; halt, and dreſs.—Ranks ſucceſſively fall back 6 or 8 paces; halt, and dreſs.

11. Advance, or retire 2 or 3 flank men; the ranks dreſs to them.

12. Open, and cloſe ranks.

At Cloſe Ranks, and Files.

13. March, and wheel in all directions, by ſub-diviſions, and by company.—Shorten ſtep, and lengthen it, the march to be made both in ordinary and quick time.—The wheels to be made in wheeling time.

14. Advance, and retire, 2 or 3 flank files, and dreſs to them.

15. Open, and cloſe to the flank, by the ſide-ſtep.

16. Change front by the counter march by files.

17. March to the flanks, cloſe and without opening out.—Form to the front, or to either flank.

18. March oblique.

19. Sub-diviſions double on the march, and again form up, by obliquing.

20. Wheel backwards by ſub-diviſions.—March along the line, to prolong it:—form to the flank, by wheeling up; or to the front by obliquing.

21. File from the flank of company to the rear, as in the paſſage of lines: *Halt, front*;—Cloſe into pivot file:—Wheel up, as in forming in line.

22. From 3 deep, form 2 deep.

23. From 2 deep, form 3 deep.

24. Exerciſe of the firelock, manual, and platoon, by ranks, and company.

25. Firings by files, ſub-diviſions, and company.

The neceſſary pauſes, and formations, betwixt theſe movements, in order to connect them, muſt of courſe be made.—They may be practiſed in whatever ſucceſſion ſhall at the time, be found proper.—The greateſt preciſion muſt be required, and obſerved, in their execution, according to the rules already laid down.

Every

Every officer must be instructed in each individual circumstance required of a recruit, or a soldier; also in the exercise of the sword: and accustomed to give words of command; with that energy, and precision, which is so essential.—Every officer, on first joining a regiment, is to be examined by the commanding officer; and, if he is found imperfect in the knowledge of the movements required from a soldier, he must be ordered to be exercised that he may learn their just execution. Till he is master of those points, and capable of instructing the men under his command, he is not to be permitted to take the command of a platoon in the battalion.

Squads of officers must be formed, and exercised by a field officer; they must be marched in all directions, to the front, oblique, and to the flank; they must be marched in line, at platoon distance, and preserve their dressing and line from an advanced center; they must be placed in file at platoon distance, and marched as in open column; they must change direction, as in file, and cover anew in column. In these, and other similar movements, the pace and the distances are the great objects to be maintained.—From the number of files in division, they must learn accurately to judge the ground necessary for each, and to extend that knowledge to the front of greater bodies. They must acquire the habit of readily ascertaining, by the eye, perpendiculars of march, and the squareness of the wheel.

An officer must not only know the post, which he should occupy in all changes of situation, the commands which he should give, and the general intention of the required movement; but he should be master of the principles, on which each is made; and

and of the faults that may be committed, in order to avoid them himſelf, and to inſtruct others.—Theſe principles are in themſelves ſo ſimple, that moderate reflection, habit, and attention, will ſoon ſhew them to the eye, and fix them in the mind; and individuals, from time to time, when qualified, muſt be ordered to exerciſe the battalion, or its parts.

The complete inſtruction of an officer enlarges with his ſituation, and at laſt takes in the whole circle of military ſcience:—From the variety of knowledge required of him, his exertion muſt be unremitting, to qualify himſelf for the progreſſive ſituations at which he arrives.

Beſides the inſtruction peculiar to the under officers, they ſhould be exerciſed in the ſame manner as the officers are, as they are frequently called on to replace them:—The neceſſity alſo of order, ſteadineſs, ſilence, and of executing every thing deliberately, and without hurry, ſhould be ſtrongly inculcated in the infantry ſoldier.

D. D.

End of PART SECOND.

PART III.

Of the BATTALION.

A perfect Uniformity in the Formation and Arrangement of all Companies and Battalions, is indispensible for the Execution of just and combined Movements.

FORMATION of the COMPANY.

THE company is always to be sized from flanks to center.

The company is formed three deep.

The files lightly touch when firelocks are shouldered and carried, but without crouding; and each man will occupy a space of about 22 inches.

Cloſe order is the chief and primary order, in which the battalion and its parts at all times aſſemble and form.—Open order is only regarded as an exception from it, and occaſionally uſed in ſituations of parade and ſhow.—In cloſe order; the officers are in the ranks, and the rear ranks are cloſed up within one pace.—In open order; the officers are advanced three paces, and the ranks are two paces diſtant from each other.

Each company is a platoon.—Each company forms two ſub-diviſions, and alſo four ſections.—But as ſections ſhould never be leſs than five files, it will happen, when the companies are weak, that they can only (for the purpoſes of march) form three ſections, or even two ſections.

When the company is ſingly formed; the captain is on the right, and the enſign on the left, of the front rank, each covered by a ſerjeant in the rear rank. The lieutenant is in the rear, as alſo the drummer and pioneer in a fourth rank, at three paces diſtance.

The left of the front rank of each ſub-diviſion is marked by a corporal.—The right of the left ſub-diviſion may be marked by the other corporal.

When neceſſary, the places of abſent officers may be ſupplied by ſerjeants, thoſe of ſerjeants by corporals, and thoſe of corporals by intelligent men.

When the company is to join others, and the battalion, or part of it, to be formed; the enſign and his covering ſerjeant quit the flank, and fall into the fourth rank, until otherwiſe placed.

S. 70. *When the Company is to take Open Order from Close Order.*

Rear Ranks take Open Order.	At this command, the flank men on the right and left of the rear ranks, ſtep back to mark the ground on which each rank reſpectively is to halt, and dreſs at open diſtance; they face to the right, and ſtand covered; every other individual remains ready to move.
March.	At this command, the rear rank dreſſes front, and the rear ranks fall back one and two paces each dreſſing by the right, the inſtant it arrives on its ground:—the officers move out in front three paces, and divide their ground: one ſerjeant is on each flank of the front rank:—the pioneer remains behind the center of the rear rank:—the drummer places himſelf on the right of the right ſerjeant.

S. 71. *When the Company is to take Cloſe Order from Open Order.*

Rear Ranks take Cloſe Order.

The officers, ſerjeants, drummer, face to the right.

March.

The ranks cloſe within one pace, marching one and two paces, and then halting.

The officers move round the flanks of the company in their reſpective poſts:—the ſerjeants and drummers fall back, and each individual reſumes his place, as in the original cloſe order.

The above regards the company when ſingle; but when united in the battalion, other poſts are allotted to the drummer and pioneer.

FORMATION OF THE BATTALION.

Strength of the battalion.

The battalion is ten companies, { 1 Grenadier, 8 Battalion, 1 Light.

Each company conſiſts at preſent of { 3 Officers, 2 Serjeants, 3 Corporals, 1 Drummer, 30 Private.

Formation of the battalion.

When the companies join, and the battalion is formed, there is to be no interval between any of them, grenadier, light company, or other; but every part of the front of the battalion ſhould be equally ſtrong.

Each company which makes a part of the ſame line, and is to act in it, muſt be formed and arranged in the ſame manner.

Poſition of the companies in battalion.

The companies will draw up as follows from right to left:—grenadiers;—1ſt captain and major;—4th and 5th captain;—3d and 6th captain;—2d captain and lieutenant-colonel;—light company.——The colonel's company takes place according to the rank of its captain:—the four eldeſt captains are on the right of the grand diviſions:—officers commanding companies or platoons, are all on the right of the front rank of their reſpective ones.

Diviſions.

The eight battalion companies will compoſe four grand diviſions;—eight companies or platoons,—fi

teen

teen ſub-diviſions,—thirty-two ſections, when ſufficiently ſtrong to be ſo divided, otherwiſe twenty-four, for the purpoſes of march.—The battalion is alſo divided into right and left wings.—When the battalion is on a war eſtabliſhment, each company will be divided into two platoons.—When the ten companies are with the battalion, they may then, for the purpoſes of firing or deploying, be divided into five grand diviſions from right to left.

The battalion companies will be numbered from the right to the left, 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8.—The ſub-diviſions will be numbered 1. 2. of each;—the ſections will be numbered 1. 2. 3. 4. of each;—the files of companies will alſo be numbered 1. 2. 3. 4. &c.—The grenadier and light companies will be numbered ſeparately in the ſame manner, and with the addition of thoſe diſtinctions.—Theſe ſeveral appellations will be preſerved, whether faced to front or rear.

The companies muſt be equalized in point of numbers, at all times when the battalion is formed for field movement; and could the battalions of a line alſo be equalized, the greateſt advantages would ariſe; but though from the different ſtrengths of battalions this cannot take place, yet the firſt requiſite always muſt, and is indiſpenſible. Companies equalized.

Ranks are at the diſtance of one pace, except the fourth or ſupernumerary rank, which has three paces. Formation of the battalion at cloſe order.

All the field officers and the adjutant are mounted.

The commanding officer is the only officer advanced in front, for the general purpoſe of exerciſe when

 the

the battalion is ſingle; but in the march in line, and in the firings, he is in the rear of the colours.

The lieutenant-colonel is behind the colours, ſix paces from the rear rank.

The major and adjutant are ſix paces in the rear of the third and ſixth companies.

One officer is on the right of the front rank of each company or platoon, and one on the left of the battalion; all theſe are covered in the rear rank by their reſpective ſerjeants; and the remaining officers and ſerjeants are in a fourth rank behind their companies.—It is to be obſerved, that there are no coverers in the center rank to the officers or colours.

The colours are placed between the fourth and fifth battalion companies, both in the front rank, and each covered by a non-commiſſioned officer, or ſteady man in the rear-rank.—One ſerjeant is in the front rank betwixt the colours; he is covered by a ſecond ſerjeant in the rear rank, and by a third in the ſupernumerary rank.—The ſole buſineſs of theſe three ſerjeants is, when the battalion moves in line, to advance and direct the march as hereafter mentioned. The place of the firſt of thoſe ſerjeants, when they do move out, is preſerved by a named officer or ſerjeant, who moves up from the ſupernumerary rank for that purpoſe.

Uſe of the fourth or ſupernumerary rank.

The fourth rank is at three paces diſtance when halted, or marching in line.—When marching in column, it muſt cloſe up to the diſtance of the other ranks.—The eſſential uſe of the fourth rank is, to keep the others cloſed up to the front during the attack, and to prevent any break beginning in the rear; on this important ſervice, too many officers and non-commiſſioned officers cannot be employed.

The

The pioneers are aſſembled behind the center, formed two deep, and nine paces from the third rank.

The drummers of the eight battalion companies are aſſembled in two diviſions, ſix paces behind the third rank of their ſecond and ſeventh companies.— The grenadier and light company drummers and fifers are ſix paces behind their reſpective companies.

The muſic are three paces behind the pioneers in a ſingle rank, and at all times, as well as the drummers and pioneers, are formed at looſe files only, occupying no more ſpace than is neceſſary.

The ſtaff of chaplain, ſurgeon, quarter-maſter, and ſurgeon's mate, are three paces behind the muſic.

In general, officers remain poſted with their proper companies; but commanding officers will occaſionally make ſuch changes as they may find neceſſary. Officers.

Whenever the officers move out of the front rank, in parade, marching in column, wheeling into line, or otherwiſe, their places are taken by their ſerjeant coverers, and preſerved until the officers again reſume them. Replacing ſerjeants.

When the line is halted, and eſpecially during the firings when engaged, the ſerjeant coverers fall back into the fourth rank, and obſerve their platoons.

S. 72. When the Battalion takes Open Order.

Rear Ranks take Open Order. At this command—the flank men on the right of the rear ranks of each company ſtep briſkly back to mark the ground on which each rank reſpectively is to halt. They *face* to the right, and cover as pivots, being regulated and dreſſed by the adjutant or ſerjeant-major on the right.—Every other individual remains ready to move.

March. At this command—the flank dreſſers face to the front, and the whole move as follows:

The rear ranks fall back one and two paces, each dreſſing by the right the inſtant it arrives on the ground.

The officers in the front rank, as alſo the colours, move out three paces—thoſe in the rear, together with the muſic, move through the intervals left open by the front rank officers, and divide themſelves, viz. the captains covering the ſecond file from the right, the lieutenants the ſecond file from the left; and the enſigns oppoſite the center of their reſpective companies.

The muſic form between the colours, and the front rank.

The

The ſerjeant coverers move up to the front rank, to preſerve the intervals left by the officers.

The pioneers fall back to ſix paces diſtance behind the center of the rear rank.

The drummers take the ſame diſtance behind their diviſions.

The major moves to the right of the line of officers.—The adjutant to the left of the front rank.

The ſtaff place themſelves on the right of the front rank of the grenadiers, viz. chaplain, ſurgeon, quarter-maſter, mate.

The lieutenant colonel, and the colonel (diſmounted), advance before the colours, two and four paces.

The whole being arrived at their ſeveral poſts—Halt—Dreſs to the Right—and the battalion remains formed in parade, in the order in which they would receive a ſuperior officer.

When the battalion is reviewed ſingly, then in order to make more ſhow—the diviſion of drummers may be moved up, and formed two deep on each flank of the line—the pioneers may form two deep on the right of the drummers of the right—and the ſtaff may form on the right of the whole.

S. 73. *When the Battalion refumes Clofe Order.*

Rear Ranks take Clofe Order.	The lieutenant-colonel, officers, colours, ftaff, mufic, face to the right.
	The drummers and pioneers (if on the flanks) face to the center.
	The ferjeants (if in the front rank) face to the right.
March.	The rear ranks clofe within one pace, moving up one and two paces, and then halting.
	The mufic marches through the center interval.
	The ferjeants, drummers, pioneers, &c. &c. refume their places, each as in the original formation of the battalion in clofe order.
	The officers move through and into their refpective intervals, and each individual arrives, and places himfelf properly at his poft in clofe order.

On

On particular occaſions, and when neceſſary, officers commanding platoons, who in line are on the right of their platoons, ſhift to the left to conduct the heads of files, or the pivot flanks of their diviſions in column or echellon. Poſting of officers.

When the battalion wheels by companies or ſub-diviſions to either flank into column; both colours and the file of directing ſerjeants always wheel to the proper front, and place themſelves behind the third file from the new pivot. Colours.

There is no ſeparate colour reſerve; the pioneers, muſic, &c. ſufficiently ſtrengthen the center; but in the firings the two files on each ſide of the colours may be ordered to reſerve their fire. Colour reſerve.

The conſtant order of the light company when formed in line, and united with the battalion, is at the ſame cloſe files as the battalion.—Their extended order is an occaſional exception. Light company.

When the light company is detached, and the grenadier company remains, it will be undivided on one flank of its battalion, whenever there are ſeveral battalions in line: but when the battalion is ſingle, it is permitted to be occaſionally divided on each flank. Grenadiers.

When the grenadier or light companies are detached, and make no part of the line, they may be formed two deep, if it is found proper.

With a very few obvious alterations, theſe general rules take place when a company or battalion is permitted or ordered to form in two ranks only—and which, on the preſent low eſtabliſhment of our battalions,

lions, may often be done for the purposes of exercise and movement on a more considerable front: it is also evident that they generally apply whether the companies are strong or weak, and whether a greater or lesser number of them compose the battalion.

GENERAL CIRCUMSTANCES PREPARATORY TO THE MOVEMENTS OF THE BATTALION.

S. 74. Commands.

All words of command, and particularly the words HALT or MARCH, must be given short, quick and loud, so as to be caught and repeated from right to left of a line, or from front to rear of a column, in the shortest time possible.

All Alterations, in carrying ARMS; change of PACE; WHEELING; FACING; OBLIQUING; HALTING; MARCHING; and in general every operation of the battalion whether in line or column, which ought to be executed by the whole battalion at the same instant, are made by

by each in consequence of one word from the commander of each: but there are also many occasions in column, and in forming line, where the leaders of divisions repeat, or give the words of *March*, *Wheel*, *Halt*, *Front*, *Dress*, &c. to their several divisions, as is necessary.

Every officer must be accustomed to give his words of command, even to the smallest bodies, in the full extent of his voice, and in a sharp tone:—by such bodies he must not only be heard, but by the leaders of others who are dependant on his motions.—The justness of execution, and the confidence of the soldier, can only be in proportion to the firm, decided, and proper manner in which every officer of rank gives his orders.—An officer who cannot thoroughly discipline and exercise the body entrusted to his command, is not fit in time of service to lead it to the enemy; he cannot be cool, and collected in the time of danger; he cannot profit of circumstances from an inability to direct others; the fate of many depends on his ill or well acquitting himself of this duty.—It is not sufficient to advance with bravery; it is requisite to have that degree of intelligence, which should distinguish every officer according to his station: nor will soldiers ever act with spirit and animation, when they have no reliance on the capacity of those who do conduct them.

In the midst of surrounding noises, the eye and the ear of the soldier should be attentive only to his own immediate officer; the loudness of whose commands, instead of creating confusion and unsteadiness, reconcile to the hurry of action.

On all occasions when words of command are not heard, if the directing body has made a change of situation, the rest of the body will conform to it,

as ſoon as the intelligence of the officer has pointed out what is meant to be done; and the eye will often ſhew the propriety and moment of movement, when the ear has not received the explanatory command.

The field officers and adjutant of the battalion are at all times mounted.—In order the more readily to give ground in movements, ſpeedily to correct miſtakes, to circulate orders, to dreſs pivots, when they ought to cover in column in a ſtraight line, and eſpecially to take care when the column halts, that they are moſt ſpeedily adjuſted before wheeling up into line.—Theſe operations no diſmounted officer can effectually perform, nor in that ſituation can he ſee the faults, or give the aids which his duty requires.

S. 75. *Diſtance of Files.*

Except in the inſtruction of recruits and ſquads, on ſome occaſions of regimental parade or inſpection, and in the peculiar exerciſe of the light company, open files are not to be uſed, and at all times the battalion, or its moſt minute parts are to form, move, and act at CLOSE FILES, ſo that each ſoldier when in his true poſition under arms, ſhouldered, and in rank, muſt juſt feel with his elbow the touch of his neighbour with whom he dreſſes; nor in any

any ſituation of movement in front, muſt he ever relinquiſh ſuch touch, which becomes in action the principal direction for the preſervation of his order, and each file as connected with its two neighbouring ones muſt conſider itſelf a complete body ſo arranged for the purpoſe of attack, or effectual defence.

It cannot be doubted, when a battalion arrives at its object of attack at CLOSE FILES, that both its impulſe and quantity of fire in the ſame extent of front is greater than when the files are more open; and ſhould crowding be apprehended, it is at all times more eligible to have a diviſion obliged to fall out of the line and double, than to have openings in it, where the enemy muſt certainly penetrate.

The perfect and correct march of a battalion or line formed at OPEN FILES ſeems hardly attainable, becauſe its principal guidance, the touch of the files, does not exiſt; each man is neceſſarily employed to preſerve a required diſtance from his neighbour, he is obliged for that purpoſe to turn his head, this diſtorts his body, and gives him a direction contrary to the perpendicular line he ſhould march on, a conſtant opening and cloſing takes place, and the whole move looſe and unconnected.—If this muſt neceſſarily happen in a ſingle battalion, the influence on a line may be eaſily imagined, and alſo the condition in which it will arrive near an enemy; who if he is formed at CLOSE FILES, if his dreſſing and line are chiefly determined by the touch; if the eyes alone are glanced towards the center of battalions; if the figure of each individual is full to the front; if the whole move ſquare along their juſt lines without crouding at an uniform and cadenced pace, which habit alone, unchecked by falſe and adventitious

aids

aids has given:—He at every inſtant of movement or attack will be firm, united and animated with that ſenſe of his own ſuperiority which perfect order and due conſiſtence will always give.

S. 76. *Diſtances of Ranks.*

There are two diſtances of ranks, *Open* and *Cloſe*.—When open they are two paces aſunder.—When cloſe they are one pace.—When the body is halted and to fire, they are ſtill cloſer locked up.

Cloſe ranks or order is the conſtant and habitual order at which troops are at all times formed and move.—*Open* ranks or order, is only an occaſional exception, made in the ſituation of parade.

The diſtances of files and ranks relate to the trained ſoldier, but in the courſe of his tuition he muſt be much exerciſed at open files and ranks to acquire independance and the command of his limbs and body.

S. 77. Depth of Formation.

The fundamental order of the infantry, in which they ſhould always form and act, and for which all their various operations and movements are calculated, is in *three ranks*:—The formation in *two ranks* is to be regarded as an occaſional exception that may be made from it, where an extended and covered front is to be occupied, or where an irregular enemy who deals only in fire is to be oppoſed. --But from the preſent low eſtabliſhment of our battalions, they are during the time of peace permitted, in order to give the more extent of front in their operations, to continue to form and uſe it, in many of their movements and firings, at the ſame time not omitting frequently to practiſe them in three ranks.

The formation in two ranks, and at open files, is calculated only for light troops in the attack and purſuit of a timid enemy, but not for making an impreſſion on an oppoſite regular line, which vigorouſly aſſails, or reſiſts.---No general could manage a conſiderable army if formed and extended in this manner.---The great ſcience and object of movement being to act with ſuperiority on choſen points; it is never the intention of an able commander to have all his men at the ſame time in action; he means by ſkill and manœuvre to attack a partial part, and to bring the many to act againſt the few; this cannot be accompliſhed by any body at *open* files, and *two* deep.---A line formed in this manner would never be brought to make or to ſtand an attack with bayonets, nor

nor could it have any profpect of refifting the charge of a determined cavalry.---In no fervice is the fire and confiftency of the third rank given up; it ferves to fill up the vacancies made in the others in action, without it the battalion would foon be in a fingle rank.

S. 78. *Mufick and Drums.*

The ufe of MUSICK or DRUMS to regulate the march is abfolutely forbid, as incompatible with the juft and combined movements of any confiderable body, and giving a falfe aid to the very fmalleft.---They never perfevere in the ordered time or in any other, are conftantly changing meafure, create noife, derange the equality of ftep, and counteract the very end they are fuppofed to promote. The ordered and cadenced MARCH can be acquired and preferved from the eye and habit alone, and troops muft by great practice be fo fteadied as to be able to maintain it, even though drums, mufick, or other circumftances, fhould be offering a different marked time.---On occafions of parade and fhow, and when troops are halted, they are properly ufed, and when circumftances do not forbid it, may be fometimes permitted

mitted as inſpiriting in column of march, where unity of ſtep is not ſo critically required.—But in all movements of manœuvre whatever, and as at any time directing the cadence of the ſtep, or in the inſtruction of the recruit, officer or battalion, they muſt not be heard.

S. 79. The March.

1. All military movements are intended to be made with the greateſt quickneſs, that is conſiſtent with order, regularity, and without hurry or fatigue to the troops.—The uniformity of poſition, cadence, and length of ſtep produce that equality and freedom of march, on which every thing depends, and to which the ſoldier muſt be carefully trained, nor ſuffered to join the battalion until he is thoroughly perfected in this moſt eſſential duty. General intention.

2. The different degrees of march have been already detailed in the firſt, and ſecond parts, and to theſe muſt the ſoldier be trained and accuſtomed without drum, or muſic, and by habit alone taught to acquire the given times, and length.—To the equal and unvaried cadence and length of ſtep thus attained, can troops alone truſt for the preſervation of their line in advancing upon an enemy, when duſt, the ſmoke of artillery, rain, fog, and many other local circumſtances, make it impoſſible to depend on Degrees of march.

 diſtant

diſtant points, the uncertain time given by timid muſicians, or any other adventitious help.

3. A company or diviſion may occaſionally run, a battalion may ſometimes march quick, but the hurrying of a large column, or of a body moving in front, will certainly produce confuſion and diſorder. It is never to be riſqued when an enemy is in preſence and to be encountered; though it may ſometimes be neceſſary where a poſt or ſituation is to be ſeized.

Side ſtep.

4. The uſe of the ſide or cloſing ſtep has been already mentioned *S.* 43.—If more than one platoon is to cloſe, at the words, &c. CLOSE—MARCH—HALT, the cloſing body proceeds as directed *S.* 13. 43. If the body which is to cloſe is truly formed, and has no falſe openings in it which are to be corrected, but that the whole is meant to be ſhifted to a named flank; the word from the commanding officer puts in march, and halts the whole. But if the intention is to correct improper intervals between platoons or files, the word from the commanding officer puts the whole that are to cloſe in march towards the ordered hand; and each platoon officer ſeparately and ſucceſſively gives his word *Halt* at the proper inſtant that his platoon has cloſed to that hand; this he is the better enabled to do from being himſelf out of the rank, and facing his platoon.

Halts.

5. All halts are made to the point, to which the troops while in march are looking; by bringing up the rear foot to the advanced one, ſo as to finiſh the ſtep which is taking, when the command is given; and after which no dreſſing or movement whatever is to be made, until a ſeparate order directs it.

Oblique march.

6. The oblique march enables a body to preſerve its parallel direction, and at the ſame time to gain

ground

ground to the flank, as well as to the front, without filing or opening out.—It is particularly necessary for the battalion in line, when intervals are to be corrected, and in the forming up, and doubling of its divisions.—With a body of any extent it is a very nice operation to execute. Each battalion in line obliques without turning eyes from its own center.—One degree of obliquing only (under the angle of about 25°) is to be required from an extended front of troops, and even in that it is exceeding difficult to preserve them: but the smaller divisions of the battalion will often be obliged in forming up, or in doubling, especially when in movement, to oblique more or less sharply, according to circumstances.— S. 8. 35. 55. Fig. 1.

S. 80. Wheeling.

1. A single rank or division might at all times wheel to a *halted flank*, without alteration of the time at which it is then marching; by the outward wheeling man preserving the usual length of step, and the others properly shortening theirs to remain dressed with him:—The same might take place in column, whose divisions were equal, and when the wheel is under 1-6th of the circle.—But when it exceeds that portion, it becomes necessary in order to clear the ground, prevent false distances, and a lengthening out; that the divisions successively make their wheels to their *halted flank* at a pace considerably Wheeling in general.

quicker

quicker, than what the body of the column is moving at.

Wheels made on halted or moveable pivots.

2. Wheels of divifions of a battalion or line, are made on a halted pivot, or on a moveable pivot.—When on a HALTED pivot they are made from line into column, or from column into line; and alfo generally by the column of manœuvre or march in movement, when the front of it is confiderable, and when the wheel by which its direction is to be changed approaches to, or exceeds the quarter circle.—When on a MOVEABLE pivot, they are only ufed and occafionally ordered in the column of march, when its front is fmall, and that its path is winding, and changeable; in that cafe both flanks are moveable and defcribe concentric circles round a point which is removed a few paces from what would otherwife be the ftanding flank.

Fig. 4. B.

On a halted pivot.

3. The various circumftances attending the wheels on the HALTED pivot have been detailed in the firft, and fecond parts.—Although the paufe made after the *Halt,—Drefs*, gives time in large fronts, for exact dreffing, yet in fmall ones where that paufe is fhort, there is no time for fuch exactnefs, the attention to, and prefervation of the true diftance being then the material object.—Whenever the wheel made is lefs than the quarter circle, the paufe after the wheel will be confiderable; fhould the wheel be greater than the quarter circle it muft be accelerated, otherwife more than one divifion will be arrived and arrefted at the pivot point.—Should a column be marching in quick time, it is evident that its wheels muft be in proportion quickened to difengage in time the pivot point, for each fucceffive divifion.

Fig. 4. B.

On a moveable pivot.

4. When the column of fections, fub-divifions, or companies, is obliged frequently to change its direction

tion of march, and that it is permitted to do it on the MOVEABLE pivot (*S.* 21. 52.) inſtead of a halted pivot.—If the pivot leader deſcribes the ſmaller circle of the wheel, he leaves the point on which he marched, and where the old, and new directions interſect, cloſe to his own hand wheeled to.—When he deſcribes the greater circle, he leaves ſuch point wide from his own wheeling hand.—In both caſes the more conſiderable the ſweep he makes from the old to the new direction, the eaſier, and more gradually can the other flank conform, and therefore when this mode is made uſe of, the column is ſuppoſed to have ſufficient room on its flanks to allow of the neceſſary operations: for if both flanks cannot be kept in progreſſive movement during the change of direction, the wheels cannot be thus made, but muſt be executed quick, and on *fixed* pivots, otherwiſe the ground would not be clear for the ſucceeding diviſions, and they would ſtop each other, and interfere.—In this manner will the column on a ſmall front follow the windings of a route, be conducted through an open wood, or trace out the irregular edge of a height, which it is to occupy; and indeed on all common occaſions of route marching, where perfect correctneſs is not required, it will thus change into new directions. Fig. 4. B.

5. Wheels of diviſions may be made either forward, or backward.—In general (and always in progreſſive movement), they are made forward, but particular occaſions require that they ſhould be made BACKWARD, on the pivot flank.—In this manner may the line wheel into open column of platoons, ſub-diviſions, or ſections: the flank ſides of the ſquare, or oblong may thus wheel into column, when the body is to be put in march: the line already formed may be thus prolonged when neceſſary to either flank, as the pivots are thus preſerved: it is alſo advanta- Wheel of diviſions backwards.

 geouſly

geously used in marching off parades, where guards are of different strengths, and is often essentially necessary in narrow grounds.—By this means although divisions should be unequal, either in the same battalion, or in a line, yet all their pivot flanks will after the wheel remain truly dressed; of course the distances will be just, the line of marching accurately preserved, and each division by afterwards
Fig. 21. B. wheeling up will exactly occupy the identical ground it quitted.—Whereas in wheeling FORWARD from line into open column, even if the divisions are of equal strength, the pivots and distances after the wheel will not be true, because the different sizes of men, and the least over or under wheel of any one
Fig. 21. A. division will derange them, which in practice will infallibly happen.—But if the divisions are of unequal strength, independant of the pivots necessarily not covering, the distances which the column marches off at, must be all changed during the march, otherwise when the column is to wheel up, and form, strong divisions would have to wheel into the space, which the weaker ones had left, and *vice versâ*; the consequence and confusion thence arising is obvious.

General rule. 6. To prevent therefore such inconvenience it must be regarded as a rule almost general—That all wheels by companies or smaller divisions from battalion or line (when halted) into open column should be made BACKWARD, and all wheels from open column into line FORWARD: The only necessary exceptions seem to be in some cases in narrow grounds where there is not room for such wheels.—If the division does not exceed 16 or 18 file, it may readily wheel back without facing about; but if the division is stronger and the ground uneven, it must *Face about*—*Wheel*—and then *Halt, front.*

7. In

7. In wheeling BACKWARD from line into column, when the right is to be in front, the wheel is made ON the left; and when the left is to be in front, the wheel is made ON the right.—In wheeling FORWARD the ſtanding flank man faces outward from his diviſion: In wheeling BACKWARD, he faces inward to his diviſion.—In wheeling FORWARD the proper pivot flank of the column is the wheeling one: In wheeling BACKWARD, the pivot flank is the ſtanding one, and remaining fixed, the diviſions however unequal will always cover on that hand, which will not be the caſe if the wheel is made forward. In wheeling FORWARD, the command is TO THE RIGHT, (or) TO THE LEFT, WHEEL: In wheeling BACKWARD, the command is ON THE RIGHT, (or) ON THE LEFT, BACKWARD WHEEL.

When wheels of diviſions are made backwards, or forwards.

8. As the circumference of the quarter circle which a diviſion deſcribes in its wheel, is one half more, (nearly) than its front; it is neceſſary that in open column, it ſhould, in the time that it takes to march over a ſpace equal to the extent of its front, not only complete the wheel of the quarter circle, but be enabled to move on at its juſt diſtance from its preceding diviſion, and not to ſtop that which ſucceeds it. The wheel muſt therefore be quickened, or the ſtep lengthened (or part of both applied) in proportion to the general march.

Circumſtances in wheeling.

Number of files in a division, each occupying 22 inches	5.	10.	12.	14.	15.	16.	18.	20.	30.	40.	50.	100.
Front of divisions in ordinary paces of 30 inches.	P. In 3.20	7.10	8.24	10.8	1.	11.22	13 6	14.20	22.	29.10	36.20	70.10

9. A division

9. A divifion confifting of 10 files, and each occupying 22 inches, will at paces of 30 inches take 7 paces 10 inches for its front.—Now 75 fteps in a minute being the ordinary time, and 120 the wheeling time, 75: 120 :: $7\frac{1}{3}$: $11\frac{2}{3}$ nearly the number of wheeling paces of 30 inches each, which the wheeling man can take while the following divifion is making its $7\frac{1}{3}$ ordinary paces in front, and 11 of which exactly completes the quarter circle: but if each of thefe 11 paces is lengthened with 3 inches, then the wheel will be completed in 10 fteps, and a paufe of one pace and 2 3ds of a pace, or 5-6ths of a fecond of time, will be referved for the *Halt*, *Drefs*, and *March* of the divifion after it has at 10 long paces of 33 inches completed the wheel.—This paufe will encreafe or diminifh according to the greater or leffer extent of the wheeling body, and in the above proportions of time and ftep, it is 1-7th of the time employed by fuch body in wheeling the quarter circle.——This allowance which is barely fufficient in a divifion of 10 files, and which cannot well be encreafed, either by length of ftep, or quicknefs of time, fhews how pointed and quick the commands muft be, not to occafion a lofs of ground to each fucceffive divifion at the points of wheeling.

10. It appears that the front of any divifion or body, is in ordinary paces of 30 inches, nearly 3-4ths of the number of files of which it is compofed.—That the circumference of the quarter circle which it defcribes is in wheeling paces of 33 inches, the fame as the number of files on which it is compofed.——That the number of files being once afcertained in each divifion, the officer commanding it muft on all occafions recollect the number of paces that are equal to his front; alfo the number of wheeling paces which the flank man muft take to complete the quarter circle; Neceffary recollections.

3 cle;

cle; alſo the ſpare time, which he has to regulate the *Halt*, *March* of his diviſion after wheeling.

Wheeling paces required to deſcribe	The 6th of the circle, or an angle of 60°.	are	$\frac{2}{3}$	of the number of files of which the front conſiſts.
	The 8th - -	45°	— $\frac{1}{2}$	
	The 16th - -	22°. $\frac{1}{2}$	— $\frac{1}{4}$	
	The 32d - -	11°. $\frac{1}{4}$	— $\frac{1}{8}$	

11. The field officers and adjutants muſt always recollect the number of paces the front of the battalion and its diviſions occupy, in order to take up ground exactly in all formations.

S. 81. *Movements.*

1. Every movement muſt be divided into its diſtinct parts, and each part executed by its explanatory and ſeparate words of command.

2. Alterations of poſition in conſiderable bodies ſhould begin from a previous halt; except giving a new direction to the heads of columns, or encreaſing or diminiſhing their front which may be done while in motion.

3. The exerciſe of ſmall bodies when within the command of one voice appears more ſhowy from the keeping ſuch bodies conſtantly in motion, and by changing from one manœuvre to another while on the march.—But ſuch movements and the formations

made

made from them muſt be on accidental points, and however brilliant in battalion practice, and review appearance, where the leſſon of the day has been previouſly arranged, they can only be conſidered as occaſional exceptions not applicable to large bodies, where hurry muſt be avoided, and where concert, and relative poſition are indiſpenſible.

4. As the principle of moving, forming, and dreſſing upon given and determined points is juſt, all quick alterations of poſition of a conſiderable body, attempted while on the move, and not proceeding from a previous halt (however ſhort) are falſe, and defective, the effects of which though not ſo apparent in a ſingle battalion would be very obvious in a line or column of any extent.—A pauſe between each change of ſituation ſo eſſentially neceſſary to the movements of great bodies, ſhould ſeldom be omitted in thoſe of ſmall ones; ſquareneſs of dreſſing, the exact perpendiculars of march, and the correct relative poſition of the whole, are thereby aſcertained.—Such alterations of ſituation made from the halt may when neceſſary ſucceed each other quickly; and in many caſes no unneceſſary time need be taken up in ſcrupulous dreſſing, but every one may be inſtantly apprized of the following movement, which circumſtances require.

S. 82. *Points*

S. 82. *Points of March.*

1. Every leader of a body which is to move directly forward in front, muſt take care to conduct it in a line truly perpendicular to that front.—To march ſtraight on one object only with certainty and without wavering, is not to be depended on; two objects therefore placed and preſerved during the march in the ſame ſtraight line are neceſſary for the purpoſes of correct movement, when the intent is truly to prolong a given line.

2. Two objects will therefore in general be prepared for the direction of any conſiderable body: But ſhould a leader, either in file or in front, have only one marked point of march aſcertained to him, he will himſelf inſtantly look out for his ſmall intermediate points, which are always to be found, which he will from time to time renew, and which are to preſerve and determine the accuracy of his movement towards the more diſtant point. (V. S. 42.)

S. 83. *The Alignement.*

1. To march or form in the ALIGNEMENT, is to make troops march, or form in any part of the ſtraight line which joins two given points.—On the juſtneſs and obſervance of this line, depends the accuracy of the moſt eſſential movements and formations, and therefore every relative help muſt be applied to enſure it.

2. In formations of defence the lines occupied may be curved, and following the advantages of the ground, but in thoſe of attack, the lines muſt be ſtraight, otherwiſe the troops in advancing muſt inevitably fall into confuſion.

3. When troops are to form in a ſtraight line, two neceſſary points in it muſt always be previouſly aſcertained.—One the point of APPUI (A. a. a.) at which one flank of the body, whether ſmall or great, is to be placed, and the other the point of FORMATION or DRESSING (D.) on which the front of the body is directed. Fig. 12.

4. When battalions, or diviſions of a battalion come up ſucceſſively into line, the outward flank of the laſt formed and halted body is always conſidered as the point of APPUI (a. a.) or ſupport of the ſucceeding one, and in this manner is the general line prolonged from each ſucceſſive point of Appui, towards the given diſtant point of formation (D).—The looking and lining of the ſoldier in forming is always towards the point of Appui, and the correction of dreſſing is always from that point towards the oppoſite hand,—This great principle is to be obſerved, from the ſmalleſt body to the moſt conſiderable corps, and regulates the formation of the diviſion, the battalion, and the line. Fig. 12.

S. 84. *Points*

S. 84. Points of Formation.

1. In the movements of a fingle battalion, and in the taking up of a new pofition, it may not feem material whether a flank is placed a few yards to the one hand or other, or whether the line formed on is exactly directed on any certain point.—But when a battalion makes a part of a more confiderable body, then all its pofitions being relative to other battalions and to given points, if its formations are not accurate and juft, it will create general confufion and give falfe directions and diftances to thofe whofe fituation muft be determined by it.—The neceffity therefore of every fingle battalion being accuftomed to make its changes of pofition, and formations on determined points, is apparent, and is an object which commanding officers muft always hold in view, and have their adjutants and others prepared and inftructed accordingly.

Neceffity of formations made on given points.

Bafe line, and method of prolonging it.

2. The line on which troops in column move, or are fucceffively to form, is taken up to any extent by the prolongation of an original fhort and given BASE, eftablifhed where they firft begin to enter, or form on that line, the direction of which is determined by the views of the commander, and which can feldom fail to point on fome diftant and diftinct object, that will ferve to correct the pofition of the different perfons who fucceffively as their feparate bodies require it, prolong the line from the feveral points already eftablifhed in it.——In general therefore the point (A.) where a formation or entry into an alignement is to be made being marked by a fixed perfon, the commander will place a fecond (o.) 30 or 40 paces, without the firft, exactly in the direction which he determines to give

Fig. 13.

to

to his new line, and which will generally be on ſome diſtant object. Theſe two perſons will mark a baſe, which by adjutants (a. a. a.) or others ſucceſſively aligning themſelves backwards on the two firſt placed men, and on each other, may be prolonged to any required length, at the ſame time that the diſtant point (D.) ſerves for the commander who perhaps alone knows it to correct them upon.

3. Two original or baſe points (o. A.) which are to be prolonged or formed upon, ſhould not be too cloſe together, otherwiſe the direction of the line muſt be indiſtinct, and the farther they are aſunder the better can a line be taken upon them.—Where two points (o. A.) are to be given in a certain direction towards a diſtant one (D.) the innermoſt (A.) ſhould be firſt determined, and the outer one (o.) is immediately and eaſily taken over the innermoſt, and the diſtant one (D.) of correction.—Should the outer one (o.) be firſt taken, time is loſt in directing the ſhifting of the inner one (A.) before it is truly lined on the more diſtant point (D.); beſides the point (A.) in many changes of poſition of a line or column is naturally the firſt aſcertained (being the pivot flank of a company on which the change is to be made, or the point of march towards which the column is moving) and from thence the diſtant point (D. is then taken, which gives the new direction, and depends on the eye and intention of the commander; the eaſy aſcertaining of (o.) follows of courſe.—Or the commander after aſcertaining (A.) will fix (o.) *ad libitum*, and find out (D.) if ſuch object preſents itſelf in the prolongation of the other two.—At any rate (A.) is the point firſt to be determined on.

Methods of aſcertaining points of movement for formation.

Fig. 13.

4. When the perſons who prolong a line are on horſeback, the head of the horſe of each ſtanding perpendicular to that line is the object, and when they diſmount their own breaſt is the object, which the

Poſition of prolongers of lines.

the ſhoulders of the leaders of the diviſions of a column in march, raſe in paſſing, and which is in the line of the head of the horſe.—It is alſo the breaſt of ſuch other men, as may be poſted on foot, which the ſeveral leaders in the like manner raſe, as they ſucceſſively arrive at them.

Although the leaders of the two firſt diviſions of a column march on the perſons placed in the line, yet if its direction happens to be on ſome remarkable object, they ſhould as ſoon as poſſible diſcover it, or be ſhewn it as the general correction of the march.

Fig. 14.

Method of prolonging a line by officers or ſerjeants.

5. When a number of officers or ſerjeants (s. s. s. s.) are to be individually, ſucceſſively, and ſeparately advanced in order to give a direction on which pivots of the diviſions of a column are to ſtand; or flanks of diviſions which ſucceſſively come into line are to be halted, or on which the dreſſing of a battalion is to be corrected—Two ſuch perſons will be truly, and previouſly placed, and the others the more exactly to attain a perfect line, inſtead of attempting at once to dreſs by each others breaſts, will firſt cover in FILE with preciſion at their required diſtances, and then carefully front as directed, before their ſeveral diviſions move up to them.—Were ſuch perſons to endeavour to take up their ground at firſt, by dreſſing in a line; the leaſt inclination backward or forward of the body, and the certainty of the ſhoulders turning, when the eyes are directed to a flank, would make it a difficult operation: But in FILE when each places himſelf ſquare on the line, covering the necks of thoſe before him, the inclination of the body backward or forward does not affect the direction, and the end propoſed is at once attained.

Fig. 12.

6. In ſucceſſive forming of diviſions into line, as from cloſe column, from echellon, &c. the firſt diviſion (A. a.) that arrives in, and is truly formed on it may

may be confidered as the BASE which is conftantly prolonging for the others; the men as they come up endeavour to line well on the part already formed, and the officer corrects that lining on the diftant point in the true prolongation which is prepared for him by his adjutant or other perfons, juft beyond where the flank of his battalion is to extend, and thus battalion after battalion arrive in line.

7. The afcertaining of the points neceffary for the movements and formations of the battalion is the particular bufinefs of the adjutant in the field; and in this exercife he may be affifted by two detached perfons placed behind each flank of the battalion, who are properly trained, quickly to take up fuch line as he fhall give them; but for this purpofe they are not to run out before their aid is wanted, nor are they to make any unneceffary buftle, and when the operation for which they were fent out is accomplifhed, they will immediately return behind their proper flank.

S. 85. Dreffing.

1. In DRESSING when halted, a fmall turn of the head is neceffary, and is allowed in order to facilitate it.——When the word *Drefs* is alone given, it means to the hand to which the troops are then looking, and when eyes are at the fame time to be turned to a new point in order to drefs, it fhould be fo expreffed

by the addition of *right*, *center*, or *left*.——But whenever the word *Halt, Drefs*, is given by an officer to his divifion, it always implies that the men are looking, or are to look to fuch officer, who is then on the flank of Appui.

2. All DRESSING is to be made with as much alacrity of officer and foldier as poffible, and the dreffer of each body as he accomplifhes the operation will give a caution *Front*, that heads may then be replaced, and remain fquare to the front. If the body to be dreffed is extenfive, as that of a battalion or parade, the dreffer muft juftly place one divifion before he proceeds on that which is beyond it.

Fig. 15.

General attentions of dreffing in all formations.

3. On all occafions without exception of FORMING and DRESSING in line, it muft be remembered that the foldiers come into line with their eyes directed to the general point of *Appui* (A) where the leading flank is to reft, and of courfe towards whatever part of a line is nearer that point than themfelves, which may be already formed before them, and is to them a direction.——But the officer in dreffing (without exception) is placed on that flank of his divifion or body towards which the mens eyes are turned, and from thence he makes his corrections of the other flank on the diftant point (D) which is previoufly marked by the adjutant, or fome other perfon placed in the true general line; therefore on all occafions by the men lining themfelves to one hand, and the officers correcting to the other, the moft perfect line may be obtained.——Should it be neglected to give or prepare fuch points of correction, the dreffing of the line would be irregular, and flow, and depend entirely on the men taking it up from each other, and from the firft formed flank, which is an imperfect method, and can never produce a juft line, capable of marching forward in due order.——The having fuch points

Fig. 15.

quickly and fucceffively prepared the inftant before they are wanted, and without any noife, or apparent buftle, fo that no delay may be made in the operations of the battalion or line, is one of the great attentions of the commanding officer and adjutant, to which alfo the intelligence of the trained perfons placed behind the flanks will much contribute.

4. If the open column is to enter on an alignement, there muft be three prepared points; one (A) where it enters, and which ferves as a future point of correction in march, and in forming; and two more (a. D) always advanced before it. Points neceffary to be given in movements or formations. Fig. 13.

5. If the clofe column is to form in line on a flank divifion, it muft have a point (D) of march and correction beyond the other flank, and intermediate fmall points muft alfo be taken by the leader of the front divifion, in order to preferve its direction of movement. If it forms on a central divifion, it muft then have a point of correction to each flank (D. D.) and march juftly on intermediate ones. Fig. 16.

6. If a battalion takes a new pofition by the echellon march, there muft be a point (A) given where its leading flank enters the line and forms on it, and another (D) juft beyond its extreme flank on which the dreffing of each divifion is corrected. Fig. 12. 15.

7. If the battalion changes pofition to a flank, by the filing of divifions, the prolongation of two points (A. o.) given in front of the pivot flank of its leading divifion will determine the direction of the other pivots.—If the change is central, one central point (a) and one (o. o.) on each fide of it being prolonged will determine in like manner the line of the other pivots. Fig. 14. 18.

8. The commander will himſelf generally have a diſtant point, on which he will determine thoſe battalion points, and which will ſerve him as his point to correct the whole.—Independent therefore of the partial helps which advanced ſerjeants may give to the formation and dreſſing of their ſeveral diviſions, it may be obſerved with reſpect to one or more battalions, that in marching in front, or in column, *two* advanced points and *one* rear point are neceſſary: and in ſucceſſive formations into line, beſides its point of *Appui* which each body moves up to, *one* diſtant point taken in the determined direction, and beyond where the battalion is to extend, is eſſential for the correction of its dreſſing, and in this line is every diviſion exactly brought up, and dreſſed.

OPEN COLUMN.

Formation of columns.

1. All Columns are ſuppoſed formed from line for the convenience of movement, and for the purpoſe of again extending into line.—Every column of march or manœuvre muſt be formed by a regular ſucceſſion of the diviſions from right to left of the line, or of ſuch of its parts as compoſe the column, for whatever is the relative poſition of a body in line, ſuch ought it to be in column: and where ſeveral connected columns are formed, the ſame flanks of each ſhould be in front, but whether Rights or Lefts will depend on circumſtances.——Columns formed from

from the center of battalions or lines, ſhould ſeldom be made, are partial, and not adapted as the others are to movements and formations in all ſituations.

2. The chief objects of the OPEN column are, facility of movement, the quick formation of the line to the flank, and the change of ſituation in the ſhorteſt lines from one poſition to another.—It is named the column of march or ROUTE, when applied to common marches, where the attention of men and officers are not ſo much kept on the ſtretch.—It is named the column of MANOEUVRE, when being within reach of the enemy the greateſt exactneſs is required in order to its ſpeedy formation at any inſtant into line during its tranſition from one poſition to another. Columns of march and manœuvre.

3. Columns of march or manœuvre will generally be compoſed of companies or ſub-diviſions.—For the purpoſes of movement they need not exceed 16, or 18 files, nor ſhould they be under 6 files in front, when the formation is three deep, otherwiſe there will not be ſpace to looſen the ranks, and the battalion will of courſe be lengthened out.—An open column occupies the ſame extent of ground as when in line, minus the front of its leading diviſion: But a body obliged to march any diſtance in file, will at leaſt occupy one half more ground than it requires in line; ſuch ſituation is therefore to be avoided. Front and extent of column.

4. From line the column is formed, and marches to the front, flanks, rear, or in any intermediate oblique direction, with either its right or left in front.—In each caſe the battalion or line WHEELS the quarter circle by diviſions to either flank and HALTS. The whole MARCH.—The leading diviſion *wheels* into, or moves on, in the preſcribed direction, and the reſt follow in column. Formation of the open column from line.

5. The

5. The open column, or the column at half or quarter diſtance, may alſo be formed oblique or perpendicular to the line, on any giving diviſion; by the other diviſions (according to which flank is ordered to lead) wheeling, filing, and placing themſelves in front, and rear of the given one.

6. Columns of march or manœuvre will be formed with the left in front, whenever it is probable that the formation of the line will be required to the right flank; and *vice verſa*, when required to the left flank.

Battalion Open Column.

Dreſſing in column.

Fig. 13.

1. In column diviſions cover and dreſs to the proper pivot flank: To the left, when the right is in front: and to the right, when the left is in front.—The *proper* pivot flank in column is that which when wheeled up to preſerves the diviſions of the line in their natural order, and to their proper front: The other may be called the *reverſe* flank.

Diſtance of ranks.

2. In column rear ranks (if not ordered to be locked up) are one pace aſunder.—When a conſiderable diſtance is to be marched, they may be opened half a pace more, but without encreaſing the diſtances of diviſions, which remain ſuch as are preſcribed according

cording to the object of the movement, and which are always taken from front rank, to front rank.

3. The post of commanding officers in column, is each near the flank of the leading division of his battalion.

4. Each division of which a column is composed is conducted by a leader placed on its pivot flank of the front rank which is his general post.—In a column of companies or platoons such leader is the platoon officer.—In a column of sub-divisions the officer leads the head sub-division of his company; and his covering serjeant in battalion the second.—In a column of sections the platoon officer leads the head section of his company; his serjeant the middle one; and an officer or serjeant from the rear the last one.——When divisions are filing from column into a new position, their several leaders conduct their heads.—When any considerable continuation of the march is the object, and that pivot officers are permitted to be in front of their divisions, their flank posts must be occupied by non-commission officers, who remain answerable under their direction for the preservation of the proper distances. Leading officers.

5. In open column, the artillery, music, drummers, &c. of battalions wheel with and remain closed up to the rear of their respective divisions.—In column at half or quarter distance, they may occasionally if there is space move in file, on the flank which is not the pivot one.—instead of being kept collected, they may in column of march be sent to their respective companies to remain in the rear of each: But on no occasion whatever is the assembling of them to be allowed to lengthen out, or interfere with the movements of the battalion or column, or to encrease the intervals betwixt battalions in column. Music, drummers, &c.

 6. On

6. On all occaſions of wheeling from line into open column (except where the narrowneſs of ground prevents it) the diviſions WHEEL BACKWARDS on their pivot flanks.—The advantage ſo great, and the neceſſity ſo evident of having the *pivots* remain covering each other truly, as well as having juſt diſtances preſerved, is thereby ſecured, which will never be the caſe in *wheeling forward*, from the different ſtrength of battalions in a line, and of companies or diviſions in the ſame battalion.——In wheeling backward if diviſions do not exceed 16 or 18 file, they may readily WHEEL back without facing about, but if diviſions are ſtronger and the ground uneven, they muſt FACE about—WHEEL—and then *Halt, front*.

Fig. 21. 59.

Wheeling forward into line.

7. When an open column is to form in line to its proper front, the diviſions will always WHEEL FORWARD on their pivots: But ſhould it be meant to reverſe the front, the PIVOTS themſelves muſt then wheel forward, which will prevent any falſe diſtances, that unequal diviſions would occaſion, although the flanks they do wheel upon, may not then be in a regular line.—Should the diviſions of the column be of equal ſtrength the front may then be reverſed by wheeling back upon the pivots which will preſerve the regularity of the alignement.

Fig. 25.

Wheeling on the center.

8. Platoons muſt be accuſtomed to wheel occaſionally upon their CENTER, half backward, half forward, and to be pliable into every ſhape which circumſtances may require, but always in order, and by the decided commands of their officers.

Filings.

9. All marches of battalions are made in column of companies, or other diviſions, never by files where it can poſſibly be avoided.——Filings are only applied to the internal movements and formations of the diviſions of the battalion and in ſome changes of poſition,

poſition, not to any conſiderable manœuvres of the entire battalion, or of greater bodies.

10. All wheelings, and filings made from the halt, from line to form in column, or from column to form in line, are made at a quick ſtep. Wheelings in column.

11. When the rear ranks cloſe or open on the march, in the one caſe they will ſtep nimbly up, in the other they will ſlacken their pace until the due diſtance is attained.—In both caſes the front rank continues to proceed at its then rate of march. Opening or cloſing of rear ranks.

12. In an open column of manœuvre of one or more battalions, the diviſions ought as much as poſſible to be equalized.—The whole muſt be put in march at the ſame inſtant, and the ſtep preſerved, equal as to time and length whether marching on level or inclined ground.—Every diviſion muſt trace out the exact track which the leading one does; nor muſt any part make a partial alteration of pace.—Theſe circumſtances obſerved which will preſerve the juſtneſs of wheeling diſtances, and the covering of pivot flanks; and no embarraſſments being allowed in the intervals of battalions, an exact line to the flank is at any inſtant procured, by the wheel of the quarter circle; and all cloſing in, unſteady ſhifting, and after dreſſing is avoided. Peculiar attentions in the open column of manœuvre.

13. The countermarch by files of the diviſions of a column each on its own ground; changes a column that is ſtanding with its right in front, into a column with its left in front, and thereby enables it to return along the ground it has gone over, and to take new poſitions without altering or inverting the proper front of the line (S. 53. 100.) Fig. 40 B. Countermarch by files.

14. The

Fig. 41. 42.
Counter-march by divifions.

14. The countermarch by divifions fucceffively from the rear to the front, changes the leading flank of the battalion column, but allows it to continue its former direction of march, and is a previous manœuvre often neceffary and required to enable a battalion to take up a relative pofition. (*S.* 101.)

All counter marches neceffarily change the pivot flanks of columns.

Fig. 22. 24.
Wheels in column.

15. Open column of companies will in general wheel on a *fixed* pivot, except that in the continuation of a march, they have fufficient ground gradually to make their changes of direction on a movable one, if fo ordered.—Columns of fubdivifions or fections will always wheel on a *movable* pivot when it can be done.—Columns at half or quarter diftance muft alfo make their neceffary wheels on a *movable* pivot, otherwife a ftop muft enfue.

The front of column not to be altered when marching in an alignement.

16. No doubling up, encreafing, or diminifhing the front of the column muft be made, after entering on a ftraight alignement, in order to form in line. Such operation when neceffary fhould be performed, before the line of formation is entered on.

Fig. 24. 25.

17. In whatever manner the leading divifion of a battalion column arrives in a ftraight alignement on which it is to form, a mounted officer always gives the point where it enters.—And when arrived at its ground, that it halts and is to form, the commanding officer from that divifion corrects if neceffary the pivot files on the fixed diftant points, before the divifions wheel up into line.

Pivot officers.

Fig. 24.

18. Pivot officers of columns when marching in an alignement, muft be fteady on the flanks of their divifions, as they give the true wheeling diftance, and covering of the pivots in their own perfons: They

muft

muſt not look to or endeavour to correct the march of their diviſions, that care muſt be left to ſerjeants, and other officers in the rear. The pivot files of men (that they alſo may be truly covered when halted), muſt be cloſe to, but not touch, or derange, their leaders in the march.—The pivot files of the open or cloſe column in march are always directed and conducted on the given points of march, whether the column is moving in a line on which it is to form, or whether it is moving up to a point where it is to change its direction; and the leading officer in column always leaves the object on which he has marched, or at which he wheels, cloſe on his outward hand.

Officers and colours in the alignement.

19. When marching in a ſtraight alignement there muſt never be more than one officer (or leader) on the pivot flank of each diviſion, all others are either on the oppoſite flank, or in rear of the diviſions.—Nor are ſuch leaders then covered in the rear ranks by their ſerjeants, in order that they may the more eaſily ſee, and diſtinctly cover, each other in the given line.

The colours cover the 3d files of men from the pivot, and muſt be ready to move up, when the line is to be formed.

Officers that conduct the 2 leading diviſions of a column muſt not be ſhort-ſighted.

20. In marching in an alignement on advanced points, ſuch points muſt be known and viſible to the leader of the ſecond as well as of the firſt diviſion; becauſe ſuch ſecond leader muſt preſerve his firſt, and the given points in the true line, and on the accuracy of the poſition of thoſe two leaders depends the covering of the rear ones.—Officers who have an indiſtinct ſight, can never lead the two firſt diviſions of a column marching in a ſtraight alignement, and muſt therefore on ſuch occaſion be replaced by other

other perſons, whoſe accurate viſion enables them to preſerve and prolong the juſt line which the whole are to follow.

Marching in an alignement.

21. All marching in the alignement muſt be made in ordinary time, and taken up before, or from the point where it is entered with preciſion, the pivot officers are then peculiarly anſwerable for diſtances, and exact covering of the flanks.—To march with accuracy in an alignement in quick time, ſo as at any inſtant to be ready to wheel up into line, and (without a conſiderable pauſe) to move on, is an operation hardly to be expected, and ſeldom to be required.

Wheeling into line from open column.

22. When the column of companies halts to form: pivot flanks are in an inſtant corrected from the leading diviſion by commanding officers of battalions.—Leading officers move into the front of their platoons. —Their covering ſerjeants place themſelves on the right of each if the wheel is to be to the left; or otherwiſe behind the pivot file if the wheel is to be to the right.—Pivot men of the front rank face ſquare into the new direction.—The whole wheel up, and halt.—Officers dreſs the interior of their platoons, and then replace their ſerjeants who are now in the front rank.—If any farther dreſſing is neceſſary, it muſt be ordered and made by a mounted field officer.

Dreſſing on pivots.

23. If the battalion after wheeling up from column into line, is not critically well dreſſed, the fault muſt be in the internal parts of the diviſions: This muſt be immediately corrected (by each platoon officer) on the pivot men, who on no account muſt move, or ſhift, but remain ſo many given or fixed points on whom the battalion is exactly lined.—Each platoon officer thus only dreſſes within his own platoon; if a more accurate dreſſing is required, it is afterwards given by a field officer.

24. In general the whole of a battalion will be halted on its ground, ſtand in column, and its pivots be adjuſted, before it wheels up and forms: but if neceſſary, and where parts of it arrive in the line by *filing*, they may form ſucceſſively as they come up.—If part of a battalion ſhould therefore be ordered to wheel into line while the other diviſions are not yet in it, the pivot men of thoſe diviſions (and not the officers) muſt cover on the formed part of the line before they wheel up.—And when ſeveral battalion columns changing poſition enter ſeparately, and are to form in the ſame line, each may be ſucceſſively wheeled up, if ſo ordered or intended, when its adjoining one has three or four of its diviſions ſtanding in column on the line. Forming in line. Fig. 25.

25. When a point of entry is marked in a new alignement, the *pivot* flank of the leading diviſion of a column is always directed on ſuch point.—If the line is to be formed, and the head flank placed at ſuch point of entry, the head diviſion will reſt its pivot on the line, and at a diſtance equal to its front from ſuch point.—if the rear flank is to be at that point, the pivot of the rear diviſion will halt at it.—If the point is an intermediate one, a central diviſion will halt at it.—The line will be formed by the wheeling up of diviſions, when they are ſeverally placed upon it.

26. On ſome occaſions (as in paſſing lines, forming cloſe columns, &c.) the platoons or diviſions of a battalion in line are ordered to FILE to front, rear, or into column without firſt wheeling the quarter circle.—An explanatory caution being given, at the word for the battalion to FACE, the platoons face to the point directed, and at the ſame inſtant the three leading files of each throw themſelves to the flank according as they are to move, ſo as to be diſengaged from Diſengaging heads of files. Fig. 36.

from the laſt file of the preceding platoon.—In this ſituation each leader is enabled at the word MARCH, to move independant, without check, and on his proper point.

March in column.

27. The rear diviſions of a battalion, or more conſiderable column in march, conſtantly follow every turning and twiſt which the head makes; each ſucceſſively changing its direction at whatever point the leading diviſion may have ſo done.—When at any accidental moment the column is ordered to HALT, and FORM in line, the pivot men of platoons muſt remain ſteady where they are found at the word HALT, and the diviſions will wheel up into what will probably be a curved, but a juſt line.—If the march in column is again to be reſumed, the line breaks backward, and the rear diviſions at their ordered diſtances will continue to follow the exact path traced out by the head; nor are the following diviſions of a column ever to deviate from this rule, or endeavour of themſelves to get into a ſtraight line when the general direction is a winding one, until an expreſs order is given for that purpoſe: which can hardly ever be the caſe until the head of the column is halted with a determination to form the line in a ſtraight direction.

March of the column thro' a wood, or in embarraſſed ground.

28. The march in column through a thin wood, or in ground where impediments frequently change the direction of its head, or along the winding of heights which are to be occupied, will be beſt made by ſub-diviſions, or by ſections of five or ſix files in front.—The *pivot* files will preſerve exact diſtances from each other, chooſe their own ground, and wind as the trees or other impediments permit, along a general direction:—When the column *halts* and forms, the line will be a continued curve, which can afterwards be eaſily made ſtraight, if circumſtances require it.

Fig. 26.

it.—In ſuch ſituations, at no time if it is poſſible ſhould any of the *pivot* flank leaders be obliged to double or quit the continued line of march; but the other files may be (when impediments are to be paſſed) much opened or looſened from thoſe pivots, who in the mean time moving free and preſerving wheeling diſtances, are in a ſituation at every inſtant to *halt* and form in line, the others cloſing into them.

29. Should the march in a ſtraight alignement be at any time interrupted by pools of water, or any other obſtacle which is impaſſable, the march will be continued ſtraight to that obſtacle, the obſtacle will be ſurrounded (and always if poſſible by deviating to the reverſe flank ſo as to remain behind the line), and the ſame ſtraight line will again on the other ſide be taken up by the pivots, at the point in it which a detached perſon has prepared.—Allowance will be made, when the line is to form, for the breadth of ſuch obſtacle, by the doubling of as many diviſions as will fill up the vacancy (when it can be done) which is thereby occaſioned in the line; nor muſt any ſmall interruptions in the line, that can poſſibly be ſurmounted, ever make the pivots deviate from the ſtraight line, when the intention of forming on the line is evident and known to all.

Obſtacles in march in an alignement.

Fig. 27.

Assembly of the Battalion, and general Circumstances of Exercise.

Assembly of the battalion.

The companies having been inspected by their officers on their particular parades should arrive and stand on the parade of the battalion in open column of companies, and with either right or left in front.—The ground is given by whichever division first arrives on it, and the others arrange themselves in front or rear accordingly.—In this situation are reports made to the commanding officer; companies equalized; music, drummers, pioneers, &c. assembled at their proper stations; all other individuals of the battalion placed; pivot files, and just wheeling distances corrected.—The battalion is then formed in line by wheels of the quarter circle, and by word from the commanding officer; the colours are sent for and posted; and the whole are thus in readiness to move, by sub-division or company column.

March to the ground of exercise.

The march to, and from the field in column, should be considered as one of the most material parts of exercise, and be made with attention, equality of step, just distances, and perfect order.—The front of the march should be frequently encreased and diminished in the manner prescribed (S. 87.), and the battalion at different periods formed by wheels to the flank, to shew that distances have been duly preserved.

The

The exercise of the battalion must frequently be preceded by that of companies in detail, according to the instructions given in the second part.—Therefore when the battalion is arrived on its ground, the officers will be assembled, and those commanding companies informed what particular parts (referring for this purpose to the numbers marked in the exercise of the company), in what succession, and for what length of time, or how often, each operation of the company is to be repeated.---The companies will then by a regular process be separated, by taking intervals in one line, or in two lines, so that each shall have a free space of 40 or 50 yards square.--- They will on that ground begin and finish in nearly the same instants of time, each of the ordered points of exercise.

Exercise by companies

Fig. 19.

S. 86. *Exercise of the Battalion.*

The above being accomplished, the companies will be ordered to assemble in line, or in column, and the BATTALION again united and formed will proceed to its particular EXERCISE as contained in the following articles, which may be classed and arranged according to circumstances, and the views of commanding officers: the modes of executing being detailed hereafter under their proper heads.

Detail of exercise by the battalion.

The Battalion ſtanding in Open Column.

Fig. 74. 1. The column will cloſe to half, quarter, or cloſe column, and again take open diſtances either from the front, or rear diviſion. *S.* 153.

Fig. 40. B. 2. The companies may ſingly countermarch by files. *S.* 100.

Fig. 41. 3. The flanks of the column may be changed by the rear company becoming the front one, in conſequence of a countermarch of the whole column from the rear. *S.* 101.

Fig. 49. 4 The poſition of the column may be changed to either flank, by the companies facing, filing into the new direction, and halting with their pivot flanks on it. *S.* 123.

5. The open column will form in line.—By wheeling up when the whole is in the alignement.---By halting the head diviſions in the line; filing the rear ones into it, and then wheeling up the whole.—By the head diviſion halting on the line, and the rear ones wheeling back into echellon poſition, after which they move up into line. *S.* 118. 124. 127.

6. A front,

Fig. 47. 48. 6. A front, center, or rear divifion of the column may be placed in a new given direction, and the reft by file marching will take up their ground. *S.* 120. 121. 122.

7. The column at half or quarter diftance will form.—By filing into line. Obliquing into line.—Divifions wheeling fucceffively into line and taking open diftances.

8. The divifions may face to either flank, march the lock ftep, halt, and again front into column. *S.* 123.

9. The clofing ftep may be practifed by the whole column at once. *S.* 43.

Fig. 28. 29. 30. 10. The front of the column in march will be increafed, and diminifhed, and the column will occafionally wheel to the flank into line to fhew the prefervation of diftances. *S.* 87.

Fig. 59. 13. 11. From line the companies, or other divifions may wheel backwards on their pivots into open column, and to either hand. *S.* 108.

Fig. 52. 12. March and prolong the line to the flank. *S.* 115.

Fig. 49. *Wheel up into Line.* *S.* 118.

Fig. 47. 48. 80. 13. Change of poſition on a central or flank company by filing, or by the echellon march of companies. *S.* 120. 159.

14. The battalion may march in file to the flank at the lock ſtep, and front. *S.* 94.

15. The battalion may take 20 or 30 ſide ſteps to the flank without opening out. *S.* 43. 79.

16. The battalion may advance in line, and halt. *S.* 166.

17. The battalion may retire in line, and halt front. *S.* 168.

18. The alternate companies will form two lines and march to front and rear, preſerving intervals. *S.* 175.

Fig. 46. 19. Paſſage in file through a ſecond line, or wood, to front or rear, from a flank of each company. *S.* 174.

20. Paſſage of the obſtacle in the march of the battalion, by diviſions doubling as ordered. *S.* 170.

21. The oblique march of the battalion, and change of direction by gradual alteration of the ſhoulders. *S.* 169.

22. The

Fig. 14. 22. The battalion halted to be dreſſed, by advancing the platoon officers, and moving up the men. S. 167.

23. The whole or a wing of the battalion to be thrown forward on the center or flank, by placing a few files, and the reſt turning their ſhoulders, and gradually dreſſing up.—The ſame done backwards gradually at a ſhort ſtep without facing about.—Eyes being directed to the point of forming on all occaſions.

Fig. 75. 76. 24. The battalion will advance, and retire in echellons of companies.—Form in line on any named one.—Throw backward or forward any number of companies into echellon.—Wheel them into oblique line.

25. The battalion retiring in two lines by alternate companies, may make a degree of wheel during the movement, ſo as to give a new direction to the line.

Fig. 31. 33. 35. 26. The battalion may paſs a defile or bridge, to front, or to rear. S. 91. 92.

Fig. 39. 27. The battalion may countermarch by files from one to the other flank.—Alſo upon the center from both flanks.—Alſo from, and upon the center. S. 97. 98.

Fig. 40. A. 28. The battalion may countermarch by diviſions from one to the other flank.—Alſo upon the center from both flanks. S. 99.

29. March

Fig. 37. 38. 29. March of the battalion by divisions from one flank towards the other, either behind or before the front, each division wheeling and following successively the one that precedes it. S. 96.

30. The battalion from line forming the square or oblong, marching, and again forming in line.—Or from the square marching off in double column through a defile.

In Close Column.

Fig. 64. 65. 66. 31. The close column is formed on any named company. S. 137.

32. The direction of the close column is changed. S. 141.

Fig. 74. 33. The close column is opened out from the front or rear, and again closed upon any division. S. 153.

Fig. 70. 71. 72. 34. The close column of two companies in front is formed from the column of one company in front. S. 147.

Fig. 67. 68. 69. 35. The line formed either from the column (of one or two companies in front) halted, on a front, rear, or central division.—Or from the column moving in file to its flank, on a front or rear division.—Or by an oblique deployment of its divisions. S. 144. 148.

36. The

36. The exercife of the firelock in all its parts both by companies and battalion, and efpecially loading and firing.

The FIRINGS may be applied and intermixed with thefe movements as found proper, and fuch other circumftances of formation and exercife as fpace allows of, and as occur to commanding officers, may agreeable to the eftablifhed modes laid down, be from time to time executed.—But the above have been more particularly felected, as including almoft all the various movements that can be required in the operations of the battalion when fingle, or united with others in line: They may be combined according to the ground, and to the views of the commander, and may arife from different fituations by altering or adding the connecting circumftances, and the particular detail of their execution is to be found in the fections referred to.

Light company.

The light company and grenadiers are generally fuppofed acting in line with the battalion: But the light company may be occafionally placed half of it behind each flank of the battalion; in that fituation it is ready to cover the front, rear, or flanks of the column when in march, to protect the forming of the line, or to cover its retreat.—For thefe purpofes it may from time to time be detached and act in divifion or individually as circumftances may require, and in the manner fpecified in its particular exercife.---It can feldom be obliged to run or hurry; in fuch cafes as demand it, it will march quick but in order, with files loofe but not too open, and always under the command and guidance of its officers.

Mode of inftruction.

On all occafions of common parade, a guard, a battalion, or its parts fhould never affemble, or be difmiffed, without performing fome one operation or

 other

other of movement, and of the firelock.—In this manner by ſimple, and imperceptible practice, the ſteadineſs and inſtruction of every individual is attained, and officers become perfect in the three great and important field duties of preciſion and energy in their commands; exact diſtances of march; and the correct dreſſing, and covering of pivots.---The time often unneceſſarily conſumed in the field in detail and manual exerciſe will alſo be ſaved, and the battalion be there ſolely employed in executing the preſcribed movements applied to ſuch circumſtances, and varieties of ground as preſent themſelves to the commanding officer; the modes of execution being already thoroughly underſtood, and inſtantly applied by each individual.

Attention in exerciſe.

Single companies or battalions when at exerciſe muſt generally conſider themſelves as part of a line, and not always detached, or independant bodies: Their movements and formations ſhould be on a ſuppoſition of lining with other troops already placed on their flanks.---Two or more perſons ſeparated at a proper diſtance from one another, and from the company or battalion, may repreſent the flanks and center of an adjoining battalion, and may always firſt take their ſtation in the new line. This would cauſe the formations to be made on determined, not on accidental points; the practice of which latter uſage much tends to occaſion that incorrectneſs and deficiency which ſometimes appears when any number of our battalions are directed to move, act, or form, in concert.---In general the battalion ſhould not be looked on as a perfect or ſeparate body, but only as a member of the line; its movements as relative to and dependant upon thoſe of others, and its principal operations ſhould be calculated accordingly.

Fig. 20.

Fig. 20.

In exerciſe the two flank companies may be occaſionally ſeparated from the battalion, and repreſent the

the center of two other Battalions; one of them will be named as the directing one in march, and the halt and dressing of the battalion will be made from its own center towards each of them, as is directed for a line of battalions.

Diminishing or Encreasing the Front of the Column.

The column of march or manœuvre, in consequence of obstructions in its route which it cannot surmount, is frequently obliged to diminish its front, and again to encrease it, when such difficulties are passed; it is one of the most important of movements, and a battalion which does not perform this operation with the greatest exactness and attention, so as not to lengthen out in the smallest degree, is not fit to move in the column of a considerable corps.

The encrease or diminution of the front of the column is performed by the battalion, when in movement or when halted.—In movement this operation is either done by each company successively, when it arrives at the point where the leading one of the column performed it, or else by the whole companies of the battalion at the same moment.—In either case the chief of the battalion, at the instant that

that it ſhould begin to reduce or encreaſe its front, gives the general CAUTION ſo to do, and the chiefs of companies give their words of execution to the ſub-diviſions or ſections to double behind, or move up quick to the regulating ones which preſerve their original diſtances from each other, and never alter the pace at which the column was marching, but proceed as if they were totally unconnected with the operation that the others are performing.

When the column of companies is to be reduced to that of ſub-diviſions or ſections, it will always be done by the others doubling from their pivot flank, behind their reverſe flank, ſub-diviſion or ſection, ſo that the battalion may remain ready to form in line by a ſimple wheel up to the flank; therefore the doubling will be behind the right when the right is in front, or behind the left when the left is in front. —When the front of the column is to be encreaſed, the ſub-diviſions or ſections that doubled will move up to their leading one by a quick incline.—As in diminiſhing or encreaſing the front of the column in march, the pivot diviſion is the one that quits its direction, the exactneſs of pivots after ſuch operation will appear to be interrupted; but this is of no conſequence, and inſtantly regained in a column of march; it can hardly ever take place in a column of manœuvre which has entered a line on which it is to form.

S. 87. *When*

S. 87. *When a Battalion Column of Companies in March diminishes its Front, either by Companies successively, or the whole Battalion at once.*

When the leading company arrives within 12 or 15 paces of the point where it is necessary to diminish its front; the commander will give a loud CAUTION that the subdivisions are to double either by companies successively, or the whole battalion at once.

Fig. 6. A. *If successively.*------The leader of the head company proceeds as directed (*S.* 57.) and each other does the same when it arrives on the spot where its preceding one doubled.

Fig. 6. *If at once.*------On the general CAUTION from the battalion commander, each company leader, without waiting for each other, proceeds as directed. (*S.* 57.)

S. 88. *When the Battalion Column of Subdivisions in march forms Column of Companies.*

The battalion commander gives a loud CAUTION, that column of companies are to be formed either fucceffively, or by the whole battalion at once.

Fig. 6. B. *If fucceffively.*——Each inclines up as directed *(S. 57.)* when its leading fubdivifion arrives on the ground, where its preceding one formed up.

Fig. 30. *If at once.*——On the general CAUTION from the battalion commander: Each company-leader proceeds as directed *(S. 57.)* without waiting for each other.

When divifions double back or form up in column, ranks muft be clofed, arms carried, and the tranfition from one fituation to the other made as quick as poffible; and as foon as the column is in its new order, the pivot flank leaders place themfelves on thofe pivots.

When the front of a column is to be diminifhed, and the obftacle is before the part which is not to double, fuch part muft incline after the doubling is made in order to pafs it: but timely attention is to be given, to bring up if poffible by inclining the part which is not to double, fquare to the opening through which it is to pafs, before fuch doubling begins.——And when a diminution of front is imme-

diately

diately to follow an alteration in the direction of the march, ſuch alteration ſhould be made with a gradual ſweep, ſo as to give the head of the column its new perpendicular direction, when at leaſt 12 or 15 paces from the point of breaking off.

The ſucceſſive breakings of each diviſion of the column at the point of difficulty, and its ſubſequent moving up again as ſoon as it has paſſed it, is the moſt general practice, but is the moſt likely to lengthen it out, which is the great evil to be avoided.——The reduction of front by the whole battalion at once, is therefore the moſt eligible; and for the ſame reaſon, the encreaſe of front (when the rear of it has cleared the difficulty) by the whole battalion is to be preferred.

As in a conſiderable column the ſucceſſive doubling or forming up of companies would be performed by each when it arrived on the identical ſpot where the leading one of the column doubled or formed up:——So when this operation is done ſucceſſively by battalion, each will at once in the ſame manner perform it when its head is arrived at the ſpot, (and of which it muſt be apprized) where the head of the preceding battalion was, when it ſo doubled or moved up.

Fig. 5. B.—28. *S. 89. When the Battalion Column of Companies is halted, and to diminish its Front.*

CAUTION.	The chief will give the CAUTION to form column of sub-divisions or sections; on which the covering serjeants will fall back and mark the future pivot flank of the doubling sub-divisions.
Inwards Face *Q. March.* *Halt, front.* *Dress.*	The leaders of each company will instantly give the word *Face inwards* (disengaging their heads) *Q. March*; *Halt, front* to their sub-divisions or sections, when behind the standing sub-division or section, and dividing justly the distances that existed between companies; the flank leaders will then place themselves on the pivots.

S. 90.

Fig. 30. 5 B. *S. 90. When the Battalion Column of Sub-divisions or Sections is halted, and to encrease its Front to Companies.*

CAUTION. The chief will give the CAUTION to form Companies.

To the—Oblique. Q. March. Forward. *Halt, dress.* The leader of each company immediately orders the bodies that move up, *To the—Oblique—Q. March—Forward—Halt, dress,* when joined to the standing sub-division or section.------The leader then places himself on the proper pivot flank of his company.

Should a column be retiring with the rear rank leading, the divisions will double as already prescribed so as to preserve the sub-divisions or sections in their natural order for forming: and when the ground allows will again encrease the front of the column.

When the column has to pass a bridge, or short defilé, and that there is a certainty of immediately after resuming the front which it has diminished, then such part of the reverse flank of the leading division as the defilé will receive will pass it in front, and such part of the pivot flank as is necessarily stopt Fig. 29.

3 will

will by command *Face inwards* and follow close in file; on quitting the defilé the filing part will form up at a lengthened step, but the general rate of the column will at no time be altered: In this manner division succeeds division without any improper extension taking place. But if the column must continue any time on a reduced front, then it should so be diminished by the doubling back of divisions.

Fig. 31. When a close column, or one at quarter distance is to pass a defilé; before it enters, it must stand on such a front as will require no farther reduction; and therefore on approaching the defilé, a halt if necessary must be made, and such operation performed as will enable it to enter on such front as it can maintain in passing.—When the defilé is passed a new arrangement will determine the advance of the column.

PASSAGE OF A BRIDGE, OR SHORT DEFILE FROM LINE.

S. 91. A Battalion formed in line may have to pass a short Defilé, or Bridge in its Front.

Fig. 91. *If before a Flank.*---It will from that flank wheel into column, cross on such front as will fill the defilé, and the column will be close or open according as after passing, it may be required either to deploy into line, or to prolong any given direction.

If

If before the Center.—The two center ſub-diviſions may ſtand faſt; the reſt of the battalion will break inwards by ſub-diviſions; the whole will march forward in double column.—When paſſed, the center ſub-diviſions ſtand faſt; the others wheel to right and left, march to the flanks, and ſucceſſively wheel up into line, (or) they proceed in march, and remain in double
Fig. 93. column 'till the head arrives at ſuch point, and is placed in ſuch direction as the line is to be formed in.—Should the bridge or defile only allow 6 in front to paſs, when the head of the double column arrives cloſe at it, its two diviſions having two paces diſtance betwixt them, will file from their inward flanks to the front, paſs, and then move up into column as before, being in the ſame manner followed by every other diviſion.

But as many inconveniences attend all central columns when a poſitive poſition is not to be occupied immediately after paſſing a bridge or defile; therefore in moſt caſes the march in battalion column from one flank, and on ſuch front as is neceſſary, is preferable; for from that order every poſſible after-ſituation is accurately and eaſily taken up; ſuch as the windings of a height; the ſkirting of a wood; or the prolonging of any given ſtraight direction.

The battalion may alſo form cloſe column of any given front, on the diviſion which is oppoſite the bridge or defile, paſs in that ſhape, and extend as ordered after paſſing.

S. 92. A Battalion formed in Line may have to pass a Defile or Bridge in its Rear.

If in the Rear of a Flank.—It will march off from the other flank behind the rear in column of companies or sub-divisions suc-
Fig. 32. cessively, the front rank leading; wheel behind the standing flank; pass; and again wheel, and prolong any given direction.

If in the Rear of the Center.—It will march off as before from each flank, by columns of sub-divisions behind the rear, the leading ones when near meeting, will wheel inwards; pass in double column; and then, if ordered, the divisions will wheel outwards successively, and take up a line parallel to the one it quitted.—If the bridge or defile will not allow above six
Fig. 35. men to pass in front, the double column when it arrives at the entrance will file to the front from its inward flanks as before directed; pass; move up into column; and either extend into line to each flank; or move on in any given direction.—In this way will the battalion be less liable to lengthen, than if it at once files from both flanks behind the center; passes; and again takes up its ground in file.

If after passing in files or columns, the march is to be continued forward; should the wings be in file, they will form up to columns of sub-divisions; the proper leading wing, according as the front of the line should be, will march on, and the other will follow it by countermarching its divisions successively from its rear, and in this manner the whole will be in column of sub-divisions, which may be ordered, if proper, to form companies.

The battalion may also form close column of a front equal to the breadth of the defile, behind or on the division nearest to it, and facing either way: it will then pass; and proceed according to circumstances. Fig. 31.

S. 93. Where a Column of Divisions is successively to march off by wheeling from a Flank of a Battalion formed in Line, and that its Direction is towards the other Flank.

If the Movement is made close along the Front.---The leading flank division wheels up and marches along the line, and each other division successively wheels up behind it at the proper time, so as to
Fig. 34. A. follow in column, and to have its proper distance. Should the new direction make a small angle with the line, each division

 must

must move forward quick and successively to that direction, as its turn comes, before it commences its wheel, and so as not to lose its distance.

If the movement is made close along the Rear.—The leading flank division wheels 3-4ths of the circle, and each other one successively half of the circle, so as to have the remaining quarter to wheel, when its preceding division arrives at its pivot.
Fig. 34. B. Should the line of march make a small angle with the old position, then each division after wheeling its half circle, will have to advance to that line in due time, and successively, before it makes its remaining part of the wheel which brings it into column.

The open column may also in the before cases be advantageously formed by the successive FILING of divisions in the following manner: When the march is made from one flank of the battalion towards the other, and either along the front or rear.

The leading division will *Face*; *March* out perpendicular to the line, its own length; *Halt*, *Front*; *March*; and then proceed.—The division next it will *Face*, disengage its head towards the column; and when the leading division arrives, the other will then
Fig. 36. A. *March* quick in file; *Halt*, *Front*; *March*; and thus follow division after division, each being ready and timing its several operations, so that the true distances are preserved.

It is to be observed that in marches made in this manner along the FRONT the divisions face outwards or towards the moving flank of the battalion, and disengage their heads to the front: But in those made
Fig. 36. B. along the REAR, they face inwards or towards the

standing

ſtanding flank, and diſengage their heads to the rear. This method is peculiarly uſeful when the column moves to the rear, as much wheeling is avoided, and each diviſion can with quickneſs and accuracy take its place in column.

S. 94. MARCH OF THE BATTALION IN FILE.

The march of the battalion in file, and without opening out, can hardly be required except in ſmooth ground, and for the purpoſes of countermarching, or of cloſing, or opening an interval in line.

FACE. MARCH. HALT. FRONT.	At the word FACE, &c. the whole face to the hand ordered, and the officers take one ſide ſtep to the front out of the rank, and are replaced by their ſerjeants. At the word MARCH, the whole ſtep off correctly.—At the word HALT, the whole halt.—And at the word FRONT, they front, and officers and ſerjeants reſume their places.—The officers being out of the ranks during the march (and which will take place whenever more than one company is to march in file) are of uſe in preſerving the line and ſtep.

S. 95. *General Formations of the Battalion from File.*

A battalion which has been obliged to move in file will form

1. *To either Flank*, by halting and facing to right or left as is neceſſary.

2. *To the front* of the march by halting, facing to the flank; wheeling up by companies into open column, and then applying the formations of the open or cloſe column to its required ſituation.—Or without halting and facing to the flank; the column of companies at once may be formed, by the files making a half face, and each marching up quick and diagonally to their reſpective leading men, who do not alter their pace; and as the pivot files are in the rear of companies, when they do come up, the column muſt be ordered to dreſs to them.

3. *To the rear* of the march, by firſt forming column of companies, and then applying the formations of the open or cloſe column.

There can be few ſituations where the battalion muſt be formed to the front, or rear of the march, by the leading file halting, and the whole moving up ſucceſſively to it, and forming away in the rear of and beyond each other to one of the flanks.

The

The head of the battalion file muſt be ſo conducted as to leave ſufficient ſpace to the proper hand for the other files to move up into open column of ſubdiviſions or companies when ordered; and the pivot files in column are always the following ones, when the battalion is in file.—If the battalion is lengthened out when it is ordered to form, it is evident that its facing into line, or its forming into column, muſt be ſucceſſive as each file arrives at its place in line, or as each head file of the ordered diviſions arrives at a wheeling diſtance from the head file of the preceding one,

---

S. 96. *A Battalion ſtanding in narrow Ground may ſometimes be obliged to march in File, in order to form Open Column from its leading Flank; either before or behind that Flank; before or behind its other Flank; or, before or behind any central Part of the Line.*

1. *If before the Right Flank.*—The right platoon will move on, the reſt of the battalion will FACE to the right, and
Fig. 37. A. MARCH in file; the diviſions will ſucceſſively *front*, and follow the leading one, and each other.

2. *If behind the Right Flank.*—The whole FACE to the right, and MARCH; the right divifion inftantly countermarches to the rear, *fronts* and moves forward, followed in the fame manner by every other divifion, till the whole is in column.

Fig. 37. B.

3. *If before any Central Point, or the Left Flank.*—The battalion makes a fucceffive COUNTERMARCH from the right flank towards the left, and when the right divifion is arrived at the point from whence it is to advance in column, it again *countermarches* to its right a fpace equal to its front, then *faces*, moves on, and is thus fucceffively followed by part of the battalion.—The other part of the battalion beyond the point of advancing, FACES inwards, when neceffary makes a progreffive march in file, and then *fronts*, and follows by divifions, as it comes to the turn of each, 'till the whole are in column.

Fig. 38. A.

4. *If behind the center or Left Flank.*—The right part of the battalion COUNTERMARCHES from the right by files fucceffively by the rear, and the other part of the battalion, as is neceffary, makes a progreffive march, by files, from its right to the central point, and there begins to countermarch: at that point the leading, and each other divifion, *fronts* into column, and moves on.

Fig. 38. B.

When the left of the battalion is to be in front, the fame operations inverfely take place.

This

This METHOD of forming open column ſhould only be uſed in narrow grounds, and in particular ſituations that require it, as in the paſſing of a bridge or defile, or where the battalion ſtands in ſo confined a ſpace as not to allow room for the wheeling of diviſions.—The difficulties at all times of moving a large body in file, and the conſtant and unavoidable checks given to the equality and juſtneſs of the march, by the diviſions ſucceſſively quitting the line, make it impoſſible in the above caſes, with due accuracy, to take up the proper diſtances; and therefore whenever the open column is to be formed from battalion and line, it ought to be done if poſſible by the wheelings of companies, ſub-diviſions, or ſections.

COUNTERMARCH BY FILES.

The *Countermarch* by *Files* is of two kinds.—Either SUCCESSIVE (the body being halted), by each file wheeling ſucceſſively on its ground as it comes to its turn: Or, PROGRESSIVE (the body being in motion), by each file wheeling, when it comes up to the point at which the leading file wheeled.—In the firſt caſe the body muſt ſhift its ground to a flank a ſpace at leaſt equal to its front: In the ſecond it will perform this operation of the countermarch on its original ground, exchanging flanks and fronts; in both caſes the pivots are in a ſmall degree movable. Fig. 39. A. B.

The *Countermarch* by *Files* may be made either before or behind the body.—If made BEFORE it, the front rank men will be the pivots on which each file will

will wheel: If made BEHIND it, the rear rank men will then be the pivots on which each file will wheel. All countermarches by file neceſſarily tend to an extenſion of that file; the greateſt care muſt therefore be taken, that the wheel of each file is made cloſe, quick, and at an encreaſed length of ſtep of the wheeling men, ſo as not to retard or lengthen out the march of the whole, and unity of ſtep is abſolutely indiſpenſible.

The *File* marching or countermarching of a battalion or greater body, will be made in ordinary time, Of ſmaller diviſions in general in quick time.

S. 97. Countermarch of the Battalion, from both Flanks on its Center, by Files.

Fig. 39. C. THE BATTALION WILL COUNTER-MARCH. BY WINGS OUTWARDS FACE. MARCH.	A CAUTION is given that the battalion will countermarch.--The wings FACE from the colours which ſtand faſt, and a ſerjeant remains at the point of each wing in order to mark the ground.—At the word MARCH the right wing files ſucceſſively, cloſe behind the rear rank, and the left wing before the front rank of the battalion, till they arrive at the points where each other ſtood.

They

HALT. COVER. FRONT.

They then HALT, and the front rank of wings is quickly covered on the colours which have kept their ground, and ferved as a pivot on which the battalion turns.—The wings when covered in the line FRONT, looking to the colours, and the colours take their places.—If a more accurate dreffing is neceffary, it muft be given by the commanding officer.

S. 98. Countermarch of the Battalion, from its Center, and on its Center, by Files.

Fig. 39. D. CAUTION. BY WINGS INWARDS FACE. BY WINGS, 3 SIDE STEPS TO THE RIGHT MARCH.

A CAUTION is given that the battalion will countermarch.—The whole FACE to the colours, which ftand faft, and a ferjeant remains to mark each flank.—The whole are ordered to take 3 SIDE STEPS to the right, at the word MARCH, in order to difengage.

MARCH.

At the fecond word MARCH, the whole move on, and each file wheels fucceffively into the center as it arrives at, and beyond

Front. — yond the colours.—As soon as each company is in the line from the colours to the flank serjeant, its officer *fronts* it.—When the whole is formed the colours countermarch, and the whole are looking to the colours till otherwise ordered.

In the countermarch from both flanks no part of the battalion is fronted till the whole is on its ground. In the countermarch from the center, the battalion begins instantly and successively to front by companies, as each is ready and on its ground.

S. 99. *Countermarch of the Battalion or Line on its Center, by Companies or Sub-divisions.*

Fig. 40. A. When a whole battalion is to countermarch on a central point; although it may be done by files, yet without great care it will be apt to open out: such, or a larger body, will best and quickest make such countermarch by the march of columns of companies or sub-divisions in front.

CAUTION. — One or two central sub-divisions wheel the half circle upon their center point; or countermarch into the new line, so that the front rank shall occupy the ground which the rear rank did, and the battalion is CAUTIONED to countermarch from its center by sub-divisions.

WINGS

WINGS ABOUT FACE. SUB-DIVISIONS INWARDS WHEEL. MARCH. *Halt, Dreſs.* MARCH. *Wheel.* *Halt, Dreſs.*	One of the wings FACES to the right about: both wings WHEEL inwards by ſub-diviſions: they MARCH along the rear and front of the formed diviſion, and ſucceſſively *wheel* up into their reſpective places on each ſide of thoſe already arranged in the line.
Halt, Front, Dreſs.	The ſub-diviſions which wheel up to the rear, ſucceſſively *Halt, Front, Dreſs,* when they come to their ground, and the officers who command them muſt take care not to paſs the rear, but to be at their proper front rank when they *Halt, Front* their ſub-diviſions.

Should it be intended that the front rank of the directing company or ſub-diviſion ſhould ſtand on the identical line it occupied before the countermarch, it will be ſo placed; and in that caſe after the ſub-diviſion had wheeled inwards, the wing which was to march in rear of it would ſhift a few paces to the flank, in order to get clear of the rear ranks, and would then be put in march.

When at any time one flank of a battalion or line is to be placed at the ſpot where the other one ſtands, it cannot be done in a ſhorter manner than by prolonging the new line. If the flanks are to exchange place with each other, the countermarch on the center, or on a flank, muſt effect it: the ſingle battalion may do it by files; but a line muſt do it by countermarch of diviſions in open column.

Countermarch in Column.

S. 100. *When the Battalion Column (or a more considerable one) countermarches each division by Files, so as to change its Front, and face to its former Rear.*

Fig. 40. B. Countermarch by Files. Right, Face.	*If the Column stands with the Right in Front.*—A Caution to countermarch is given.—At the word Right Face, the whole face to the right, each company officer will immediately quit the pivot, and place himself on the right of his company, and his covering serjeant will advance to the spot which he has quitted, and face to the right about.
March.	At the word March, the whole move, the officer wheels short round to the right, and proceeds, followed by his files of men, till he has placed his pivot front rank man close to his serjeaut who remains immovable:—
Halt, Front, Dress.	Each officer instantly gives the words *Halt, Front,—Dress*, to his company, so as to have it squared and closed into the right which is now the pivot flank, and on which the officer now replaces his serjeant, who falls back behind the rear rank. In this manner the column will face to its former rear.

6 Coun-

COUNTERMARCH BY FILES. LEFT, FACE.	*If the Column ſtands with the Left in Front.*—The CAUTION to countermarch is given.—At the word LEFT FACE, the whole face to the left, the officer moves to the left of his company, and the ſerjeant occupies his place, and
MARCH.	faces about.—At the word MARCH the officer wheels ſhort to the left and proceeds as before, till he is
Halt, Front, Dreſs.	fixed on the pivot flank, now the left, as the column ſtands with its right in front.

In the countermarch, the facing is always to that hand which is not the pivot, but which is to become ſuch.

This countermarch of each diviſion ſeparately on its own ground, is an evolution of great utility on many occaſions.—It enables a column which has its right in front, and is marching in an alignement, to return along that ſame line, by becoming a column with its left in front, and to take ſuch new poſitions in it as circumſtances may require, without inverting or altering the proper front of the line —In many ſituations of forming from column into line, it becomes a neceſſary previous operation.

When a column countermarches by diviſions each on its own ground, unleſs the diviſions are equal, the diſtances after the countermarch will not be the true wheeling diſtances, but will be ſuch as are equal to the front of the preceding diviſion, and therefore the true diſtances muſt be regained, before the diviſions can truly wheel up into line.

S. 101.

S. 101. *When the leading Flank of the Column is changed by the successive March of Divisions from the Rear to the Front.*

Fig. 41. A. HALT. LEFT WING TO THE FRONT. *Right, Face. Quick, March.* *Halt, Front, March.*	If the right is in front, the left to be brought up, and the column to continue to advance.—The whole is ordered to HALT.—At the caution LEFT WING to the front, the officer of the left (the rear) company immediately orders it, *Right, Face,*—*Quick, March,* till his left flank can freely pass near the right flank of the others.---He then commands *Halt, Front,---March,* (in ordinary time) close by the right flank of the company then preceding him.
Right, Face, Quick, March. Halt, Front, March.	The officer commanding that company, as soon as the other approaches him, orders, *Right, Face*---*Quick, March,* behind the now leading one.---*Halt, Front,* when he covers---and then *March,* when at the due wheeling distance.---All the other companies successively perform the same operation; and when the right company has taken its place in the rear, the whole column is in perfect order.

Fig.

Fig. 41. B. If before this operation the column ſhould be cloſed to half or quarter diſtance, then all the companies may be FACED at the ſame time, proceed as above directed, and each takes its diſtance from its preceding one, before it moves on.

This operation is often required in taking up original poſitions from column of march.—It changes the leading flank of a battalion, or a more conſiderable column, and enables it to enter on a line which unforeſeen circumſtances require it ſhould prolong.—It permits battalion columns aſſembled at a rendezvous, to march off from whatever flank is moſt advantageous for each to enter on its line of formation.—It prepares a column which has expected to form by wheels to its left to be ready to form by wheels to its right, without inverting its order.—In a column compoſed of ſeveral battalions where an inverſion of the battalions within themſelves, but not of the wings, is meant to be prevented, then each battalion ſeparately will perform this operation; but if the inverſion of the wings alſo is to be avoided, then the whole column will proceed, as if it was a ſingle battalion.

It muſt be obſerved as a general principle, that the diviſions which advance come out always on the ſide to which front is to be made, and on which the enemy is placed, becauſe then with the diviſions which are free he can be oppoſed, while the others are moving behind the line.

S. 102. *When the Column changes its Wings on the Ground on which it then ſtands.*

Fig. 42. C. HALT. LEFT WING TO THE FRONT. RIGHT ABOUT FACE. MARCH.	The left or rear company proceeds as has been already directed: All the others go to the RIGHT about, and MARCH on at the ordinary ſtep towards the place from whence the left moved.
Left Face. *Quick, March.* *Halt, Front.* *March.*	When the company next it arrives at that place, it receives the order, *Left Face—Quick, March*, behind the left company, then *Halt, Front*, and *March*, when at its due diſtance. In this manner all the reſt proceed, till the right company when it fronts finds itſelf where the left originally ſtood, only that the whole column is removed to the right a ſpace equal to its front.

S. 103. When a Column changes its Wings by the Divisions marching through each other, from Rear to Front.

Fig. 42 D. COMPANIES TO RIGHT AND LEFT OPEN. MARCH. HALT.	. The column ſtanding marched from the right ſhould naturally form to the left, but it is here Intended to form to the right.—At the word COMPANIES to the right, and left OPEN—MARCH, all the companies (except the laſt) do open by the ſide ſtep, half to each flank, a ſpace ſufficient to allow a company to march through in front.
March. *Cloſe inwards.* *March.* *Halt.* *March.*	The left company does not open, but *Marches* on through the others, and as ſoon as its rear rank arrives at the front rank of the one next it, that company cloſes by the ſide ſtep, *Marches* and follows at its due diſtance: In this manner they ſucceed each other, till the column is formed as marched off from the left.
RIGHT ABOUT FACE. MARCH.	But if the ground of the column is not to be changed after opening out, the laſt company *moves* on, after the others having FACED about, and MARCHED, have arrived at its ground; each

there

Inwards Turn.
Front, March.
HALT.

there successively *faces* inwards and joins, then *fronts* and *marches* on till the word HALT is given, when the flanks are changed, and that the left company is exactly on the ground where the right stood. The leading company must take short paces to allow for the various operations of the following one.

The above method of countermarch is more calculated for a parade than for the general movements of the battalion.

GENERAL CHANGES OF POSITION OF THE BATTALION.

CHANGES OF POSITION of the battalion or line from one distant situation to another are made either in *Line*, or by the *Echellon* march of divisions; or by the movements of the column, especially of the *Open Column*.

By the movements in open column.

Changes of position in OPEN COLUMN, are movements of previous disposition, made from one distant situation to another, and not liable to the interruption of an enemy.—Where circumstances allow, original or new positions are in this manner easiest and soonest taken up.

1st. The

Changes of position of the Battalion or Line already formed, when made in one or more Open Columns, may be divided into 4 Parts.

1st. The line wheels the quarter circle by platoons or such other divisions as are ordered to either hand, so as to be ready to divide into one or more columns.

2d. The column or columns file by divisions, or march in front, as is necessary and ordered, to arrive at their position in the new direction.

3d. The divisions again form in a general open column, perpendicular to the new direction.

4th. When the divisions of each battalion are thus arrived at their ground, halted, and adjusted, the line is formed by their wheeling up,—and thus battalion after battalion; each forming when its adjoining one has 3 or 4 of its divisions standing in column on the line.

By the movements in Echellon.

The ECHELLON changes of position are the safest that can be employed in the presence of and near to an enemy, they are almost equal in security to the march of the line in front, or to an uniform wheel in the line, but which is not to be attempted; they can be used in the most critical situations, where the filings and movements of the open column could not be risked; they are more particularly used when the enemy's flank is to be taken by throwing the body forward, or when one's own is to be covered by throwing it backward.—The advantages attending them are, the preserving a general front during the

 march,

march, and allowing ſufficient freedom of movement, which in ſuch ſituation is indiſpenſible; they enable to change poſition on any diviſion of the line, either on a fixed or moving point; and at any inſtant the movement can be ſtopped, the line formed, and a ſudden attack repulſed.—The echellon changes require the ground to be nearly of ſuch a nature as a full line could advance in; and any of its diviſions that meet with obſtacles in their march will paſs them in the ſame manner as they do in line, by filing or doubling, and without interrupting the progreſs of the others.

Changes of poſition of the Battalion or Line made by the Echellon march of Platoons, conſiſts of 3 parts.

1ſt. The platoons wheel forward a certain number of paces towards the hand to which they are to change poſition, and ſo as that each thereby ſtands perpendicular to its future line of march.

2d. Each platoon marches on directly in front, to its proper point in the new line.

3d. Each platoon ſucceſſively on its leading flank arriving at the platoon preceding it (which is already halted in the line), dreſſes up, and forms truly in that line.

Each change of poſition of the battalion, or line, may be conſidered as a general wheel of the whole made on a POINT, either IN, BEFORE, or BEHIND, the old line.—The battalion or line therefore breaks to which ever hand, and to which ever diviſion it is to manœuvre to or be led by: When to a flank, generally to that which is neareſt to, and is firſt to enter any

any part of the new poſition: When a central diviſion determines its movement, it breaks to right or left inwards, and faces ſuch diviſion, which makes its change of ſituation on its own ground.—When this POINT is IN the old line, it muſt neceſſarily be within the battalion when ſingle, or within a certain named battalion of a line: Such battalion therefore will have Fig. 43. to perform the change on a *fixed* point within itſelf, viz. on ſuch diviſion flank or central, as is already reſted on that point, by making its other diviſions either by *filing* or *diagonal* marching, enter into the line: But all the other battalions will have the double operation of moving up to the new line, and then forming upon it.—When this POINT is BEFORE or Fig. 44. BEHIND the old line, every battalion whether ſingle or connected will have this double operation to perform.

S. 104. *Changes of Poſition of a Battalion.*

The battalion formed in line changes to a new poſition either on a fixed point within itſelf, or on a diſtant point, which marks one of its future flanks, or where one of its central diviſions is to be placed.

When on a fixed point, either Flank, or Central.

1ſt. By the echellon march of diviſions either to front or rear, which move

Fig. 46. A. on and line with the placed or fixed one, when it halts on its ground (*S.* 159.)

2d. By breaking into open column so as to face the fixed point.—Filing divi-
Fig. 46. B. sions to front or rear, into the new direction, and wheeling up into line, when the column is prepared. (*S.* 120, 121.)

When on a distant Point, and that the Whole are movable.

No. 1. By the echellon wheel of divisions, and the subsequent march of the
Fig. 57. A. whole, till the one nearest to the new line arrives in it, and that the others move on, and form to it. (*S.* 162.)

No. 2. By the breaking into open co-
Fig. 57. B. lumn to the one or other flank, and the immediate filing of all the divisions from the old line into the new one. (*S.* 123.)

No. 3. By the march of the battalion
Fig. 57. C. column to the point where its head is to rest, and then facing, and filing its divisions into the new line. (*S.* 124.)

No. 4. By the march of the battalion
Fig. 57. F. column, and its wheeling into the new line, at the point where its rear is to rest. (*S.* 125.)

No. 5. By the march of the battalion
Fig 57. H. column, and its wheeling into the new line at a point where one of its central divisions is to rest. (*S.* 126.)

Besides

Besides the above, which are the most general modes by which changes of position should be effected by the battalion, the open column on entering its ground may also occasionally be required to form in line in the following manner.

No. 6. When the column having arrived perpendicularly or obliquely behind the line at the point where its

Fig. 52. 78. HEAD is to rest, is there halted.—The leading division may be placed on the line, and each other division be ordered to make such a degree of wheel backwards, as will enable it to march on in front, perpendicular to its proper point in the new line, where each successively arrives and forms.—This is a movement in column, and formation in echellon. (*S.* 127.)

No. 7. The column arriving in the direction of the line, or in any direction oblique, or perpendicular behind the new line, and at the point where its HEAD is to rest, but which its rear is to

Fig. 57. D. Fig. 55. pass.—May form by the wheel of the leading division into the new line, and the successive march of the other divisions behind it, and behind each other, till they arrive at their several points of wheeling up. (*S.* 128.)

No. 8. The column marching perpendicularly up to the line, and to the point where its HEAD is to rest, and being at least a distance equal to the length of the column from such point.

Fig. 57. F. The leading division proceeds at a half

pace

pace only; the others oblique from the column, successively move up to the leading division, and the front being thus gradually encreased the whole battalion arrives at the same time on the line of formation. (*S.* 29.)

The column arriving behind any part of its ground may also move up to close column, and form by its deployments on the front, the rear, or on a central division.

S. 105.

A battalion broken into, and marching in open column, must arrive at, and enter on the ground on which it is to form in line, either—In the DIRECTION of that line: PERPENDICULAR to that line; or in a direction more or less OBLIQUE, and betwixt the other two.

If the Column is marching in the direction of the Line, it will either enter where its head is to rest, or where its rear is to rest.	If where its HEAD is to rest.—The leading division will wheel up into line, and the others march on behind it, and successively wheel up as in No. 7.
	If where its REAR is to rest.—It marches with its pivot flank, and at just distances

Fig. 58. A. — distances along the line, till the rear platoon is at its point, the whole then halt, and wheel up into line as in No. 4.

If the Column enters perpendicular, or oblique to the new line, it will enter either, where its head is to rest, where its rear is to rest, or at some intermediate point where a central division is to rest.

Fig. 58. B. C.

If where its HEAD is to reſt.—The formation may be made as in No. 3.

If where its REAR is to reſt.—The formation may be made as in No. 4.

If at an intermediate point where a central diviſion is to reſt.—The formation may be made as in No. 5.

All new poſitions, that a battalion or line can take with reſpect to the old one, are—PARALLEL, or nearly ſo to the old line.—INTERSECTING by themſelves or their prolongation ſome part of the old line or its prolongation. Relative ſituation of old and new poſitions.

New PARALLEL poſitions being neceſſarily to the front or rear of the old one, the battalion will according to circumſtances take them up by the *Echelon* march, the *filing* of diviſions, or the *Movement* in open column, and its ſubſequent formation in line. Parallel. Fig. 44. 63.

New INTERSECTING poſitions, which themſelves cut the battalion, will be taken up by the *Echellon* march, or by the filing of diviſions.—All other new poſitions which themſelves or their prolongation, interſect the old line, or its prolongation, will in general be taken up by the *March* in open column, and its Interſecting. Fig. 43. 63.

its subsequent formation when it arrives at the line; some such positions will however allow of, and require being made by the *Echellon* march, or by the *filing* of divisions.—In general the battalion will break to the hand, which is nearest to the new position, be conducted to its nearest point in the new line, and formed on it as directed.

When the battalion, breaks into open column to make a change of position.

In changes of position by the open column, the whole battalion (as a general rule) is directed to wheel the whole quarter circle into open column, although it may often seem an unnecessary operation, and that disengaging the heads of divisions would answer the same purpose, where the change is to be performed by *filing*.—Yet is the above general mode to be observed, because it is a positive and defined situation, from which every change can proceed, whereas all other modes are liable to uncertainty and mistake, and the apparent going over a little unnecessary ground is a matter of no moment in point of time, and begets perfect precision, and correctness of execution.

This rule which is universal for all the following divisions of a column, may in some situations be dispensed with as to a leading division which often has to wheel up again over the same ground, when the column is put in motion towards its new position: A previous and separate CAUTION from the chief of the battalion may therefore, when it is seen necessary, prevent this extra movement to the leading division, and give it a more favourable situation in the direction in which it is to proceed.—As in the case of a battalion marching off by column of divisions from a flank to the front.

If the wheel is made backwards. The flank division may stand fast, till the wheel is made, and when the rest of the column has marched up to it, it then receives the word *March* from its own leader, and proceeds.

If

If the wheel is made forward. At the firſt word March, the flank diviſion moves on a ſpace equal to its own front and halts, it is then ready to proceed when the whole is put in motion.

Should the battalion march off by column of diviſions from a flank to the rear: Whether the diviſions *wheel backwards or forwards* the flank diviſion wheels with the others, and from that ſituation, that diviſion will again wheel to the rear, when the column is put in motion.

In all central changes of poſition on a point within a battalion or line, and which are made by the movements of the open column: The battalion or line breaks backwards into two open columns facing each other and the given point, ſo that the one has its right in front, and the other its left.—From this ſituation by the filing, or by the march of diviſions, its component parts move to their new poſition, and the diviſion which faces the given one having there taken a double wheeling diſtance, the diviſions wheel up into line.

In central changes of poſition, the battalion or line, breaks into open column, facing to the named diviſion.

Fig. 45.

The advantages of making central changes, by breaking inwards, ſo as the whole ſtand faced to the named diviſion, in two columns, are—That the univerſal rule of all bodies breaking, dreſſing, forming to whatever point they are led by and manœuvre to, is obſerved—That the taking of diſtances in the new column are all from the front and none from the rear, which laſt is a matter of difficulty and delay.—That the battalions of the wing which is thrown forward, advance from their inward flank and in the ſhorteſt line, to where that flank is again to be placed, at this point they begin to form, and the formation is made by quick filing of diviſions into the new column, where the exact covering of pivots and taking of diſtances is inſtantly and eaſily aſcertained.—That the parts of the line on each ſide of the central diviſion

work

work exactly in the ſame manner, and form in line by one and the ſame method.—That the breaking inwards of the line, or the countermarch of ſuch part of the column as is before the central diviſion, gives theſe advantages, nor is the countermarch the affair of a moment.

In *central changes* was the whole of a line to break to one hand, or part of a column not to countermarch.—Although ſuch part as was behind the central diviſion, and thrown backwards, would take its diſtances from the front, and might proceed exactly as above; yet ſuch part of each as was before the central diviſion would be obliged to take its diſtances and covering of pivots in the new column from the rear, as the whole line would be broken the ſame way as the named diviſion.—This, though it may not ſeem difficult when ſuch part conſiſts only of the few diviſions of a ſingle battalion, will when it is compoſed of ſeveral battalions in addition, be found no eaſy matter to accompliſh with preciſion.—In ſuch caſe, whatever diviſions of the central battalion were arranged before the named diviſion, would file from their advanced flanks, and place themſelves in the above manner in the new line. The entire battalions which were before the named diviſion would march in ſeparate columns of diviſions, each from its head or outward flank, and enter (by wheeling) the new line, at the point where its rear or inward flank was to be placed, it muſt then prolong the line and be halted the inſtant the rear arrived at the point where the head entered.—This operation would not be found eaſy, be ſlower, and attended with more uncertainty than the other method by which the diſtances are ſo readily, and exactly taken from the front, and where the ſame mode of execution is followed by both flanks of the line.—Although battalions and lines ſhould be prepared to change their poſition in this manner if ſo required, yet the other method is to be conſidered as the general one, and practiſed accordingly.

WHEEL

Wheel of the Battalion from Line into open Column.—Change of Direction of the March.—Wheel and Entry on an Alignement.—March.—Halt.—And Wheel up into Line.

S. 106. *When the Battalion halted in Line, Wheels forward by Companies into Open Column, the Right in Front.*

COMPANIES, RIGHT WHEEL.

At the Caution Companies Right Wheel—The officers ſtep out nimbly, and place themſelves one pace before the center of the companies facing to the front; at the ſame time the right hand man of the front rank of each company faces carefully on his left heel to the right, and becomes the pivot, on which each company is to wheel. The covering ſerjeant of the right company alſo runs out and places himſelf at the point (a) where the wheeling flank of that company is to *Halt* at the finiſhing of the wheel.—The covering ſerjeants of the whole fall back two paces.—The ſupernumerary rank cloſes

Fig. 59. A.

closes up within two paces of the rear rank, and the divisions of drummers, &c. enter into it, behind the respective companies which they cover, or are divided behind their several companies.

QUICK MARCH. At the word MARCH each company steps off quick, turning eyes (and not before) to the wheeling man, and carefully observing the general wheeling directions.—The left or wheeling man takes his firm lengthy step of 33 inches, neither opening from, nor pressing on, his own pivot, and turning his eyes towards that pivot.—The officer during the wheel turns towards his men, and inclines to his new pivot, or left flank; and standing faced to it with a glance of the eye he sees when the quarter circle is completed,

Halt, Dress. and each gives his word *Halt, Dress*, at the instant that the flank man is taking the last step which finishes his wheel perfectly square.—The officer immediately corrects any dressing that the company may require within itself, instantly places himself on the pivot flank, and his serjeant covers the second file from that flank. Both colours wheel up into column, and at all times remain behind the third file from the pivot flank of the leading center company, whether the company is halted or in motion.

S. 107.

S. 107. *When the Battalion halted in Line, Wheels forward by Companies into Open Column, the Left in Front.*

COMPANIES, LEFT WHEEL. QUICK MARCH. *Halt, Dress.*	The same operation takes place as in wheeling to the right, with these variations; that the left hand men of companies face before the wheel begins, and the left covering serjeant marks the ground for the flank of the leading company.

After the battalion has in this manner wheeled forward into column, it will often happen that, from the inequality of divisions, different sizes of men, &c. &c. the pivots do not exactly cover; yet in this situation are they to remain and to understand it as an invariable rule, that they are never to shift in order to cover, but by the express direction of the commanding officer, who will correct the pivots, if his intention is to pursue a straight line in order to form: but if the continuation of a march is the object, he will allow them gradually to get into its direction after they are put in movement. But the certain remedy for the above inconvenience is, that on all occasions of wheeling into open column from line, the wheels should be made BACKWARD instead of forward.

S. 108. *When the Battalion halted in Line, Wheels backward into Open Column, the Right in Front.*

COMPANIES ON THE LEFT BACKWARDS WHEEL. Fig. 59. B.	At the CAUTION, Companies on the left backwards wheel; the officers step out nimbly and place themselves before the center of their companies, facing to the front, at the same time the left hand man of the front rank of each company *faces* carefully on his left heel to the right, and becomes the pivot, on which each company is to wheel.—The covering serjeant of the right company also runs back, and places himself at the point (S) where the wheeling flank of that company is to halt at the finishing of the wheel.—The covering serjeants of the whole fall back two paces.—The supernumerary rank closes up within two paces of the rear rank, and the divisions of drummers, &c. enter into it, behind the respective companies which they cover, or are divided behind their several companies.
QUICK MARCH. *Halt, Dress.*	At the word MARCH, each company steps back quick, and follows exactly the same directions that have been given in the case of wheeling forward.

 S. 109.

S. 109. *When the Battalion halted in Line Wheels backward by Companies into Open Column, the Left in Front.*

COMPANIES ON THE RIGHT BACKWARDS WHEEL. QUICK MARCH. *Halt, Dress.*	The same operation takes place as when the right is in front, except that the right hand men of companies are the facers, and the left serjeant marks the ground for the flank of the leading company.

S. 110. *If the Battalion is at once to break into Column of Sub-divisions or Sections.*

CAUTION. QUICK MARCH. *Halt, Dress.*	The pivot men of each *face*, and their divisions wheel into column at the general word MARCH; the company officers (only) give the word *Halt, Dress*, which suffices for the parts of each company.—When the wheel is completed, and not before, the leaders who are to conduct the pivot flank of the second sub-division, or of the second or other sections, place themselves there.—The officer

 ficer

ficer is on the pivot flank of the leading ſub-diviſion, or ſection; his covering ſerjeant on the flank of the ſecond ſub-diviſion, or ſecond ſection; and an officer or non-commiſſioned officer from the rear on the flank of the laſt ſection, after wheeling into column. (*S.* 47. 48.)

S. 111. *When the Open Column is put in March in the Prolongation of the Line.*

MARCH. The battalion ſtanding in open column with the pivot flanks of its diviſions on the line, and advanced points being aſcertained, moves forwards at the word MARCH from its commanding officer. (*S.* 115.)

Whenever the battalion wheels into open column in order to prolong the line on which it was formed, and that no diſtant point in that prolongation is previouſly given, the ſerjeant of the leading company will advance 15 or 20 paces, and place himſelf in the line of the pivot flanks, and the leading officer will thereby (taking a line over his head) be enabled to aſcertain the direction in which he is to move.

S. 11

S. 112. *When the Open Column with the Right in Front changes Direction to the Left, on a movable Pivot.*

Right Shoulder forward. *Forward.*	As explained in *S.* 22. 52.

S. 113. *When the Open Column with the Right in Front changes Direction to the Right, on a movable Pivot.*

Left Shoulder forward. *Forward.*	As explained in *S.* 22. 52.

S. 114. When the Open Column, advancing with the Right in Front, Wheels on a fixed Point into a new Alignement.

The alignement is entered by the leading division wheeling either to right or left.—In either case the left or pivot flank officers of the companies must be placed on it: in the first instance behind it, and in the second before it.—In both cases the line is afterwards formed by wheels of Companies to the left: in the first instance the line will front the same way as the column; in the second, it will front to the rear of the column.

S. 115. When the Open Column, advancing with the Right in Front Wheels to the Right, on a halted Pivot into a new Alignement, and Marches in it.

Fig. 60. C.

Fig. 52.

The alignement being determined by given objects, and the point (c) of entry marked, the leading officer who has marched his left flank on that point, when he arrives at a distance equal to the front of his com-

Right Wheel. company from it, orders *Right, Wheel,* and the quick wheel is made, so, that on the conclusion of it at the *Halt, Dress.* word *Halt, Dress,* he himself shall be standing on the new alignement on the flank of his company ready to give *March.* the word *March* as soon as the succeeding company has arrived at the wheeling point.

After this he moves on without looking behind, regarding his division, or allowing any thing to take off his attention, and at the established ordinary pace towards the distant points (a. a.) so that his shoulder shall just graze the head of any mounted officer's horse posted at an intermediate point (or the breast of any man on foot placed for the same purpose), and which he invariably preserves in a straight line with the given object.—This rule all the following officers must observe at the same time that they maintain their exact distance from the company preceding. And should any of the companies deviate to either hand, those that succeed them must rectify the fault, and exactly touch the point where the adjutant is placed.

The principal attention of the leading officer must be, never to change the time or length of step, otherwise a stop must happen in a considerable column, and the soldiers will afterwards be obliged to run. He must move in one constant position with his front

rank perpendicular to the line on which he marches. The fame directions regard the other officers who conduct companies, and who in addition muft correctly obferve, that at the word *March* given to the preceding company, the following one is ordered, *Right, Wheel.* In this they will exactly agree if the officers preferve their due diftances, and make their wheels at a redoubled pace, and alfo, that all the companies wheel at the identical point where the leading one wheeled; therefore all the companies muft march ftraight up to the point where the firft rank of the preceding one commenced its wheel.—The attention of pivot officers marching in the alignement have been already defcribed in the open column.

To infure the more correct march and halt of the pivot flanks in the alignement.—The commander of the battalion or column may occafionally go forward to an advanced adjutant, and being himfelf truly placed, may look back to the point of wheeling or entry into the alignement, or to any other fixed object that is in it.—He can then fee if the rear flanks of the column keep the true line, or deviate from it, and may correct them by fignal, or by fending back an adjutant to take his pofition in the true line, and to whofe direction they are immediately to conform.

In this manner alfo can the leader, if neceffary, correct the pivot flanks after a halt, when there is a rear point of view fufficiently marked.—If that is not the cafe, he may go towards the rear of the column, line the flank of the 5th or 6th company, on that of his leading company, and a front point of march, he will then return to the firft company, and on the flanks of that and the 5th correct the reft of the pivots.

S. 116. *When the Open Column, advancing with the Right in Front, Wheels to the Left on a fixed Point, into a new Alignement, and Marches in it.*

Fig. 60. B. *Left, Wheel.* *Halt, Dreſs.* *March.*	The leading company begins its wheel to the left on the alignement itſelf when its pivot flank officer arrives at the point of wheeling, inſtead of (as in the preceding ſection) beginning at the diſtance of a company ſhort of that point. (S. 51).

Whatever has been ſaid reſpecting a battalion broken from the right, takes place in one broken from the left; the only difference is, that the flanks are now changed; that the left company does what before was done by the right; and that the right flank officers are placed on the alignement inſtead of the left.

S. 117. When the Open Column, advancing with the Right in Front, and composed of Divisions of unequal Strength, Wheels to the Right, on a halted Point, into a new Alignement.

Fig. 62.

Right, Wheel.

Halt, Drefs, March.

The pivot or left flank continues to direct till the leading divifion arrives in its full front, behind its proper wheeling ground, and at a due diftance from it.—The word *Right, Wheel*, being then given, the reverfe or right flank (c) of that divifion ftops, and the general pivot one completes the wheel, fo that at the next words *Halt, Drefs, March*, the conducting officer may be exactly placed on the new line of direction; they thus fucceed each other, obferving that a ftronger divifion (a) wheels fhort of the ground of its preceding weaker one (b), by the fpace of as many files as it exceeds that preceding one; and a weaker divifion overpaffes the ground of its preceding one, by the extent of as many files as it is deficient: in both cafes after the wheel the divifions will have retained the fame relative fituations as before its commencement, and the left pivot flanks will ftill cover.

S. 118. *When the Open Column—Halts—Wheels up into Line, and Dreſſes.*

If in the manner already directed, the ſeveral companies of one or more battalions have entered the alignement, and marched with their pivot flanks along it, covering each other at their due diſtances for which company officers are anſwerable, there can be nothing eaſier than to form well in line.

Fig. 60. 61. Whenever therefore the head or the rear diviſion arrives at the given point where it is to reſt in line, the commander of the battalion gives the word

HALT.

HALT.—No one moves after the delivery of this word, not even a half pace, but the foot which is then off the ground finiſhes its proper ſtep, and the other is brought up to it.—If that was not done, and that one company ſhould ſtop while another was permitted to make one or two paces, thoſe behind would be obliged to ſhift anew, and much confuſion would ariſe from officers being deficient in one great principle of their buſineſs—the preſerving of proper diſtances.—The inſtant the HALT is ordered, the commanding officer from the head diviſion of each battalion (he taking care that he is himſelf placed in the true line) makes any ſmall correction on a rear point in that line that the pivots may require, although no ſuch correction ought to be neceſſary.

The

WHEEL UP INTO LINE.

The CAUTION is then given, companies wheel up into line; on which the pivot men of the front ranks face perfectly square into the new line; the company officers move briskly out and place themselves one pace before the center of each, their covering serjeants move to the right of the front rank of the companies if the wheel is to be to the left, or otherwise behind the pivot file if the wheel is to be to the right, and an under officer of the leading company of the battalion runs up, places himself square in the new line, and marks the point (s), at which the wheeling flank of that company is to arrive and be halted.

Fig. 49.

Q. MARCH.

At the word MARCH, eyes are turned (and not before) to the wheeling hand, the whole step off in quick time, the wheeling man lengthening his step to 33 inches, and every other man diminishing his, as he is nearer to the standing flank.—The officers during the wheel turn round to face their men, incline towards the pivot of the preceding company, and as each perceives his wheeling man make the step which brings him up to that pivot; he gives the word *Halt, Dress*, strong and firm to his company, which halts with eyes still turned to the wheeling flank, and each officer being then placed before the preceding pivot to which his men are then looking, from thence corrects the interior of his company, upon that pivot, his own pivot, and the general line

Halt, Dress.

line of the other pivots.—This being quickly and instantaneously done, the officer immediately takes his post on the right of his company, which has been preserved for him by his serjeant.

In this manner dressing is made, and eyes are turned always to the point where the head of the column halted; to the right when the wheels are made to the left, and to the left when the wheels are made to the right; and if any future correction of the line is made by a field officer, it will be from the fixed point where the head of the column rested.

As there are so many determined points given, it becomes easy to dress correctly a platoon or battalion after wheeling up, if due care is taken that the pivot man do on no account move up, or fall back, whatever direction may be then giving by the company officers for completing the dressing.—If a defect exists it must proceed from the other men not having lined with those fixed points; the internal correction of companies must therefore be made, but the original pivot men remain immovable, until a general correction of dressing the battalion is made by a field officer if necessary.—The officer of the third company for example, if the wheel has been made to the left, has only to consider the left file leader of the second company close to whom he stands as to the point of Appui, and his own left flank man as the point to dress upon, there will then be nothing easier than to dress the other men of his company upon these; but he will still more exactly do it, if he places himself 2 or 3 files on the other side of the pivot man of the second company, and from thence corrects his own.—If all officers are in this alert and skilful, and that soldiers are accustomed to dress themselves,

ſelves, a battalion will be inſtantly formed, nor will the commander have any thing to rectify.

When the column has broken to the LEFT; all that has been before ſaid takes place; and is in the ſame manner executed.—Only the right flank man does what has been directed for the left; he fronts when the platoon begins to wheel up; and the point d'Appui being now on the left, the dreſſing muſt from thence be regulated, conſequently the ſoldiers look to the left.

It is to be obſerved that when at any time after forming in line, there ſhall be a falſe diſtance between either of the flank diviſions and the battalion, the officer of ſuch diviſion, without waiting for directions, may immediately by the cloſing ſtep, join his diviſion to the battalion: but no other diviſion of a battalion is in ſuch caſe ever to move, without orders from the commanding officer.

When the battalion has formed in line, and that there are ſeveral falſe openings betwixt diviſions, they may be remedied by the cloſing ſtep on the order of the commanding officer to CLOSE to any named diviſion, the others halting ſucceſſively by word from their ſeveral leaders. S. 43. 79. and in the ſame manner may the crowding of files in a battalion, or parade be remedied, by cloſing from the point of crouding, and halting when ſufficiently looſened.

S. 119. When the Open Column which is to wheel into Line is composed of Sub-divisions, or Sections, and not of Companies.

WHEEL INTO LINE.	At the word WHEEL, the company officer alone moves into the front, and the pivot leaders of the other sub-division or sections go to the point they would be at, if the column was a column of companies: The pivot man of each body in the column faces.—At
Q. MARCH.	the word MARCH, the whole wheel.—And the company officer gives the
Halt, Dress.	word *Halt, Dress*, to the whole company. *(S. 50.)*

The line of the march of the open column will always be about a pace before the line on which the troops form; because the one is the direction preserved by the officers in marching, and the other being that on which the flank-men halt and the companies wheel up into line, is distant of course from the first the breadth of a file, which leaving the advanced points distinct, affords a great advantage in the formation and correction of the line.—Although the officers halt in the alignement itself, yet it is impossible to allow them to remain immovable as points of forming for their divisions, because the dressing of those divisions depends on them, and that they must occupy their proper places when in line.---The flank files of men are therefore the pivots of divisions in wheeling up into line, although the officers are the pivots during the march, and an attempt to form the

the line on the points of march themſelves would derange the pivot files of men, and cauſe diſorder.

A commander muſt be careful that he himſelf is in the alignement whenever he dreſſes his battalion, or corrects the flanks of his diviſions.—In order to direct well, he muſt place himſelf on the line, and on the adjutants who are in it, and give his horſe ſuch a direction, as the diviſions ſhould touch in marching.

CHANGES OF POSITION OF THE BATTALION FROM LINE, BY MOVEMENTS OF THE OPEN COLUMN.

Changes of poſition are made either on a FIXED point within the battalion, or on a DISTANT point without it.

On

ON A FIXED POINT.

S. 120. *If the battalion is to change position to the Front, on the right halted Platoon, by throwing forward the whole Left, and by the filing of Platoons.*

Fig. 47. B. The right flank (c) is the fixed point on which the change is made, and is in the intersection of both lines, the commander immediately ad libitum, places another point (b) 20 or 30 paces beyond that flank, these two determine the direction of the new line and face to it.—The right platoon is *wheeled* forward to the right and placed in that direction, and is then immediately *wheeled* backward on the left, till it stands with its pivot (a) perpendicular to that direction, and on which its officer posts himself.

BY COMPANIES ON THE LEFT BACKWARDS WHEEL. LEFT FACE.

The reſt of the battalion is then wheeled backward on the left, by platoons and ſtands in open column.—At the word left FACE, the whole (except the fixed platoon) face.

Q. MARCH.

At the word Q. MARCH the ſeveral officers lead their files towards the points in the new line where the pivot flanks of their platoons ought to be placed, and the better to aſcertain thoſe points, the covering ſerjeant of each platoon will ſucceſſively (as it approaches within 20 or 30 paces of the new line) run up and place himſelf upon it at the proper diſtance of his platoon, facing to the head of the column, and covering exactly thoſe that have taken their places therein: The pivot flank officer (a.) of the front platoon, and the advanced officer or ſerjeant (b.) before mentioned, are the original points on which the firſt ſerjeants that come up arrange themſelves, and thereby become additional points for the others.

The ſerjeant thus placed (being on the ſpot which the officer is afterwards to occupy), each officer comes up in his own perſon immediately before the

Halt, Front. Dress. — the ſerjeant, *Halts fronts* his platoon, *Dreſſes* it quickly by cloſing his flank front rank man to his ſerjeant, and placing it perpendicular to the new line.—The officer takes the place of his ſerjeant, and the whole being ſteady, and pivots corrected by the commanding officer as they arrive upon the line, every one is in a ſituation to

WHEEL UP AND FORM. — wheel up and form.—Should no ſerjeant be previouſly advanced to give the pivot point, the officer muſt at once conduct the head of his file to it.

S. 121. *If the Battalion is to change poſition to the Rear, on the right halted Platoon, by throwing back the whole Left, and by the filing of Platoons.*

Fig. 47. C. — The direction of the line being aſcertained in the before mentioned manner, the right platoon is wheeled back

ON THE LEFT BACKWARDS WHEEL.

RIGHT FACE.

on the right into the line, and then backwards on the left, till its left or pivot flank (a.) stands perpendicular to the new line.—The battalion will break into open column on the left backwards.—The platoons will face to the right, and the officers place themselves to lead.

Q. MARCH.

At the word MARCH, the whole will lead to the rear, and the covering serjeants will successively as before take up their pivot points on the new line.—The officer conducting each platoon when he arrives at his serjeant will stop directly before him, allow his platoon to move on behind the serjeant till the rear file comes close to, but beyond him; the officer will then *Halt, front—Dress* his platoon to the left, perpendicular to the new direction, and with his front rank closed into the serjeant.—He will himself take the place of the serjeant, and remain steady on the pivot flank, ready to wheel into line.

Halt front.
Dress.

WHEEL UP AND FORM.

When the position is changed to the left by throwing the whole right, either backward or forward,—it then follows that the battalion *breaks* on the *right backwards*, that the rights become the pivot flanks, and

and that the ſame general circumſtances of facing, filing, arranging ſerjeants on the pivot flanks, &c. ſtill take place by the ſubſtitution of the commands, right for left, and left for right.

S. 122. *If the Battalion is to change poſition on a central halted Platoon, by the filing of Platoons, and that the Right is thrown forward and the Left backward.*

ON THE RIGHT AND LEFT BACKWARDS WHEEL.

Fig. 48. One flank of the central platoon is conſidered as the point (a.) of interſection, another point (o.) taken ad libitum, determines the direction of the new line.—The given platoon is firſt wheeled into it, and then wheeled back till it ſtands perpendicular to it; and the covering ſerjeant from each of the adjoining platoons runs out and marks where their future pivots (c. b.) are to be placed.—The other platoons wheel backward, ſo as that they all ſtand

 faced

RIGHT FACE. — faced to the given one.—The whole (except the given platoon) FACE to the right; viz. thoſe that are to move towards the rear, to the rear.

Q. MARCH. — They then MARCH, and the ſerjeants giving ground in the line of the pivots which is determined by the three already placed therein, they arrange themſelves in two columns, before and behind the placed platoon, towards which the whole ſtill face.—— The platoon (b.) which immediately faces to and is next the placed one, muſt take care to form with a diſtance equal to its own front, and that of the placed one; all the others are at their juſt wheeling diſtances in column.—From this ſituation the line is formed by a wheel to the proper front.

Halt, Front. Dreſs.

WHEEL UP, AND FORM.

If the right is to be thrown back and the left forward, the only alteration from the above is that the platoons would FACE to their left, and file from their left inſtead of their right.

On a distant Point.

S. 123. *When the Battalion is to change to a distant Position either to its Front or Rear, by the filing of all its Platoons, and that this Position is either Parallel or Oblique to the one it quits.*

Fig. 57. B.

BY PLATOONS, ON THE —— BACKWARDS WHEEL.

Q. MARCH.

Halt, Dress.

The battalion breaks into open column of platoons, to whichever hand the new position outflanks the old one, for to that hand will the whole have to incline during the march; and if it does not sensibly outflank, then the battalion will break to the hand next to the point of intersection of the two lines, for that hand is nearest to, and will in general be the first to enter any part of the new position.

TO THE — FACE.

The battalion standing in open column is ordered to FACE.—— The leader of the second platoon has then a direction given him which crosses the new line at the

point

Fig. 49.

Q. MARCH.

Halt, Front. Dress.

point (o.) as near as can be judged where the flank of that platoon is to be placed.—The whole are then put in motion.—The leader of the second platoon marches in his given direction at a steady pace; the commander of the battalion remains with the head platoon (c.) and by making it insensibly advance, or keep back, regulates the heads of all the others during the march, as they endeavour to place themselves nearly in the prolonged line of the heads of the two leading platoons, but at any rate they are not to be before them; and when those two platoons *Halt* their pivots in the line, the others without hurrying arrive successively in the new direction, and stand in open column at their just wheeling distances.—When the head of the column is within 30 or 40 paces of the new line, (its direction being already prepared,) the serjeants run out and mark the pivot flanks of their several platoons.

In this manner the commander who is himself with, and conducts the two leading platoons, moves them in the direction that best answers his views, and at once takes up any position and to any front that is necessary.—As circumstances change his intentions, he may at every instant vary, and direct them upon new points of march; the rear of the column always conforming (without the necessity of sending particular orders) to whatever alterations of direction the head may take; and the commander conducting that head so as to enable the rear to comply with its movements without hurry.

As

As the lines of march in filing will feldom be perpendicular to the new line, the leaders of platoons will take care that their laft 12 or 15 paces in approaching their ferjeants fhall be made in a direction perpendicular to the new line, fo that their platoons may *Halt*, *Front*, juftly, without any neceffity of fhifting their rear files.

During the tranfition from one pofition to another, the wheeling diftances fhould be nearly preferved; but at any rate great care muft be taken that they are correct, juft before entering the new line.

When the platoons in this manner gain a new pofition by filing, they alwas *File* from the flank which is neareft to that pofition, and place their pivot flanks upon it.—If the pivot happens to be the leading flank, the conducting officer *Halts*, *Fronts* his platoon when he touches the new pofition, which is marked by his ferjeant.—But if the pivot is the following flank, the officer who leads ftops in his own perfon when he arrives at the new pofition, marked alfo by his ferjeant, and makes his platoon go beyond it and behind the ferjeant, till his pivot man arrives in it. He then *Halts*, *Fronts* the whole platoon.—Conducting officers muft therefore recollect that it is always the pivot flanks which are halted in the new pofition, and that on them the platoons wheel up into line.—In general when the platoons file to the front, the pivot flanks lead and arrive firft in the new line: When they file to the rear, the pivots follow and arrive laft in the line.

Changes of pofition are thus made in an accurate and expeditious manner by one or two battalions; but an extenfive line would be too much broken if thrown into fo many fmall files, nor could it in open ground, without the greateft attention to diftances, rifk

risk such an operation, if there was any possibility of an enemy interrupting its completion.—This mode applies in many situations among trees, and where the ground is much impeded with bushes or obstacles which prevent marching on a platoon or a larger front.

Fig. 50. When the new line (c) outflanks towards the point of intersection, then the battalion breaking to that hand, will have its head (a) nearer to the new line than its rear.—When the new line (B) outflanks from the point of intersection, then the battalion breaking from that point will have its head (b) farther from the new line than its rear; but in this case the platoons must be so directed during the march, by making a kind of gradual wheel forward upon the rear, that the head (b) shall enter the new line before the rear arrives upon it.

S. 124. *When the Battalion changes Position by breaking into Open Column, marching up in Column to the Point where its Head is to remain, and entering the Line by filing its Platoons.*

Fig. 57. C. A.
Fig. 51.

HALT. — The pivot flank of the column being directed on the adjutant (c), who marks the flank point in the new line, will HALT when arrived within a few paces of him; a point of direction (d) beyond the adjutant is

FACE.

QUICK MARCH.

Halt, Front.

Dress.

is alſo immediately aſcertained.—The word FACE (to the right or left as is neceſſary to conduct into the new line) is then given and executed by all the platoons, and the ſerjeants begin to run out to mark their pivot points.—At the word MARCH the whole move in file; the head platoon places its pivot flank at a wheeling diſtance from the adjutant, and every other one in the manner before directed arrange themſelves behind the head one, and behind each other; their flanks being corrected by the commanding officer, they are then ready to wheel up into line.—The facing and filing of the platoons will depend on which ſide of the adjutant they are to be arranged, and which way the line is to face.

HALT.

When a battalion open column entered and marching on a ſtraight line is to form at a point where its front flank is to be placed, it will receive the word HALT when its leading diviſion is at a wheeling diſtance ſhort of that point.

S. 125. *When the Battalion changes Position by breaking into Open Column.—Marching up to the Point where its Rear is to rest.—And entering the Line by the Wheeling of its Platoons.*

Fig. 57. F.
Fig. 52.

Wheel.
Halt, Dress.
March.
HALT.

Besides the adjutant who marks the point of entry, two advanced points of March must be given.—The battalion then enters by Wheels, and moves (as in *S.* 115.), and when its last division is at its point, it receives the word HALT, and pivots being corrected the whole are ready to wheel up into line.

A battalion open column entering a new position where its rear flank is to be placed—If the wheels are made to the pivot hand, it receives the word HALT when its rear division has just completed its wheel into the new direction.—If the wheels are made to the reverse hand it receives the word HALT when the last division but one has completed its wheel into the new direction, and the last division itself files and places its pivot flank at the given point.—When a battalion open column, entered and marching on a straight line, is to form at a point where its rear flank is to be placed, it will receive the word HALT when the pivot of its rear division arrives at that point.

By these operations of entering a new line at the rear, or at the front point, will the distant changes of a considerable line generally be made; each battalion

breaking

breaking from the old line, and entering the new one in ſeparate column; the whole of which movement may be made in quick time; the battalions within themſelves are at all times collected, there can hardly be any impediments from ground (where it is poſſible for troops to move at all) that can prevent the tranſit of the battalion column from the one point to the other: the line is taken up juſt, by placing the pivot flanks upon it, and the diſtances are moſt correct, being taken up in all caſes from the front of the column.—Should the preſence and nearneſs of an enemy make it too precarious, thus to change poſition in detached columns; the ECHELLON March muſt then take place.

S. 126. *When the Battalion changes Poſition by breaking into Open Column.—Marching up in Column, and entering the new Poſition at the Point where a Central Diviſion is to reſt,*
Fig. 57. H. *and form in Line.*

It will often happen that the head of the battalion column muſt by wheeling enter the alignement at a point not ſo far diſtant from where that head is to be placed in line: On its arrival there, the rear platoons cannot then have entered, but are ſtopped in the old direction by the ceſſation of movement in the front, it

it therefore becomes neceſſary immediately to bring thoſe platoons into the alignement, that the battalion may juſtly form, and this is done by filing.

Wheel. *Halt, Dreſs.* *March.* HALT. Fig. 53. FACE.	The leading platoon of the battalion having *wheeled* into the alignement followed by the others, when it arrives at the point where it is to form in line, the word HALT is given, and the column ſtops.—The leading platoon, and ſuch others as may have already wheeled into the alignement, being now at their proper points remain ſo, and the word FACE is then immediately given, when all the platoons who are ſtill in the old direction face to the flank which conducts to their place in the new line.
Q. MARCH. *Halt, Front,* *Dreſs.*	At the word Q. MARCH, the ſerjeants mark their points in the line, and the platoons move and halt with their pivot flanks on it ready to wheel up into line.

This movement includes both the operations of the battalion as entering a line where its rear is to reſt, and where its front is to reſt.

S. 127. *When the Battalion changes Poſition, by breaking into Open Column.—Marching up in Column to the Point where its Head Diviſion remains placed in the new Poſition, and which its Rear Diviſions enter on,*

Fig. 54. 78. *by the Echellon March.*

HALT. The column will advance to the ſpot where its leading diviſion is to be placed: It will there receive the word HALT.---The leading diviſion will, if neceſſary, be wheeled accurately into the new line: Each of the other diviſions will wheel back on its reverſe flank ſuch number of paces as is neceſſary to place it perpendicular to its point in the new line; the

MARCH. whole will MARCH, and ſucceſſively form up to the leading diviſion, by the echellon movement. *(S. 158. 159.)*

If the column halts perpendicular (A) to the new line, its diviſions will wheel back 1-8th of the circle, or a half wheel.---If the column halts oblique (B) to the new line, the diviſions will proportionally wheel, ſo as to be placed perpendicular to their future lines of march.

In this manner the diviſions of the column arrive in full front, one after the other, in the new line.

S. 128. When the Battalion changes Position, by breaking into Open Column,—Marching in Column to the Point in the new Position where its Head is to rest, and to which its Rear Divisions form, by successively passing each other and wheeling up.

Fig. 57. D.

Fig. 55.

Wheel up.

Halt, Dress.

March.

Halt, Dress.

The column having arrived in the direction of, or in any direction oblique or perpendicular behind the line, and at the point where its head is to rest, but which its rear is to pass, its leading division will wheel into the line, and halt; each other division continuing its March will move on square behind the first formed division, at which point its leading officer will, if necessary, shift to its inward flank, and each as it comes opposite to its ground will successively wheel, march up, and dress in line with those already in it.

If the column is marching in the direction of the line, it will of course have its pivot flank on it, but as in this formation the wheel is made to the reverse hand, therefore before it begins, the battalion must shift the breadth of the column to bring the reverse flanks on the line, and be directed by them, the leading officers at the same time shifting.

In

In this manner the battalion does not ſtand in open column on the new line, but ſucceſſively wheels up by diviſions, and forms in full front on the given objects.—It may be uſed when the direction of its march is nearly in the prolongation of the new line, and when a battalion, arriving on the flank of a line already formed, has to lengthen out that line.

S. 129. *When the Battalion changes Poſition, by breaking into Open Column.—Marching up perpendicular to the new Line, and to the Point where its Head is to reſt, and forming in the new Poſition by the Eventail*
Fig. 56. 57. E. *or Fan Movement.*

TO THE—OBLIQUE.

Forward.

Half Step.
HALT.

When the leading diviſion (b) is at leaſt the length of the battalion column behind its point in the new line, it ſhortens its ſtep one half as ſoon as the others receive orders to OBLIQUE from the column; this they do till oppoſite their reſpective places, when each moves *forward* ſucceſſively to the leading platoon and to each other, take up the half ſtep, enter the line in front, and the whole HALT.

This movement is performed on the March, and muſt be begun at a diſtance behind the line proportion'd to the body which is to oblique and form.—It may be applied to one battalion, but hardly to a more conſiderable body, which would find great difficulty in the execution.—It gives a gradual encreaſe of front during a progreſſive movement.—With juſtneſs it can be made on a front diviſion only, not on a central or rear one: In proportion as the leading platoon ſhortens its ſtep will the one behind it, and ſucceſſively each other, come up into line with it.—As ſoon as the colours of the battalion come up they become the leading point.

Although it is an operation of more difficulty, yet if the leading diviſion continues the ordinary, and the obliquing ones take the quick ſtep, till they ſucceſſively are up with it, a battalion column which is placed behind the flank of a line, may in this manner, during the march, and when near to an enemy, gradually lengthen out that line.

CHANGES

Changes of Position of the Open Column, made on a fixed Point by the Filing of Companies.

Fig. 63. The changes of poſition of a column are the ſame as thoſe of a line, after that line has broken into column.

S. 130. *When a Battalion in Open Column changes Poſition on a front fixed Company, by throwing forward or backward the Pivot Flanks of the reſt of the Column.*

Fig. 47. That company is placed with its pivot flank in, and perpendicular to, the new direction, and points before it and behind it are given as directed for the battalion, the others FACE, MARCH, and cover it in the new line.

S. 131. When a Battalion in Open Column changes Position on its rear fixed Company, by throwing forward or backward the Pivot Flanks of the rest of the Column.

Fig. 47. Each company countermarches; the given company is placed.—The change then becomes the ſame as on the front company. Each company again countermarches, and the column is in a ſituation to move on as before.

S. 132. When a Battalion in Open Column changes its Position on any Central fixed Company.

Fig. 48. That company (a) is placed with its pivot flank in, and perpendicular to, the new direction, and points (c b) before and behind it are given, where the pivots of its adjoining companies are to be placed: all ſuch as were in front of it countermarch and face it.—The whole then FACE to and FILE from which ever (but the ſame nomi-

nominal) flank is required in order to cover before and behind the placed company, and to arrive in the new direction.—The companies that face the placed one again COUNTERMARCH, and the column is in a situation to move on.

Should it be intended to form the line immediately after making the change of position, in that case the company which faces to, and is next the placed one, would take care to *Halt* in the new position, with a double distance from the placed one, and the line would be immediately formed by the WHEEL up of companies, without making the second countermarch. It is always to be remembered, that whenever two platoons *face* each other in the same column, with intention to form in line, they must have double distance, as they both *wheel inwards*, and meet on the line of formation.—But when the column after changing position is to be countermarched in part, and proceed in the new direction, in that case no double distance is taken, and the necessary caution is given accordingly.

S. 133. *When a Battalion in Open Column changes to distant Position in its Front.*

Fig. 51. 52. 53. The column will march forward to some given point in that line, and then enter it, according to one of the prescribed modes at which its head, central, or rear division is to stand.

S. 134. When a Battalion in Open Column changes to a diſtant Poſition in its Rear.

Fig. 51. 52. 53. Each diviſion of the column will countermarch, and it will then proceed, as having the poſition in its front.

S. 135. When a Battalion in Open Column changes to a diſtant Poſition to either Flank.

Fig. 49. The companies will FILE from the old into the new direction; or, if the poſition is diſtant, the head of the column will march towards it, and enter it as a poſition in front.

S. 136. When the Battalion Column with the Right in Front is to form to the Right Flank.

If the battalion is required ſuddenly to be formed on the ground on which it then ſtands, the right pivots will quickly be covered, and the diviſion will wheel to the right into the line: in this ſituation the diviſions of the battalion will be inverted.

If no inverſion is to take place, the formation will be a ſucceſſive one, by the head diviſion wheeling to the right, and the others marching on paſt it, and ſucceſſively wheeling up. (S. 128.)

When the head of a column advances and enters a new direction, by wheeling to its pivot hand, or by filing its diviſions from its reverſe hand, the formation made on that line, by wheeling up the diviſions, will front towards the rear of the column.—When the head of the column advances and enters a new direction, by wheeling to its reverſe hand, or by filing its diviſions from its pivot hand, the formation made on that line by wheeling up will front the ſame way as the head of the column did when advancing to the line. Fig. 60. 61.

The open column forms in line on its front, rear, or central diviſion, by the Echellon march, as in S. 158. Fig. 78.

The open column cloſes to cloſe column on any named diviſion, and forms in line by the deployments of the cloſe column.

CLOSE COLUMN.

Application of the close column.

1. The battalion close column is formed from the column of march, or from line.—From the column of march it is generally formed for the purpose of assembly, or deploying into line.—From line it is formed in order quickly, and in force to pass a defile, or bridge: to make an attack in certain confined situations, where circumstances make it eligible: to oppose, in ground where its flanks are not protected, a threatened charge of cavalry: to facilitate movements to the front, flanks, or rear, from which afterwards any other distances may be taken, or the line may be formed in the most expeditious manner.

2. The close column will generally be composed of companies for the purposes of movement: But when it is halted, and is to deploy into line, it will then stand two companies in front, and five in depth.

3. The same general circumstances apply to the close column as to the open column.—When the close column is formed, rear ranks are one foot asunder, divisions are one pace asunder: Officers and serjeants are on the pivot flanks of their companies: Colours and supernumerary officers and serjeants are on the flanks, not the pivot ones: Music, drummers, pioneers, are ordered into the rear of the column: Artillery is either in the front, or on the reverse flank of the column when in march.

4. The commanding officer alone gives orders to the close column for its MARCH, HALT, and commencement of formation.

5. The battalion close column may be formed from line; in front, or rear of either of the flank companies; or in the front, and rear of any central company. Formation to front or rear.

6. *If the Column is to stand faced as the line is,* the battalion will face INWARDS, or to the directing company, each other company will disengage its head, march, and place itself as ordered before or behind that company.

7. *If the Column is to stand faced to the rear of the line*, then the directing company will countermarch on its own ground, the battalion will face OUTWARDS, or from the directing company, each other company will disengage its head, and move in file towards its place in the close column, by this means accomplishing a countermarch of the whole, and the column standing fronted to its former rear.

FOR-

Formation of Close Column from Line.

S. 137. *Before or behind either of the Flank Companies.*

Fig. 64. CAUTION. TO THE—FACE.	A Caution will be given mentioning the company, and whether the formation is in front or rear of it. -The battalion will then be faced to that company, and the heads of the other companies will disengage to which ever hand naturally conducts them towards their place in the close column: The officers and their covering serjeants post themselves at the head of their files ready to lead; the officer of the named company shifts, if necessary, to that flank which is to become the pivot one of the column, and his serjeant also places himself 6 or 8 paces before or behind him (according to circumstances) to mark the perpendicular of the front of the column.
QUICK MARCH.	The whole will march quick to the front or rear of the company ordered to be formed on, and each leader will proceed in the same manner as in forming an open column from line (except that the serjeants

do

Halt, Front, Drefs. — (do not run out), ftopping in his own perfon at his pivot point, and giving his words *Halt, Front—Drefs*, to his company, when it has arrived upon the proper ground on which it is to ftand in clofe column.

During the formation of all clofe columns, as foon as the battalion is put in motion, the commanding officer will immediately place himfelf in front of the column, before the officer of the named company, and from thence judging the perpendicular of the column, will attend to the officers covering each other in that direction as they come up, whether fuch covering is taken from the front or from the rear, which will depend on the formation of the column.

S. 138. *On a Central Company.*

Fig. 64.
CAUTION.
INWARDS, FACE.
QUICK, MARCH.
Halt, Front, Drefs.

A CAUTION of formation is given.—The named company will ftand faft, and the battalion will face INWARDS; the heads of companies will difengage according as they are to be in front, or rear, the officer of the named company will place himfelf on his future pivot flank, and at the word MARCH, the reft of the formation will proceed as before directed, part of the battalion arranging itfelf before, and part behind the given company, and the officers covering on the proper pivot flank.

1. In the ſame manner in which cloſe columns are here formed from line on any given diviſion, by facing and diſengaging, may columns at half or quarter diſtance alſo generally be formed; obſerving that in ſuch caſes the covering ſerjeants run out to mark their reſpective flank points, as in the formation in open column.

Fig. 65. 66.

OUTWARDS FACE.

2. In forming cloſe column facing to the rear, the ſame operations take place, as to the front, with this difference—That the CAUTION expreſſes what is to be done; that the named diviſion *countermarches*; that the other diviſions of the battalion FACE OUTWARDS from it, and lead from their fartheſt flanks, in order to eſtabliſh the countermarch of the whole.

3. The cloſe column is formed from column of march, by *halting* the head diviſion, and ORDERING the others to cloſe up, and *Halt* ſucceſſively.—Or, by the head diviſion continuing its March, and the rear ones being ordered to MARCH QUICK into cloſe column, and ſucceſſively to reſume the ordinary march.

The cloſe column marches to its flank to deploy; to correct intervals; to gain any enemy's flank; or for ſome other particular purpoſe: But a conſiderable movement to front or rear cannot be made without looſening its diviſions and ranks.

S. 139.

S. 139. *When the Column marches to a Flank.*

COLUMN WILL MARCH TO THE ———	A CAUTION will exprefs to which flank it is to march ; if to that which is not the pivot, the leading officers and ferjeants of each will move quickly by the rear of their divifions to that flank ; and the fupernumerary officers and ferjeants and colours, who were on that flank, will exchange to the other.
RIGHT (OR LEFT) FACE. QUICK, MARCH. HALT, FRONT.	The whole will then FACE, and be put in MARCH, the officer that leads the front divifion taking care to march in the exact alignement, and all the others in preferving their proper fituations, Drefs and move by him.---When the column HALTS, FRONTS, the pivot officers and ferjeants, &c. &c. are ordered to fhift to their proper places (if not already there) by the rear of their refpective divifions.

S. 140. *When the Column marches to the Front.*

MARCH. LOOSEN RANKS. *Step out.* HALT. *Halt.*	The whole ſtep off at the word MARCH, or QUICK MARCH. If it is meant to looſen the ranks of the column, a CAUTION ſo to do will be given, on which all the diviſions except the leading one will *ſtep ſhort*, and each ſucceſſively from its leader will receive a word *ſtep out* when his ranks are one pace aſunder. If a general word HALT is given, the whole column halts as it is then placed; but if a partial and low word *Halt* is given to the leading diviſion only, the others ſtill move on, and *Halt* ſucceſſively in cloſe column by word from their leaders.

S. 141. *When the Column halted is to take a new Direction.*

CAUTION.	A CAUTION will be given that it is to change direction either to the right or left; on which the officers and ſerjeants, if not already there, ſhift to the flanks that are to lead.--- The front diviſion of the column is placed in the new direction, and an advanced point is given to determine the future line of pivots.

The

— FACE. QUICK, MARCH. The other divisions will FACE as ordered and MARCH quick.—Each division separately when it arrives at its point which the serjeants may give, will *Halt*, *Front*, and cover in column. Officers and serjeants will again shift to their pivot flanks, if necessary, and the covering of pivots be perfected.

Halt, Front, Dress.

S. 142. *When the Column marching, changes Direction.*

If gradual and inconsiderable changes of direction are to be made during the march of the column, the head will step short, and will on a moveable pivot gradually effect such change, while all the other divisions, by advancing a SHOULDER, and inclining up to the flank, which is the wheeling one, will successively conform to each other, and to the leading division, so that the whole at the word FORWARD may move on as before.

S. 143. *When the Column is to make Front to its Rear by Countermarching.*

Fig. 71. THE COLUMN WILL COUNTERMARCH.	If the divisions are at a sufficient distance, they will each separately countermarch as directed for the open column.—
——— FACE. EVEN DIVISIONS.	If the column is quite close, the whole FACE from the pivot flank; the even or every other division (reckoning from the
Q. MARCH. HALT.	head) will MARCH on till its rear has quitted the column 3 or 4 paces, they then are or-
THE WHOLE COUNTERMARCH. QUICK, MARCH.	dered to COUNTERMARCH towards the column, and at the same word the odd divisions which have hitherto stood still, countermarch also each on its own ground: the even divisions march on till they are
Halt, Front. Dress.	again in column in their proper places, and *Halt, Front.*

DEPLOYMENT OF THE CLOSE COLUMN INTO LINE.

1. The battalion close column forms in line, on its front, on its rear, or on any central division by the DEPLOYMENT, or flank march, and by which it successively uncovers and extends its several divisions.

2. Before the close column deploys, its head division whether it is halted or in movement, must be on the line into which it is to extend.—That line is therefore the prolongation of the head division, and such points in it, to one or both flanks as are necessary for the formation of the battalion are immediately taken.

Attentions in the deployment.

3. The flank March must be made, firm, marked, at the deploy step, parallel to the general line and without opening out, the most particular precision is therefore required. Each division when opposite to its ground, will be most advantageously FRONTED, or at least corrected by a mounted officer of its own battalion, in case that its leader should not be critical in his commands, or that he should not be heard, or that his files are too open; and thus may the defects of a preceding division be remedied, by the judicious stop of the one following it: The division is then brought up into line by its respective leader.—The justness of formation depends altogether on officers judging their distances, and timing their commands.—The officer who leads his division up into line must take great care that it does not overshoot its

 ground;

ground; his dreſſing is always from the laſt come up diviſion, towards the other flank, and the eyes of all are turned to that diviſion.

4. As the head of the cloſe column is always brought up to the line on which it is to extend; therefore when the formation is made on the rear, or on a central diviſion, ſuch diviſion when uncovered muſt move up to the identical ground which the front has quitted.—The method formerly practiſed of throwing back ſuch diviſions as are before that of formation is improper, and will not apply where ſeveral battalions, or columns, are to form in the ſame line.

5. In the paſſage of the obſtacle, parts of the battalion are required to form in cloſe column, and again deploy into line, although the diviſion formed upon continues to be movable.

6. Before any column deploys, the diviſions are well cloſed up and ſquare, and muſic, drummers, &c. are in its rear, or on the flank not the leading one, that the movement may not be embarraſſed.

WHEN THE BATTALION CLOSE COLUMN OF COMPANIES (THE RIGHT IN FRONT) DEPLOYS INTO LINE.

S. 144. *On the Front Division.*

Fig. 67. The column being halted with its front diviſion in the alignement, and all the others in their true ſituations parallel, and well cloſed up to it, a point of forming upon and dreſſing is taken, in the prolongation of that diviſion (and corrected from it,) juſt beyond where the left of the battalion is to extend D.——A CAUTION is given that the line will form on the front diviſion.

FORM LINE ON THE FRONT DIVISION.

LEFT, FACE. At the word to the LETF FACE, the front diviſion ſtands faſt, its officer ſhifting to the right, and all the others face.—

Q. MARCH. At the word MARCH they ſtep off quick with heads dreſſed, moving parallel (not oblique) to the line of formation; the files alſo are cloſe and compact, without opening out.

Halt, Front. Dress. *March.* *Halt, Dress.*

The officer of the second or leading division having stepped out to the right at the above word March, allows his division led by his serjeant to go on a space equal to its front, and then gives his word *Halt, front---Dress*, his serjeant still remaining on the left of the division.—He then being on the right of his division immediately gives his word *March*, and the division proceeds at the ordinary step towards its place in the alignement.—The officer having in the mean time stepped nimbly forward, places himself before the left flank of the preceding division and is thus ready to give the word *Halt, Dress*, at the instant his inward flank man joins that division: He then expeditiously corrects his men (who have dressed upon the formed part of the line) on the distant given point, and resumes his proper post in line.

Halt, Front. Dress. March. Halt, Dress.

In this manner every other division proceeds, each being successively (by its officer who himself stops on the left flank of the division which precedes him) *Fronted*, *Marching up*, *Halted*, and *Dressed* in line: The officers of these divisions as each approaches within 5 or 6 paces of its ground, then stepping

ſtepping up to the flank of his preceding formed diviſion, that he may the more accurately *Halt*, *Dreſs*, his own; and the flank ſerjeant of each remaining at his point in the line, till the ſucceeding officer having ſo dreſſed his diviſion comes to replace him; he then covers his own officer.

S. 145. *On the Rear Diviſion.*

Fig. 68. The column being placed as before directed and a point of forming (D) taken to the right in the prolongation of the head diviſion, and juſt beyond where the right of the battalion is to come.

FORM LINE ON THE REAR DIVISION.

A CAUTION is given that the line will form on the rear diviſion; on which the officers commanding diviſions, and their ſerjeants, immediately paſs behind their ſeveral diviſions, and poſt themſelves on the right of each; an under officer is ſent from the rear diviſion to place himſelf correctly cloſe to and before the left flank file of the front diviſion; and the leader

of the front division is shewn the distant point (D) in the alignement on which he is to march, taking his intermediate points if necessary.

RIGHT FACE.

Q. MARCH.

The word to the RIGHT FACE is then given, on which all the divisions except the rear one, face to the right. —At the word MARCH, the faced divisions step off quick, the heads of files are dressed to the left, the front one moves in the alignement, and the others parallel and close on its right.

March.

Halt, Dress.

As soon as the rear division is uncovered, it receives the word *March*; on this the division proceeds, and when within a few paces of its ground, its officer steps nimbly up to the detached under officer who marks its left in the new position, he there in due time gives his words *Halt, Dress*, and quickly corrects his division on the distant point of formation, this done he replaces his serjeant on the right of his division.

Halt, Front. Dress.

In the mean time the commander of the division which immediately preceded the rear one, having at the first word MARCH, stepped nimbly round to the rear of his division, without impeding its movement, and having allowed it to move on led by his serjeant, gives his words, *Halt, Front*---*Dress*, when his division has marched a distance equal to its front, and thereby uncovered the one behind it, which immediately moves forward; he then places himself on its left, and his serjeant

March. *Halt, Dreſs.*

jeant remains on its right.---As ſoon as his own front is clear he gives his word *March*, on which his diviſion proceeds, he himſelf when proper, advances to the right of the preceding diviſion then on the line, and from thence gives his words *Halt, Dreſs*, when his own left file joins ſuch right; he corrects his diviſion on the right, and then replaces his own ſerjeant.

Halt, Front. Dreſs.

All the other diviſions ſucceſſively proceed in the ſame manner, until the right one (which has been marching critically in the alignement, and on no account getting before it) receives when it arrives on its juſt ground the words, *Halt, Front---Dreſs*.

S. 146. *On a Central Diviſion.*

Fig. 69.

THE LINE WILL FORM ON —— DIVISION.

OUTWARDS, FACE. Q. MARCH.

Forming point (D. D.) muſt be given to both flanks in the prolongation of the head diviſion.——At the CAUTION of forming on a central diviſion, the leading officers will ſhift accordingly.—The diviſions in front of the named one face to one flank; thoſe in rear of it to the other, according to the

 hand

hand which leads to their ground.---The named division when uncovered moves up into line to its marked flank: Those that were in front of it proceed as in forming on a rear division: Those that were in rear of it proceed as in forming on a front division.

S. 147. *When the close Column of Companies forms Column of two Companies, or Grand Divisions.*

ALTERNATE COMPANIES WILL FORM COLUMN OF GRAND DIVISIONS.

On the CAUTION, that the alternate companies from the front will form grand divisions, all supernumeraries, &c. but not the colours, go to the rear of the column if not already there.---At the word FACE, the alternate companies face (always to the pivot flank) and their officers then take one step sideways, so as to be clear of their rank.---At the word MARCH the officers stand fast, the serjeant of each conducts the division, and the officer of

——— FACE.
Fig. 70. 72.

MARCH.

Halt, Front. Dreſs. March. Halt, Dreſs.

of each when it has cleared the ſtanding diviſion, gives the words *Halt, Front—Dreſs—March*; and *Halt, Dreſs* when he arrives at the one he is to join, his ſerjeant being on the flank of his diviſion in the ſame manner as in deploying into line. The colours remain with their proper diviſion in the column, and that diviſion muſt of courſe outflank on the hand not the pivot one.

CLOSE DISTANCE TO THE FRONT. MARCH. *Halt, Dreſs.*

The officers and ſerjeants now ſhift their places, and take poſt (whether the column has its right or left in front) ſo that the right company of each diviſion has its officer and its ſerjeant on its right, or in the center of the diviſion.—A CAUTION is given to cloſe diſtance to the front.—The diviſions move at the word MARCH, by the pivot flanks, and each pivot officer gives his words *Halt, Dreſs*, when his diviſion has cloſed.—The cloſe column is then ready to deploy or to march.

WHEN

WHEN THE CLOSE COLUMN OF TWO COMPANIES IN FRONT IS TO DEPLOY.

S. 148. *On the Front Diviſion.*

THE LINE WILL FORM ON THE FRONT DIVISION.	The CAUTION of deployment is given, the line is prolonged, and attendant circumſtances prepared.—The diviſions that are to move, receive the
—— FACE.	word FACE, (always in this caſe to the pivot flank.) —They move in file at
Q. MARCH.	the word MARCH.—A mounted officer gives, ſucceſſively and in due time to each diviſion the word
HALT FRONT.	HALT, FRONT.—The inward officer of each diviſion when it has halted and fronted gives his words
Dreſs. *March.* *Halt, Dreſs.*	*Dreſs*——*March*——*Halt, Dreſs*, and the outward officer aſſiſts him by remaining on the flank of the diviſion in the line, in the ſame manner that the ſerjeant does for the company.——
Fig. 67.	The left officer then replaces his ſerjeant on the right of his proper company.

In

In this manner division after division comes up into line, and the supernumeraries, &c. also gradually take their places in the rear.

S. 149. *On the Rear Division.*

CAUTION. The CAUTION of deployment is given, the line is prolonged and an under officer sent from the rear division to the pivot flank of the front one.——The divisions that are to
—— FACE. move receive the word FACE (which in this case is always from the pivot flank.)——They move in file at the
QUICK MARCH. word MARCH.

The division that is immediately before the rear one, as soon as it has uncovered the rear one, receives from the mounted officer the word
HALT, FRONT. HALT, FRONT, and *Dress* from its
Dress. inward or pivot officer; and at that instant the rear one is ordered to
March. *March* forward by its pivot flank,
Halt, Dress. and to *Halt*, and *Dress* in the line.— The division which preceded the rear one, and is now halted and fronted when it is itself uncovered, in consequnce of the movement of those before it, is also ordered to
March. *March* forward and to *Halt*, and
Halt, Dress. *Dress* in the line.

 In

HALT, FRONT. *Drefs.* *March.* *Halt, Drefs.*	In this manner each divifion as it uncovers the one behind it, fucceffively HALTS, FRONTS by command from the mounted officer, and when it is uncovered is brought up into line by its own inward officer, aided by the outward officer.—This done the left officer replaces his ferjeant, who has preferved his poft in the front rank.

S. 150. *On a Central Divifion.*

CAUTION. OUTWARDS, FACE. Q. MARCH. HALT, FRONT.	The double operation of forming on a front and rear divifion is required.---The CAUTION of deployment is given.—The divifions FACE outwards—MARCH---and there muft be an officer to HALT, FRONT, thofe of each wing.---The individual divifions proceed as already directed.

The column muft always be well clofed up, before it deploys.——When it deploys on a front divifion, it faces to the pivot flank which then becomes the leading one.---When it deploys on the rear divifion it faces from the pivot flank which then becomes the following one.

The clofe column when it forms on a front, or rear divifion may either be halted, or in motion to its

its flank.—From this ſituation of the flank march it is, that every battalion is required to begin the deploy when forming in line with others, and muſt therefore be much practiſed by the battalion when ſingle.—Viz.—After the column has been placed in the alignement, it is FACED according as it is intended to form on the front, or rear diviſion, and is then put in MARCH, its head diviſion following the alignement: At any inſtant the diviſion to be formed upon is ordered to HALT, FRONT, and the others without ſtopping proceed and deploy upon it; if it is the front one it is already in the line; if it is the rear one the point which it comes up to remains marked for it. When the formation is on a central diviſion, it muſt always begin from the halt of the cloſe column.

The ſingle battalion ſhould alſo in exerciſe deploy on the front diviſion when in march, as it is the method by which the line is re-formed after paſſing an obſtacle, and of lengthening out the flank of a line that may be in movement.

OBLIQUE DEPLOYMENTS.

Although the quickeſt, moſt exact, and general method of deployments requires that the battalion before deploying ſhould ſtand perpendicular to the line on which it is to form, yet it may ſometimes happen that the immediate deployment of a column may be demanded, on a line oblique, to the one on which it then ſtands, and that circumſtances do not permit of the previous operation of placing it perpendicular to that line.

S. 151.

S. 151. If the Deployment is to be made on an Oblique Line advanced.

The front division is wheeled up into the new direction on its REVERSE flank, and the line is prolonged to D.—The column is FACED to the hand it deploys to.—The leaders of divisions then turn their bodies so as each to take a direction parallel to the given one.—The whole are put in MARCH, and the rear of the divisions gradually get into the square direction of their heads which proceed and form as usual. In this movement the heads of the divisions will be a little retired behind each other: The rear leaders will take great care not to close on each other, nor to the hand which conducts them: much precision is also required in justly timing the HALT FRONT of each division, which by that time ought to be moving perfectly parallel to the line of formation.

Fig. 73. B.

S. 152. *If the Deployment is to be made on an Oblique Line retired.*

The front divifion is wheeled up on its PIVOT flank into the new direction, and the line is prolonged to D.---The fame operation, though more difficult, takes place as when the line is advanced, and the rear divifions muft take particular
Fig. 73. A. care to eafe from, and yield to, the march of the front.---The head divifion being advanced a few paces before it takes the oblique direction will give a facility to the heads of the rear files, in gradually gaining it.

Such deployment can hardly be required on any other than the front divifion of the clofe column; particular attention is neceffary to give every aid as to the points of forming, and to the heads of divifions moving as foon as poffible in the true direction parallel to and behind the line.---Should a column be ordered to form on the rear, or on a central divifion, although the principles would be the fame as on the front, and as in the other rear or central deployments; yet the execution would be very difficult, and demand great circumfpection in the commanders of battalions.

S. 153. When the Close Column halted is to form in Line in the Prolongation of its Flank, and on either the Front, Rear, or a Central Division.

The CAUTION of formation is given. The named division stands fast, the others MARCH forward in close column in the given line: Their pivot officers successively take wheeling distance from each other, beginning at the named one, and successively give their word *Halt* as each has acquired it:
Fig. 74. A.C. When the whole is in open column the line is formed by a wheel up to the flank.—In this manner distances are begun to be taken from the rear; but when the named division is a front, or central one, the others that are behind it must FACE ABOUT, MARCH forward, take their distances, and *front* successively.

The column may also be opened from any named division, by the leading one only marching off, and each other successively following, as wheel-
Fig. 74. B. ing distance is acquired from the one preceding: When the whole have opened, the general word HALT is given, or the column is allowed to proceed.

ECHELLON

ECHELLON

Changes of Position of the Battalion, by the Movements of the Echellon Column of Companies.

1. The Echellon position and movements are not only necessary and applicable to the immediate attacks and retreats of great bodies, but also to the previous oblique or direct changes of situation, which a battalion, or a more considerable corps already formed in line, may be obliged to make to the front, or rear, or on a particular fixed division of the line. Utility of the Echellon of march, in changes of position.

2. The oblique changes are produced by the wheel less than the quarter circle of divisions from line, which places them in the Echellon situation.—The direct changes are produced by the perpendicular and successive march of divisions from line, to front, or rear. How formed

3. The march in line, or in the direct Echellon B, produces new parallel positions to front or rear.—The march in Echellon C. when formed by the wheels of the divisions from line, produces new oblique positions, to front or rear, according to the degree of wheel given to the Echellon.—The march in open column A produces new prolonged positions to either flank. Fig. 75. How applied.

4. The Echellon of march, necessary in making changes of situation, will be composed of companies or sub-divisions, and generally formed from line by the Echellon formed by wheels of companies.

the wheel of each on its own flank, to the hand to which it is to move.—Such wheel will feldom exceed the eighth of the circle, but can never amount to the quarter circle, otherwise the body would ftand in open column.

Echellon column.

5. The Echellon of march may be confidered as a column of a particular kind, as well as the open column, and is eafily converted into fuch.

Differences and agreement of the open column and Echellon.

Fig. 75.

6. All the divifions of an open column A. march upon one and the fame perpendicular, and are therefore eafily conducted.—All the divifions of an Echellon B. C. move on different perpendiculars, each on its own, but all of them parallel to the directing one, and removed from each other a fpace equal to what the divifions cut within each other.—In open column the perpendicular diftance from divifion to divifion is equal to the front of the following one. In Echellon the fmaller the wheel is, the fmaller is the perpendicular diftance from divifion to divifion, till it vanifhes into nothing: but in all fituations of the wheeled Echellon, the oblique diftance from flank to flank is equal to the front of the preceding divifion.—In open column the proper pivot flank is the directing one, and the wheels are made on it, into column backward, and into line forward. In Echellon the reverfe flank (or that which firft joins its preceding divifion, when the line is to be formed forward), is the directing one, and the wheels are made on it, into Echellon forward, and into line backward.—In open column each divifion preferves a diftance from flank to flank equal to its own front. In Echellon each preferves a diftance from flank to flank equal to the front of its preceding divifion.—An Echellon may at any time be converted into the open column, by wheeling up its divifions till they ftand perpendicular to the line which paffes through all its directing flanks.

An

An open column may in the ſame manner be converted into the Echellon column by wheeling back its diviſions, each a named number of paces, and on either flank, according to circumſtances.

7. The wheel from line in open column is eaſily aſcertained, by the perpendicular halt of each diviſion on that line; but the paralleliſm of the wheels into Echellon, which is a circumſtance that is eſſential, and decides the juſtneſs of the movement, is more difficult to be determined; for, being confined to no certain portion of the circle, ſuch cannot well be announced or executed as a direction, and therefore *a given number of paces to be wheeled by bodies of equal ſtrength*, and which ſerve as ſo many parallel baſes of formation, may be the beſt general order that can be given.

Method of forming Echel on by wheels from line.

8. If the companies of a battalion, or more conſiderable body, were all of equal ſtrength, and ſhould the outward man of each take the ſame number of paces on the circumference of the circle which he deſcribes, they will after the wheel ſtand parallel among themſelves: but if thoſe companies are unequal, they will then not be parallel to each other, and conſequently not in a proper relative ſituation.—Though ſuch equality may exiſt in a ſingle battalion, it will ſeldom or never exiſt in a line of battalions, and a different calculation and direction for each battalion, correſponding to their ſtrengths, appears neceſſarily to be required, whenever they are in concert to change poſition.—This difficulty may be obviated by adopting a *practical rule* as well for the battalion as for the line, on all occaſions of wheeling by companies into Echellon, in order to change poſition, and of whatever ſtrength the companies may be, viz. *That each covering ſerjeant, as the caſe requires, having previouſly placed himſelf before or behind a given*

file (the 8th) from the ſtanding flank ſhall take the named number of wheeling paces, and thereby become a direction for the company to wheel up to, and halt: as in *S.* 154. 158.—As eight paces of the eighth file complete the quarter circle or WHEEL, ſo four paces give the HALF WHEEL, and two paces the QUARTER WHEEL, all which are wheels often made from open column, or from line, to change to a poſition perpendicular, or more or leſs oblique to the one quitted: and theſe degrees, with the helps given by advancing or keeping back a ſhoulder as is neceſſary, during the movement, will perhaps ſuffice to arrive and form in any new direction with preciſion.

General ſituation of the directing files of Echellon.

9. The flank directing files of Echellons, whether they are formed by the perpendicular march of diviſions ſucceſſively from line to the front, or by the wheels of diviſions from line to the flank, will at firſt, and ſhould always afterwards be found in a diagonal line with reſpect to the front of diviſions: In the firſt caſe A. the diſtance from flank to flank depends on the interval which the diviſions are ordered to march off at: In the ſecond caſe B. ſuch diſtance is always the ſame, and equal to the front of the diviſion which has wheeled forward, and which by wheeling back would exactly fill it up.—Whenever therefore the directing flanks of an Echellon are all in the ſame line, and each diſtant from its preceding one, a ſpace equal to the front of the preceding diviſion, ſuch Echellon is in a ſituation by wheeling back, to form in line to the flank, as in *S.* 156. or to take a poſition forward as in *S.* 162.

Fig. 76.

Paſſing obſtacles.

10. In the Echellon march, ſuch diviſion or diviſions as may meet with obſtacles, will file round them without deranging the adjoining diviſions, who preſerve the neceſſary vacant ſpaces and diſtances till the broken diviſions can again take their places.

11. When

11. When a change of poſition or march to the rear is to be made in Echellon, the battalion or line will in general FACE about, WHEEL into Echellon, and then proceed.—Or, it may be ordered firſt to WHEEL back into Echellon, then FACE about, and proceed as above. Changes to the rear in Echellon.

CHANGES OF POSITION OF THE BATTALION FROM LINE, BY THE ECHELLON MARCH OF COMPANIES.

1. When the outward flank men of the company formed three deep is ordered to wheel up three paces, or, if formed two deep, to wheel up two paces, ſuch wheel is ſufficient to diſengage its rear rank from the front rank of the following one.—In ſuch ſituation a certain ſmall degree of inclination may be gained to a flank, in proportion to the front of the company which has ſo wheeled, and the adherence of the ſeveral companies cloſe behind each others flank, ſhould facilitate the operation: but when a greater degree of inclination to the flank is required, then a more conſiderable wheel up by companies is made, that each may thereby be placed in the perpendicular direction which it is to purſue.

2. It has been obſerved, that the degree of wheel into Echellon is always leſs than the quarter circle, and that the 8th file from the ſtanding flank is always

the one to which the named number of wheeling paces (33 inches each) is applied, in order to enſure the parellelifm of the companies, however unequal they may be, and whether they wheel backward or forward.—Alſo, that the degree of wheel made from line into Echellon is always ſuch as is required to conduct the diviſions in a perpendicular direction to their future points; and this required degree muſt be determined by trial, or by the eye of the commander, before he announces his order to HALF WHEEL—QUARTER WHEEL—or WHEEL any named number of paces, as 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7.

S. 154. When a Battalion from Line Wheels forward by Companies to either Flank into Echellon, and Halts.

COMPANIES, WHEEL FORWARD — PACES TO THE ——	1. At the general CAUTION, that the companies will wheel forward ſo many paces to the right or left, ſo as to place them perpendicular to their future lines of march, the officer, if not already there, moves to the named flank of his company, and the covering ſerjeant of each at the ſame time runs out, places himſelf before the 8th file

file from the named flank, immediately takes the ſaid number of wheeling paces, on the circumference of the circle of which his flank man is the center, and then ſtands faſt with his body turned in the line of that flank man, who alſo faces into the line of his ſerjeant.—The whole ſerjeants ought thus to be in a line, but if any ſmall correction is neceſſary, it will immediately by the commanding officer be made from the leading flank.

Fig. 79. A.
Fig. 86. A.

Q. MARCH. — At the word MARCH, each company wheels up, till its 8th file arrives cloſe behind the ſerjeant, at which time the officer who is on the ſtanding flank gives his word *Halt, Dreſs*, eyes are turned towards him, and the dreſſing being completed, the ſerjeant places himſelf on the outward wheeling flank.

Halt, Dreſs.

In this ſituation the flanks wheeled to, remain in an exact line, and alſo the wheeling flanks, if the diviſions are of equal ſtrength: but in proportion to the degree of wheel which has been made will the perpendicular raiſed from the ſtanding flank of each diviſion cut within the diviſion preceding it, till by the complete wheel of the quarter circle all ſuch perpendiculars coincide, and beyond that, new Echellon ſituations begin to the rear.

2. When the movement is to be to the rear inſtead of the front, in that caſe the battalion will in general FACE to the right about and WHEEL forward into Echellon in the beforementioned manner, proceeding as if the line was to its proper front.

3. Or the battalion may occaſionally be firſt ordered to WHEEL BACK into Echellon (as in S. 158.) and then to FACE ABOUT, and MARCH to the rear: they thus do not ſtand for any time unneceſſarily faced to the rear, previous to the operation of marching, which is a circumſtance to be avoided as much as poſſible.

S. 155. *When a Battalion, having from Line wheeled into Echellon, Marches forward and Halts; ready to form in ſuch Direction as ſhall be required.*

MARCH. Fig. 79. Fig. 86. A. HALT.

The companies ſtanding thus parallel to each other, and their leaders being on the pivot or flanks wheeled to, at the word MARCH, the whole move on at the ordinary ſtep, each flank on its own perpendicular: each officer is now attentive to preſerve the diſtance he marched off at from his preceding pivot, and alſo his oblique covering in the line of pivots, which remain always parallel to the original line; this requires the greateſt care, being an operation more difficult than moving in open column, where all the pivots cover each other in the ſame line.— Theſe circumſtances obſerved, the Echellon may at any inſtant be ordered to HALT, and will then be in a ſituation ready to form up, parallel or oblique to the line it quitted. If parallel, by each diviſion wheeling

wheeling back to the flank of the one immediately behind it. If oblique, by the divifions moving up into the direction which the leading one then has, or is to be placed in, as is hereafter directed.

The Echellon can at no time march in any other direction than in the one to which it ftands perpendicular, except that an oblique march of the whole divifions fhould be required from it.—During the march, the fame great regulating circumftances that direct the open column direct the Echellon, viz. the prefervation of diftance from the preceding leading flank. and the diagonal lining or covering of all thofe flanks, at the fame time that the perpendiculars of march are preferved by each divifion.—Could the march in Echellon bealways executed with the greateft accuracy, each flank leader, covering a certain file of his preceding divifion, at a certain diftance, would enfure exactnefs: but this alone is not to be trufted to, and is rather to be confidered as an aid than as an invariable rule; for, the unfteady or open march of one or more divifions, if productive of a waving or fhifting of the following ones, would in a fenfible manner influence the whole.—If the leaders of the two head divifions do preferve an equal and fteady pace under the direction of the commanding officer, who keeps clofe on the flank of the firft one, and gives fuch directions to the fecond as are neceffary for preferving the parallelifm of the march; thofe two will ferve as a bafe line on which all the others fhould cover.—In this, as in every other cafe, the perfect perpendicular march of the firft leader, in confequence of his body being truly placed, and his attention folely given to this object, is what will much determine the precifion and juftnefs of the whole.

S. 156. When the Battalion, having Wheeled from Line into Echellon, has Marched, and Halted, and is to form back, parallel to the Line it quitted.

WHEEL BACK INTO LINE.	A CAUTION is given that the companies wheel back into line; on which the pivot men face into the line, and the officers take one ſtep forward.—At the
QUICK MARCH.	word MARCH, each company wheels back to the new pivot, and on receiving from its offi-
Halt, Dreſs.	cer the word *Halt, Dreſs*, eyes are turned towards him.—The line being completely formed, officers and ſerjeants (if not already there) move to their reſpective places in line, except in the occaſional caſe of wheeling into line, in the middle of
Fig. 79. B. Fig. 86. B.	a change of poſition.—For, officers do not then ſhift from their leading flanks (unleſs ordered), but remain there ready to fire, and to wheel again into Echellon, to reſume the march, when the ſuppoſed ſudden attack of cavalry is repulſed.

S. 157. *When the Battalion, having Wheeled from Line into Echellon, has Marched and Halted, and is to form up oblique to the Line it*
Fig. 77. *quitted.*

Various circumſtances attend the execution according to the degree of wheel which muſt be given to the leading company, in order to place it in required oblique poſition; and as the number of paces which have been already wheeled from line into Echellon, determine the nature of the Echellon, they are an eſſential part of the following arrangements.

1. *If the formation is made forward,* and the leading company is wheeled up the ſame number of paces that it before wheeled from line into Echellon,
Fig. 79. C. then the others without altering their
77. B. ſituation move on, and ſucceſſively dreſs up with it.—In this manner does one or more battalions make their changes of poſition on a flank or central company of the line.

2. *If its wheel up exceeds* that number of paces, the others wheel up
Fig. 77. C. one half of that exceſs, move on, and ſucceſſively dreſs up with it.

3. *If*

3. *If its wheel up is leſs* than that number of paces, the others wheel back one half of what they originally wheeled forward, after deducting one half of what the leading diviſion has now wheeled forward; they then move on, and dreſs up with it.

4. *If the formation is to be on the prolongation* of the front diviſion as it ſtands, the others wheel back one half of what they originally wheeled forward, then move on, and dreſs up with it.

5. *If the leading diviſion has to wheel back* into the new poſition, the others wheel back (in addition to the one half of what they originally wheeled forward) half of what the leading diviſion has now wheeled, move on, and dreſs up with it.

All theſe ſpecified wheelings are in order to make the diviſions ſtand perpendicular to the lines by which they muſt march to their points of formation, which lines change in conſequence of the poſition given by the leading diviſion.

S. 158.

S. 158. *When from Open Column, the Companies Wheel backward into Echellon, in order to form in Line on the Head Company.*

Fig. 78. The head company either remains ſquare to the column, or is wheeled forward on either flank into the intended direction of the line, and on the poſition given it, will depend the relative one which is taken by the other companies, and which the commander will determine to himſelf, by his eye, or by immediate trial.

COMPANIES, WHEEL BACKWARD, —— PACES, ON THE —.

Fig. 78. A. C.

Fig. 54. A. B.

1. On the CAUTION, that the companies except the head one will wheel back on the right or left ſo many paces (and which wheel is always backwards, and always on the reverſe flank of the column, as being that which afterwards firſt comes into line,) the officer moves to that flank, and the ſerjeant of each places himſelf with his back to the 8th file of the rear rank, immediately takes his named paces, and halts fronts with his body turned in the line of the flank man on whom he wheeled.——At

MARCH.

the word MARCH, the company wheels back till the 8th file of the

Halt, Dress. { the rear rank touches the breast of the serjeant, (who gives a low caution to halt) it is then halted and dressed by the officer from the standing flank, the serjeant places himself on the outward flank, and the whole are now in a situation to march forward, and form in line on the head company, as in *S.* 159.

2. *If the line was to be formed on the rear company of the column*; that company would remain placed; the others would FACE ABOUT—wheel BACK on the pivot flanks of the column, as being those which afterwards first come into line—MARCH,—and then *Halt, front* successively in the line of the rear company.

3. *If the line was to be formed on the rear company, but facing to the rear:* The whole column would first countermarch, each company by files, and then proceed as in forming on a front company.

4. *If the line was to be formed on a central company of the column:* That company would stand fast, or be wheeled on its own center into a new required direction.—Those in front of it would be ordered to FACE about.—The whole except the central company would WHEEL back the named number of paces; those in its front on the proper pivot flanks of the column, and those in its rear on the reverse flanks, such being the flanks that first arrive in line.—The whole would then MARCH into line with the central

Fig. 78. B.

central company, as in S. 161.—If the column was a retiring one; and the line was to front to the rear, the divisions must each countermarch before the formation begun, and the head would be thrown back and the rear forward.

S. 159. *When the Battalion changes Position to the Front, on a fixed Flank Company, by throwing forward the rest of the Battalion.*

When the commander has determined the new line to be taken, by placing a
Fig. 77. A. person, a. in it, 20 or 30 paces beyond the fixed flank; he orders the serjeant
Fig. 86. C. from before the 8th file of the flank company to wheel up into that line, thereby to ascertain the number of paces required.—He then directs that company to be wheeled and halted in the new position, and the adjutant to prolong the line as far as the moving flank of the battalion will extend.

COMPANIES WHEEL FORWARD. PACES, TO THE — 4

The CAUTION is then given to the other companies, to wheel towards it, half the number of paces, that the flank one has done, for thereby will each stand perpendicular to the line, which

Q. MARCH. *Halt, Drefs.* — which is drawn from its flank in the old line to its relative flank point in the new one, and it is along fuch line that each will move—The battalion wheels into echellon as in S. 154.

MARCH. — The officer being on the inner, and the ferjeant on the outer flank of each company, the whole except the fixed company will move on at the word MARCH as directed in S. 155.

—Shoulder forward. — When the officer conducting the fecond company approaches within 7 or 8 paces (and not fooner) of where his leading flank is to join the firft company already placed, he gives a word—*Shoulder* (the outward one) *forward*, on which the man next to himfelf preferving the fame ftep gradually turns his fhoulder, fo as to arrive on the new line fquare in his own perfon; and the reft of his divifion (who till this inftant have marched in their original perpendicular direction) conforming to him proportionally lengthening their ftep, arrive in full parallel front on the line, fo as to have a very fmall movement to make at the word

Halt, Drefs up, — *Halt, drefs up,* which is given by the officer when his leading flank

flank touches the flank of his preceding company: he himself having nimbly ſtept forward when at 3 or 4 paces diſtance, and being then before that flank, inſtantly halts his men, and corrects them on the diſtant given point, their eyes being turned towards him, and the former diviſion.

— Shoulder forward.

Halt, dreſs up.

In this manner company will come up after company (or diviſion of whatever kind after diviſion) each following one, obſerving to give the word—*Shoulder forward*, when the preceding one gets the word *Halt dreſs up*, and each officer ſtepping up to before the flank of his preceding formed company when he is within 3 or 4 paces of it, that he may the more quickly and accurately give his word *Halt, dreſs up*, to his own men, which they are to do preſerving the cadenced ſtep of the diviſion, and not ſuddenly ſpringing backward or forward.—The ſerjeants will remain in the line till they are relieved by the officers whoſe places they occupy.

The exact formation in this oblique line depends totally on the companies having wheeled (only) one half of the angle which the new poſition makes with the old one, for ſhould they at firſt wheel the whole of that angle, they would be then marching parallel

 to

to that line, and arrive in it doubled behind each other; whereas by having the other half of the wheel to complete when they come near to the new poſition, each moves in a perpendicular direction, and diſengages the ground required by the ſucceeding one to form upon.

S. 160. *When the Battalion changes Poſition to the Rear on a fixed flank Company, by throwing backward the reſt of the Battalion.*

Fig. 77. B. The new poſition is given, and the flank company wheeled into it in the manner already directed, but backwards inſtead of forward.

RIGHT ABOUT FACE. COMPANIES FORWARD WHEEL —— PACES. TO THE —— Q. MARCH. *Halt, Dreſs.*	The reſt of the battalion FACES to the right about, the companies then wheel forward the given number of paces towards the ſtanding flank—or—as is already mentioned, they may if ſo ordered wheel BACKWARD into Echellon, and then FACE about.

The

MARCH. The companies MARCH with their rear ranks in front, and form in line in the same manner as when changing position forward; except that the officer of each, having timeously given his word *Shoulder forward*, when his preceding one *Halts*, *fronts*, and then having disengaged himself from his division, will as soon as his leading flank man of his front rank touches the preceding formed flank, give his word *Halt front*, *Dress back*, on which his company fronts, and without hurry dresses back on him and the formed part of the line; he correcting them upon the more distant given point.

—Shoulder forward.

Half front. Dress back.

Very great activity is required from the officer in dressing up, or dressing back, otherwise the point of appui will not be ready for the next officer who arrives and is to perform the same operation, and this will particularly happen where the change of direction is inconsiderable.—In the successive dressing of divisions in this manner officers are always to line them, so as not to obscure the distant point, but to leave it open and distinct, so that the direction of the line may run at the distance of one file from the given object of dressing.

S. 161. *When the Battalion changes Position on a Central Company, by advancing one Wing, and retiring the other.*

Fig. 80. 1. The central company is wheeled into the new position as already directed, and backwards or forwards according to the wing it belongs to.—Two points D. D. are quickly taken in the line, about where the flanks of the battalion are to extend, and in the line of the central company.

—— WING, RIGHT ABOUT FACE. COMPANIES WHEEL —— PACES INWARDS. Q. MARCH.—*Halt, Dress.*	The retiring wing FACES about—both wings WHEEL their companies inwards and forwards, half as many paces as the central company wheeled.
MARCH.	The whole MARCH forward into line with the central company, the advancing wing dressing up, and the retiring wing fronting and dressing back, as already directed.
	2. *During the march of divisions to the front, into a new direction,* if they should be obliged to form in line in order to repulse a sudden attack of cavalry; the

HALT. WHEEL BACK INTO LINE. Q. MARCH. *Halt, Drefs.* WHEEL INTO ECHELLON. Q. MARCH. *Halt, Drefs.* MARCH.	the whole will HALT; the inward or directing flank of each will ftand faft, and the outward one inftantly WHEELS back to its fucceeding one; when the enemy is repulfed, the march is refumed by each company WHEELING up its outward flank to its former pofition, and then proceeding in the movement—during this operation, the officers remain on their Echellon flanks, from thence halt, drefs them when they wheel back into line, fire them if neceffary, and from thence alfo wheel them again into Echellon.
HALT, FRONT. WHEEL UP INTO LINE. Q. MARCH. *Halt, Drefs.* RIGHT ABOUT FACE. WHEEL INTO ECHELLON. Q. MARCH. *Halt, Drefs.* MARCH.	3. *During a march to the rear*, if this operation is neceffary—The whole HALT, FRONT; each company inftantly WHEELS up its outward flank to the pivot preceding, and the line is thus formed, officers remaining on their Echellon flanks.——When the movement is to be refumed, the whole FACE to the rear, each company again WHEELS forward its outward flank the required number of paces as at firft, and the MARCH is continued.

4. *If the change of pofition is a central one:* Then both the above operations may take place at the fame time.

time. The general ſituation, if the whole is at any period of the movement halted and formed will be: ſuch central part as has arrived at the new line will be formed in it; but the flank parts which have not entered, and which join each of its extremities, will be formed in lines parallel to each other and to the poſition which they quitted.—When one flank only is required to form and halt, the other will continue to purſue its proper formation in the new line.

5. The ſquareneſs of each Echellon and individual, and the perfect equality of ſtep during the movement, are what alone can produce the decided exactneſs required in theſe operations.

S. 162. *When the whole Battalion being movable, changes Poſition to front or rear, on a diſtant point, which is in the Interſection of the old and new Line.*

Fig. 77. 79. *If the change is made to the front*; every company is wheeled up to the leading hand, half the number of paces and no more, that would be required to place it parallel to the new poſition; the whole move on in their perpendicular direction till the flank of the leading company arrives in the new line; it then immediately wheels up as many paces as it before wheeled, and halts, dreſſed in the new direction.—The other companies march on, and as they ſucceſſively arrive near the new line, they advance their outward ſhoulders, and halt, dreſs in it.

2. If

2. *If the change is made to the rear*; the whole face about, and break into Echellon.—Each again fronts and dresses back when it has arrived in the new line.

This is the movement performed by each of the battalions of a considerable line, except one flank or one central one, in most changes of position made on a point within the line.—For there can be but one battalion of a line which forms on a fixed division; all the others are evidently movable forward or backward; each in proportion to its distance from the general center, and from the point where its leading flank is to the rest in the new line.

S. 163. *When from Line, the Companies of a Battalion, march off in Echellon, successively and directly to the front, and again form in Line, either to the front, or to the flank.*

Fig. 81. 1. *As long as the intention is to form to that front*; they may be retired at any named distance whatever behind each other, and when the leading division *Halts*, the others may move on, and dress in line with it.

Fig. 81. B. C. 2. *But when the intention is to form in line to the flank*; the whole will be ordered to HALT, or the divisions successively to take any named distance and *Halt*—The directing flank of the leading company will be considered as the first point in the intended oblique line, and the particular direction meant to be given it, will be established by the placing of another point (a.) beyond and

before it.—A ſerjeant from each company will run out, and poſt himſelf as a pivot, lining on the firſt given points, and on each other, each alſo taking a diſtance from the one before him equal to the front of the diviſion which precedes him.

The rear companies are then, by the oblique march to their directing hands, or by facing and filing ſhould, ſituation require it, marched to their reſpective ſerjeants, and then *Halt Front*, ſquare to their former front.—The line is formed by the WHEEL back of each company on thoſe eſtabliſhed flanks—Or—When the companies are thus placed, the whole may be put in MARCH to the front, and preſerving the relative ſituations HALT and WHEEL back into line, at ſome more advanced point.

ECHELLON CHANGES BY SUB-DIVISIONS OR SECTIONS.

In the Echellon movements by companies, in order to gain ground to a flank, and afterwards to make a parallel, or an advanced oblique formation.—If the wheel up of each is conſiderable, it becomes the more difficult to preſerve the true diſtances during the march, and thereby to reſume the parallel line when ſo ordered, by the wheel back of companies.—In many caſes therefore ſuch changes, if not limited to fixed points, may be made by the ſub-diviſions or ſections wheeling up three paces only, ſo that each can afterwards move forward independant and juſtly, by remaining cloſe behind each other; and this may be done either when the battalion is halted, or when it is in motion, without the intervention of advanced ſerjeants, or diſplacing of officers, but merely by the regular wheel up of the diviſion with its outward man, who takes the three ordered paces.

S. 164,

S. 164. *If the Battalion is halted.*

CAUTION. 1. The CAUTION is given that the ſub-diviſions or ſections will wheel 3 paces to right or left.—At the
Q. MARCH. word MARCH, the outward man of each ſub-diviſion or ſection, whatever its ſtrength may be, wheels up 3 paces, and each company officer
Halt, Dreſs. gives the word *Halt, Dreſs*, to the ſtanding hand: in this ſituation the diviſions will ſtand parallel, or nearly ſo, and the front rank of each will
Fig. 8. A. be immediately behind the line of the rear rank of its preceding one:
Fig. 88. A. the 3 file of colours and center ſerjeants will wheel up as a ſeparate diviſion parallel to the others.

2. After the wheel of ſub-diviſions, the company officer will be on the pivot flank of his firſt one, and his ſerjeant on that of his ſecomd.—After the wheel of ſections to the right, the company officer and his ſerjeant will be on the right of the two leading ones, and an officer or ſerjeant from the rear on the right of the others.—After the wheel of ſections to the left, the leading ones will have an officer or ſerjeant from the rear on their left, and the company officer and his ſerjeant will be on the left of the two laſt ones.

3. A ſub-

3. A ſub-diviſion of 9 files that wheels up in this manner 3 paces, will ſtand at an angle of about 30 degrees with its former front, and if it is only formed 2 deep, and wheels up two paces, it will ſtand at an angle of 20 degrees.—A ſection of 5 files that wheels up 3 paces will ſtand at an angle of about 35 degrees.—According to the ſtrength therefore of the diviſion that thus wheels will be the degree of obliquity taken from the former poſition.

MARCH.

Fig. 88.

At the general word MARCH, the whole move on in their then perpendicular direction, as ſpecified in the Echellon movements, taking care that the ſtep is equal, and that each keeps up to its preceding diviſion, but by no means throws forward its advanced flank, which would neceſſarily derange the others; and ſhould one diviſion commit this fault, the ſucceeding one ought not to be influenced by it, but ſtill maintain its equal ſtep, and thereby avoid a ſhake or hurry in the rear, by which diſtances and direction would be loſt.

HALT. The whole halt.

WHEEL BACK INTO LINE.

QUICK MARCH.

4. *If the battalion is to reſume its former front* B. C. it inſtantly receives the CAUTION to wheel back into line—At the word MARCH, each diviſion wheels back 3 paces, thereby joining the next ſtanding pivot,

Halt, Dreſs.

Fig. 88.

pivot, and immediately receives the word *Halt, Dreſs*, from the leader of each company wherever he may be (always on the right, to which, if neceſſary, he will have ſhifted), to whom the whole of his company then turn their eyes, and are by him corrected on the ſtanding pivot.

HALT.

FORM BATTALION FORWARD. MARCH.

Halt, Dreſs.

5. After the HALT: *If the battalion is to form forward*, in the direction B. D. of its leading diviſion, or that that diviſion is previouſly wheeled up into a more advanced one.—The company leaders will ſhift, if neceſſary, each to the flank of his leading diviſion, if in ſections.—A CAUTION is given to form battalion, and at the word MARCH, the whole except the head diviſion move on, and each pivot leader of the front rank, by a ſmall and gradual turn forward of his inward ſhoulder, if neceſſary, conducts his diviſion at an equal pace towards the point of each in the new line, and when within 5 or 6 paces of it, by the bringing forward the outward ſhoulders the diviſion arrives in it on a parallel front, where each receives from the company leader (who is then on the moving flank of his company) a word *Halt, Dreſs*, and to which each ſucceſſively conforms as he repeats it for them; in this manner the ſub-diviſions or ſections will ſucceſſively arrive in line, obſerving the circumſtances of movement already

ready prefcribed. When the line is formed, company leaders, if neceffary, fhift to the right of their companies.

The whole of thefe movements depends on the accuracy of ftep, and the gradual and infenfible turn of the fhoulders of the pivot leaders, to which the divifions conform, and by which they are conducted on the march, and into the new line.

S. 165. *If the Battalion is in March in Line.*

Fig. 88.

SUB-DIVISIONS, 3 PACES, RIGHT, WHEEL.

1. The intention being to gain ground to the flank by the Echellon march of fub-divifions or fections, and without making a previous halt.—On the word fub-divifions or fections 3 paces to the right or left wheel; the pivot men of the front rank of each divifion, turning in a fmall degree to the pivot hand, mark the time for 3 paces, during which the named divifions wheel in ordinary time on thofe men, and the 3 files of the colours and center ferjeants alfo wheel up as a divifion, parallel to the others.—At the 4th pace,

FORWARD.

pace, and at the word FORWARD, the whole move on direct to the front which each division has acquired, the position of leaders being as already described.

WHEEL BACK INTO LINE.

FORWARD.

HALT.

2. Where sufficient ground has been taken to the flank, on the word WHEEL BACK INTO LINE, the pivot men mark the time for 3 paces, turning back in a small degree to their original front, and the sub-divisions or sections instantly wheel backward into line, without altering the time, and at the 4th pace the whole step on, having received the word FORWARD, till the battalion is ordered to halt.

HALT.

FORM LINE FORWARD.

HALT.

3. When sufficient ground has been taken to a flank, and *that a forward formation of the line is to be made*, the head division halts in its then position, or is wheeled up 2 or 3 paces more and halted. The rest of the battalion receives a CAUTION to form on the head division, they continue their march, and, conforming to the directions given in *S.* 164, by the gradual alteration of their shoulders, arrive successively in line.

When the battalion is in two ranks only, two paces will be substituted instead of three in all those movements, and no unnecessary time need be lost, or pauses made, betwixt the execution of these several words of command.

4. In

4. In these cases the original wheel up of divisions being limited to the 2 or 3 paces which disengages them from each other, the inclination of their flank movement, or of their change of front or position, alters with the strength of such division.– If therefore a small degree is to be taken, they may so wheel by companies, if a greater by sub-divisions, and if a greater still by sections, the close adherence of each to each ensuring (if well executed) the regularity of the battalion during the operation, which is made on the principles, though without all the formality, of the exact Echellon, and may be required and used in many situations of movement, and changes of position.

MARCH OF THE BATTALION IN LINE.

General attentions.

The MARCH of the battalion in LINE, either to front or rear, being the most important and most difficult of all movements, every exertion of the commanding officer, and every attention of officers and men, become peculiarly necessary to attain this end. The great and indispensible requisites of this operation are, the direction of the march being perpendicular to the front of the battalion as then standing; the perfect squareness of the shoulders and body of each individual; the light touch of the files; the accurate

accurate equality of cadence, and length of ſtep, given by the advanced ſerjeants, whom the battalion, in every reſpect, covers, follows, and complies with. If theſe are not obſerved, its direction will be loſt; opening, cloſing, floating, will take place, and diſorder will ariſe, in whatever line it makes a part of, at a time when the remedy is ſo difficult, and perfect order ſo eſſential.

It is evident therefore that every individual ſhould be well prepared for this operation.—But more particularly to enſure its correctneſs, two or more directing SERJEANTS muſt be trained to this peculiar object, on whoſe exactneſs of cadence, ſtep, ſquareneſs of body, and preciſion of movement, dependance can be had.—The habitual poſt of the two directing ſerjeants in the battalion is to be, in the center of the battalion, and betwixt the colours, one of them in the front rank, and one in the rear, that they thereby may be ready to move out when the battalion is to march, one other alſo covers them in the ſupernumerary rank.

Directing Serjeants.

Fig. 11.

At all times when the battalion is formed in line, and halted, the inſtant attention of the front directing ſerjeant is (after being aſſured that he himſelf is perfectly and ſquarely placed in the rank) by caſting his eyes down the center of his body, from the junction of his two heels, and by repeated trials to take up and prolong a line perpendicular to himſelf and to the battalion; for this purpoſe he is by no means to begin with looking out for a diſtant object, but if ſuch by chance does preſent itſelf in the prolongation of the line extending from his own perſon, he may remark it: he is therefore rather to obſerve and take up any accidental ſmall point on the ground, within 100 or 150 paces, intermediate ones cannot

be

be wanting, nor the renewal of ſuch as he afterwards ſucceſſively approaches to in his march.—In this manner he is prepared, under the future correction of the commanding officer, to conduct the march.

S. 166. *When the Battalion halted, and correctly dreſſed, is to advance in Line.*

Fig. 82. The commanding officer having previouſly placed himſelf 10 or 12 paces behind the exact line of the directing ſerjeant, will, if ſuch file could be depended on, as ſtanding truly perpendicular to the battalion, and great care muſt be taken to place it ſo, remark the line of its prolongation, and thereby aſcertain the direction in which it ſhould march; but as ſuch preciſion cannot be relied on, he will, from his own eye, readineſs, and having the ſquare of the battalion before him, make ſuch correction, and obſerve ſuch object a little to the right or left, as may appear to him the true one; and in doing this he will not at once look out for a diſtant object, but will hit on it, by prolonging the line from the perſon of the directing ſerjeant to the front: or he will order the covering ſerjeant to run out 20 paces, and will place him in the line in which he thinks the

the battalion ought to advance.—The directing ſerjeant then takes his direction along the line which paſſes from himſelf betwixt the heels of the advanced ſerjeant, and remarking his object, preſerves ſuch line in advancing.

THE BATTALION WILL ADVANCE.

The commanding officer will give the CAUTION, the battalion will advance, on which the front directing ſerjeant moves out 6 accurate and exact paces in ordinary time, and halts; the 2 other ſerjeants who were behind him move up on each ſide of him, and an officer from the rear replaces in the front rank the leading ſerjeant. The center ſerjeant in moving out marches and halts on his own obſerved points, and the two other ſerjeants dreſs and ſquare themſelves exactly by him—If the commanding officer is ſatisfied that the center ſerjeant has moved out in the true direction he will acquaint him ſo, if he thinks he has ſwerved to right or left he will direct him to bring up the ſhoulder on that ſide the ſmalleſt degree poſſible, in order thereby to change his direction, and take new points on the ground, towards the oppoſite hand.

MARCH.

The line of direction being thus aſcertained, at the word MARCH, the whole battalion in-

 ſtantly

ſtantly ſtep off, and without turning the head, eyes are glanced towards the colours in the front rank: the replacing officer betwixt the colours preſerves, during the movement, his exact diſtance of 6 paces from the advanced ſerjeant, and is the guide of the battalion.—The center advanced ſerjeant is anſwerable for the direction, and the equal cadence and length of ſtep; to theſe objects he alone attends, while the other two, ſcrupulouſly conforming to his poſition, maintain their parallelism to the front of the battalion, and thereby preſent an object to which it ought to move ſquare: they are to allow no other conſiderations to diſtract their attention, and will notice and conform to the direction of the commander only, and if any ſmall alteration in their poſition is ordered, it muſt be gradually and coolly made.

Officers.

1. OFFICERS in the ranks can only be obſervant of their own perſonal exactneſs of march, they are then but individuals equally attentive as their men; they are not to attempt to dreſs their companies by looking along or calling to them, otherwiſe they will certainly err themſelves, and derange the march: ſuch care belongs to the officers in the rear; and well-trained ſoldiers themſelves know the remedy that is required, and will gradually apply it.

Colours.

2. The weight of the COLOURS, and the embarraſſment attending them in windy weather, rough ground, &c. make it impoſſible at any time to depend on, the officer carrying them for a true direction, or an equal and cadenced ſtep: but they muſt always be

be carried uniformly and upright, thereby to facilitate the moving and dreffing of the line.

3. The MEN are on no account to turn their heads to the colours, but to preferve them, and confequently their fhoulders fquare to the front, and to depend principally on the light touch of the elbow, together with an occafional glance of the eye, and the accuracy of ftep for their dreffing.—If heads were permitted to be turned to the center, the inward fhoulder would be brought forward, the wings would remain behind, the files would open, and diforder would arife in endeavouring ftill to adhere to the center, and to counteract what would be occafioned by the fault of principle, and not of the foldier. Soldiers.

4. Inattention, or an inequality of STEP, will produce a waving in the march of the battalion; but the communication of this may often be ftopped, by the exertions of the major and adjutant, who feeing where and why it originates, will immediately apprize the companies in fault, and coolly caution the others that are well in their true line not to participate of the error.——A flank of the battalion may at firft fight appear to be behind, when the fault really arifes from a central divifion bulging out, and thereby preventing the flank from being feen. Step.

5. Whatever ALTERATION is to be made in any part of the battalion muft be made gradually, and not hurried, that the confequent fhake it occafions may be as little felt as poffible; the mounted officers only can point out, and correct fuch faults.

6. The FLANKS on no account are to be kept back; much lefs are they to be advanced before the center; in either cafe the diftance of files muft be loft, and the battalion will not be covering its true Flanks.

 ground:

ground: the convex or concave ſhape of the battalion will ſhew this to the commander, and the beginning of each inaccuracy is to be ſtudiouſly corrected by neceſſary cautions.—The officer who is on each flank of the battalion, being unconfined by the ranks, and not liable to be influenced by any floating that does ariſe, may, by preſerving an accurate ſtep, and having a general attention to the colours and to the proper line which the battalion ſhould be in with reſpect to the advanced directors, very much aſſiſt in preſerving the flanks in their due poſition: When he obſerves that a line drawn from himſelf through the center of the battalion paſſes conſiderably before the other flank, he may conclude himſelf too much retired; when ſuch line paſſes behind that flank, he may conclude himſelf too much advanced, he will therefore regulate himſelf accordingly.—When the battalion in march is convex, the wings muſt gain the ſtraight line of the center, by bringing up the outward ſhoulder; and it muſt be ſtrongly impreſſed on the ſoldier, that in all ſituations of movement, by advancing or keeping back the ſhoulder as ordered, the moſt defective dreſſing will be gradually and ſmoothly remedied, whereas ſudden jerks and quick alterations break the line and produce diſorder.

Rear ranks. 7. The REAR RANKS which were cloſed up before the march began, muſt move at the lock ſtep, and not be allowed to open during the march; the correct movement of the battalion depends much on their cloſe order.

Arms carried. 8. Supported ARMS are allowed when halted or when in column, as not interfering with its exactneſs; but in the march in line, arms are always to be carried SHOULDERED, as otherwiſe it is in vain to look for a juſt line, or true diſtances of files, and

4 ſloven-

ſlovenlineſs, inaccuracy, and diſorder, muſt take place at a time when the moſt perfect preciſion is required.

Change of direction on the center in march.

Fig. 82. D.E.

9. The COMMANDER muſt himſelf attend to the correct movement of the directing ſerjeant; if during the firſt 20 paces he perceives ſteadineſs, and no floating in the battalion, he may be aſſured that the line of march is juſtly taken; but the contrary will be the caſe if (the parallel front of the battalion being preſerved) he ſees the files on one flank opening and on the other crowding; he will inſtantly apply the remedy by ordering the directing ſerjeant — RIGHT SHOULDER FORWARD, if the opening is on the left of the battalion, or, LEFT SHOULDER FORWARD, if the opening is on the right: At this command the ſerjeant making an almoſt imperceptible change of his poſition (by bringing up one ſhoulder) and of his points, and the colours in the battalion when they have advanced 6 paces to his ground conforming to it, the whole will by degrees gain a new direction.—Every change of direction made in this manner muſt produce a kind of wheel of the battalion on its centre, one wing gradually giving back, and the other as gradually advancing, an attention which the commander muſt take care is obſerved.

HALT.

The battalion marching in perfect order, when it arrives at its ground receives the word HALT; the ſtep which is then taking is finiſhed, and the whole halt; eyes remain turned towards the center, the whole remain ſteadied, and the commanding officer places himſelf cloſe to the rear rank, in order to ſee whether the battalion is ſufficiently dreſſed, and in a direction perfectly parallel to the one it quitted.—No prepa-

 ratory

ratory caution is to be uſed before halting, ſuch caution ſuppoſes and encourages incorrectneſs and creates uncertainty: at the word halt, the whole halt firmly.

When the battalion is advancing in line for any conſiderable diſtance, or moving up in parade, the muſic may be allowed at intervals to play for a few ſeconds only, and the drums in two diviſions to roll, but it is the wind inſtruments only which play, the large drum, or any other inſtrument whatever which marks time by the ſtroke, is not to be permitted.— When the line is retiring, muſic are never to play.

S. 167. *When the Battalion is to Dreſs.*

It is evident that in the DRESSING of a ſingle battalion after the halt, whatever correction is neceſſary, muſt be made by advancing or retiring the flanks, and not by moving the centre, which having been the guide in the march, has juſtly ſtopped at the point where it has arrived.

DRESS.

1. When the commanding officer gives the word DRESS, the company officer on the left of the colours inſtantly dreſſes the 6 or 8 files to the right of the colour in a proper parallel direction, the two wings immediately conform to the center, and afterwards receive the word EYES, FRONT.

EYES, FRONT.

2. Should

Fig. 82. G.

2. Should the commander require a more exact dressing than the above gives, he will order one colour to advance one step, and FACE to the left, also the second company officer on the left of the colour to advance one step, and FACE to the left; then the flank company officers to advance, and to face to the center; then each other company officer instantly to COVER those at their due distances, and face to the center; then the officers of the left wing to FACE about, so as the whole stand fronted to the left.—Then

BATTALION, RIGHT, DRESS. MARCH.

Halt, Dress.

battalion, RIGHT, DRESS, on which the companies MARCH up to their respective officers, who are favourably posted for halting and dressing each his company; after which, and without loss of time, the officers front into line.

3. It must be observed in this mode of dressing, whether it is taken from the center, or from a flank, that platoon officers, who originally face to the left, take distances equal to the front of their own platoons from the officer before them; but such as face to the right must take distances from the officer before them equal to the front of the platoon, which in line is on the right of them.—When circumstances allow the dressing to begin from the left, an advantage arises, that the officers do all originally face to the left.

 4. A small

Change of direction on the flank halted.

4. A ſmall change of direction may in this manner be given to the battalion when halted, either on a flank or central company.—To the *Front* by advancing and placing the officers.—To the *Rear* by the covering ſerjeants in the ſame manner giving the ground, the men facing about, lining with the ſerjeants; then fronting; and the officers replacing the ſerjeants. But a flank is never in ſuch caſe ſuppoſed to move above 20 or 30 paces.

The battalion may alſo be occaſionally dreſſed in the following correct manner.—One of the colours is advanced ſome paces.—An under officer on one flank of the battalion is placed in a determined line.—An under officer on the other flank lines himſelf with the laſt placed one, and the colour.—The two center grand diviſions are moved up to the colour, and dreſſed to each flank.—The wing grand diviſions then move up, and the grenadier and light company in ſame manner. This dreſſing may ſoon be made if done at the ordinary pace, without hurry, and that the chiefs of diviſions aligne in the prolongation of the baſe.

S. 168. *When the Battalion is to retire.*

It is evident that it ought to be previoufly dreffed with the fame correctnefs, as when it was to advance, and the fame care in afcertaining the direction of its march muft be taken.—Therefore before the retreat is to begin, an officer will have placed himfelf 30 paces in the rear, fo as to ftand perpendicular to the front directing ferjeant, and of courfe he will be in the line, or nearly fo, of the directing ferjeants.

THE BATTALION WILL RETIRE.	At the word, the BATTALION WILL RETIRE, the directing ferjeants face about. The fame center ferjeant that directs to the front, directs alfo to the rear; he moves on in the line of the advanced officer, 6 paces beyond the rear rank and halts; and the other ferjeants are on each fide of him.
RIGHT ABOUT FACE.	At the word RIGHT ABOUT FACE, the whole face; and the fupernumerary officer who replaces the directing ferjeant, moves up into the leading rank; a mounted field officer paffes through to the rear, and the directing ferjeant in the interim prolongs his line, and takes his objects betwixt the feet of the pofted officer.

Immediately

MARCH. — Immediately after facing about, the word MARCH is given and the whole proceed in the ſame manner, and with the ſame attentions as in moving to the front; the directing ſerjeant conducting on his points, under the correction of the field officer who is 10 paces behind the battalion.

HALT, FRONT. — When the battalion is to front: it receives the word HALT, FRONT, and immediately halts and fronts, the ſerjeants, &c. reſuming their proper ſtations; it is then dreſſed if neceſſary in the manner already preſcribed.

Attentions in retiring. 1. In marching to the REAR, the battalion muſt cover its proper extent of ground.—The rear rank men muſt avoid cloſing their files more than uſual, otherwiſe the front men who are in general larger, will be crowded in their rank.—Muſic, drums, ſupernumerary officers, &c. will take care to march with exactneſs, not to interrupt, but rather to aſſiſt the battalion.—The battalion is not to FACE about, till every thing is prepared for its inſtant MARCH, and its HALT, FRONT, is one command: when retiring therefore it never unneceſſarily ſtands faced to the rear.

Wing platoons. 2. When the WING companies of a battalion are wheeled backward and faced outward in order to cover its flank.—Such companies if during the retreat they march in file, will take particular care to move in the ſame direction as the battalion and not Fig. 83. A. B. impede its progreſs. When the battalion fronts, thoſe companies will face outward, and always recollecting that their immediate buſineſs is to cover the flanks,

flanks, they will regulate their poſition and movements by thoſe of the battalion.—When marching they move in file perpendicular to the line of the battalion: when fronted they make an angle with it of about 45°. according to the apparent circumſtances that threaten.

S. 169. *Changes of the Battalion when in Movement.*

The battalion when marching in front, muſt be much accuſtomed to ſtep out, to ſtep ſhort, to oblique to right or left, and to change direction by a ſmall and gradual turn of the ſhoulder: all theſe muſt be executed with the utmoſt preciſion, in perfect cadence, and upon decided words of command, as they are operations wanted and eſſential to the perfect movements of a conſiderable line.

RIGHT OBLIQUE, FORWARD. — 1. Obliquing a battalion in a parallel direction to gain a flank, or to preſerve a given appui, is a difficult, but neceſſary operation. —Obliquing a battalion when in line with others for a few paces in order to correct an interval, muſt be done without eyes being turned from the center.

 2. Change

LEFT SHOULDER FORWARD.

RIGHT SHOULDER FORWARD.

2. Change of direction on the march begins with the leading serjeant, and is conformed to by the center and by the battalion, when they arrive at the point where the serjeant began it; it must be made almost insensibly, and gradually in proportion to the extent of the body, that is thus to change direction, for without incurring disorder, the outward flank can only get into line by lengthening its step which requires time.

3. Obliquing the battalion by the wheeling up of sections or sub-divisions is performed as in S. 164. and is used where a considerable space is to be gone over.

4. Change of front and position, by sub-divisions or sections, is performed as in S. 165.

RIGHT, WHEEL.

FORWARD.
HALT.

5. If the battalion halted or in movement is required to make a wheel on a flank, with an uniform front, such wheel can seldom be wanted to exceed the 8th or 6th of the circle. On the word, to the right wheel, the right marks the time, the center takes a half step, and the left a full step, the intermediate parts of the battalion conforming accordingly: and at the word forward, or halt, the whole are directed by the center; this movement requires every aid that can be given by the mounted and supernumerary officers.

6. If

6. If the battalion in movement is required to make a ſmall change of front on the center.—The center will mark the time, a very ſmall turn of the ſhoulders will be gradually made, the wings will conform, one advancing, the other giving back, till at the word forward the whole move on as before.

Wheeling up or throwing back the whole or part of the battalion.

7. A battalion halted may change its poſition forward to a certain degree, or throw back a flank, in a manner that gives great protection during the movement if made near an enemy.—At the word MARCH, the right company, or left, *wheels* into the new direction, and the reſt of the line at the ſame time moves on in front, and by command OBLIQUES to join the left of the firſt company.—When the right flank of the ſecond company has arrived there, it alſo *wheels* up into the new direction, and the reſt of the line continues to oblique to join its left flank. In this manner the line preſerves its uniform front, obliques, and gradually enters the new poſition as its leading company arrives in it, at the ſame time that it covers and protects the flanks of the formed companies.—By the ſame means alſo will a battalion throw back any number of its diviſions in preſence of an enemy: The angular company will give the direction, the reſt FACE ABOUT, MARCH, OBLIQUE, ſucceſſively *wheel* into it, and *front*.—The outward company of all which may be formed as a flank to the battalion, will march in file, and cover the flank. Before this movement commences, officers muſt ſhift to the inward flank of their companies, in order to dreſs them on the given diſtant point after the wheel, in the ſame manner as in the Echellon movements, of the nature of which this partakes.

Fig. 87.

Fig. 89.

PASSAGE

PASSAGE OF OBSTACLE WHEN THE BATTALION IS MARCHING IN LINE.

Paſſage of the obſtacle in cloſe column, either in advancing or retiring.

When the battalion is marching either to front or rear, the partial obſtacles that preſent themſelves will be paſſed by the formation, march, and deployment of the cloſe column.—Such parts as are not interrupted, ſtill move on in front; ſuch parts as are interrupted, double by diviſions as ordered, behind an adjoining flank or flanks, and in this manner follow in cloſe column in their natural order. As the ground opens they ſucceſſively deploy, and again perfect the line.—The columns are always behind the line, and march cloſed up.—The formed part of the battalion, whether advancing or retiring, continues to move on at the ordinary pace, and in proportion as the obſtacles increaſe or diminiſh, will the formed or column parts of the line increaſe or diminiſh.

Fig. 84.

General attentions.

In general the columns formed will be of ſub-diviſions: the firſt ſub-diviſion that is obliged to double will be directed to which hand by the commander of the battalion, the others as they ſucceſſively double will in conſequence place themſelves behind it, and behind each other, and the hand firſt doubled to, will be that which preſents the opening moſt favourable to the ſubſequent march, and formation, and which the commanding officer will always hold in view, and order accordingly.—The interrupted body will double to one or both flanks, according to circumſtances, and the order it receives. Obſtacles that impede a flank will occaſion a ſingle column to be formed from the flank towards the center. Obſtacles that impede the center or a central part of a wing,

a wing, will if confiderable occafion two columns to be formed, from the center towards the flanks.—The columns will follow a flank of fuch part of the line as is not impeded; and either in doubling into column, or extending into line, the rear divifions will conform to the movements of their then leading one.—No part lefs than the front of the column doubles or moves up, and when half or more of a battalion muft be thrown into one column, it will be ordered by companies.

S. 170. *When the Obftacle prefents a confiderable Front parallel to the Line.*

Fig. 84. C. D.

CAUTION.

HALT, FACE.

Q. MARCH.

Halt, Front.
Q. March.
Ordinary.

The divifions impeded muft all at once double behind fuch one or two other divifions as clear them of the obftacle.—In this cafe a timely caution is given by the commanding officer to the part of the line that is to pafs the obftacle; the neceffary portion of the line, when within a few paces of where it is impeded, is ordered to HALT, FACE, either to one or both flanks, and the heads of the fub-divifions (except the leading one) difengage to the rear. The whole MARCH quick, and each as it arrives fquare and clofe behind the preceding one, *halts*, *fronts*, and *marches* forward, taking up the *ordinary* ftep when clofed up. The leaders of the fub-divifions of the column remain on the flank next the opening which they are to fill up.

S. 171.

S. 171. When a Point of the Obſtacle is preſented to the Line, and that it continues to increaſe.

Fig. 84. G. CAUTION. HALT. FACE. Q. MARCH. *Halt, Front.* *Q. March.* *Ordinary.*	The doubling is then ſucceſſive, beginning with that diviſion which is firſt interrupted, and continuing as it becomes neceſſary till the column can advance in clear ground.—In this caſe the ſub-diviſion impeded will be ordered by the commanding officer to HALT, FACE, MARCH—*Halt, Front, March,* by its own leader, and follow the one adjoining to it, which makes the flank of that formed part of the line.—When this laſt ſub-diviſion alſo becomes impeded, theſe two perform the above operation, and place themſelves in column behind the next ſub-diviſion.—The three, the four, &c. ſucceſſively repeat it as the narrowing of the ground requires (and upon the words given by the commanding officer, or by the officer of the then head diviſion, ſhould the commanding officer be otherwiſe employed) until the obſtacle ceaſes to interrupt the march of a formed part of the line.

S. 172. *When the Obſtacle is paſſed, or diminiſhes, and that the Line encreaſes.*

HALT.
FACE.
Q. MARCH.
Halt, Front
Q. March.
Ordinary.

If it is of ſuch a nature as to permit of the complete extenſion at once into line: the whole column performs it by the commands and deployments of the cloſe column on the front diviſion which then makes part of the line.

Fig. 84. T. H.

But when the obſtacle diminiſhes by degrees only; then the diviſions of the column muſt come up into line ſucceſſively as the ground opens, and the remainder of the column muſt in diminiſhing ſhift towards the obſtacle, in the ſame manner as it before ſhifted from it in encreaſing. When the ſecond ſub-diviſion of the column can therefore come up; its leader or the commanding or mounted officer gives the word for his own and the following ſub-diviſions HALT, FACE, MARCH, and when oppoſite to his ground HALT, FRONT, MARCH, and when he is up in line ORDINARY.—It depends on the opening of the ground whether more than one diviſion of the column can come into line at the ſame flank movement.—This operation is repeated by the mounted officer, or the leader of what is then the ſecond ſub-diviſion, as often as ſuch ſubdiviſion ſees that it is

HALT.
FACE.
Q. MARCH.
Halt, Front.
Q. March.
Ordinary.

is proper to move up into line, and is conformed to by the rear of the column till all its diviſions have ſucceſſively arrived in the line.

The commanding officer himſelf or a mounted officer muſt as much as poſſible order the doubling of the diviſions, and their moving up into line; and particularly when any conſiderable part of the battalion is obliged to double into one column.—But if there are ſeveral doublings in the battalion at the ſame time, he can only direct the moſt conſiderable one, and the others muſt be ordered by their ſeveral head officers.

General attentions.

Theſe movements are all made on parallel and perpendicular, not oblique lines, and the progreſs which the formed part of the battalion is conſtantly making, ſhews that no time muſt be loſt either in giving or executing the words of command, and that the diviſions of the column muſt be well cloſed up, and its movements quick, firm, but in perfect order.---The diviſions of the column form ſucceſſively into line, as the obſtacle permits them, or again double ſo as to conform to the ſhape of the ground, which muſt always be filled up.---The march of the uninterrupted part of the line muſt be ſteady and exact, and the openings made muſt be carefully preſerved from the center while it continues to direct, or from whatever point does ſo while the center is impeded; the columns depend on the formed parts of the battalion to which they are attached, and are independent of each other.---When the center is interrupted, a named company officer of the line will be ordered to advance 6 paces to regulate the whole till the directing ſerjeant of the center can again reſume his true and original line, which he by advancing ſingly from the column will endeavour to do as ſoon as poſſible.

Whether

Whether the battalion is advancing or retiring the ſame operations take place, and the columns in both caſes are behind the formed part of the line: in retiring the rear rank leads.

S. 173. *When the Battalion fires, during the Paſſage of an Obſtacle.*

HALT.	If the battalion in *advancing* ſhould be obliged to fire; it HALTS in the ſituation it is then in, executes ſuch firings as are ordered, and again advances.
HALT, FRONT. RIGHT ABOUT FACE. MARCH.	If the battalion in retiring is preſſed by the enemy, the part in line will HALT, FRONT, the part in column will move on till the laſt diviſion arrives in line and will then HALT, FRONT. The firing that is ordered, will be executed; and when it is again proper to retire, the whole will FACE about, the part in line will MARCH, and the columns will alſo be put in MARCH when the line arrives at their head.

S. 174. *When a Battalion is advancing it may also under certain Circumstances pass such Obstacles as present themselves by File.*

In such case the interrupted division or divisions will be ordered to FACE either to one or both flanks, and closely to follow in file such parts of the battalion as are not broken: the filing will encrease as the obstacle encreases, but as it diminishes, file after file will successively and quickly move up to their proper place till the whole are again formed; and during this operation, the leading file will always remain attached to the flank of the part in line.—The same rules that direct the doubling in column, direct the doubling by files; when a sub-division files it will be from the flank only; when a company files it may be from both flanks; and if a larger front than 2 companies is interrupted, it then doubles into column.—Where the obstacles are of small extent, but frequently occurring, this mode is the readiest that can be applied in advancing: but in retiring it cannot be used, if the enemy are at hand to press upon the battalion; and therefore the passing by column is to be looked upon as the general method.

Fig. 84. I, K, L, M.

In plate 10. fig. 84.—The position A. is a battalion and part of two others formed in line, they advance meeting with obstacles.---B, three sub-divisions of the left of the battalion have doubled.---C, one sub-division of the right has also doubled.—D. a central obstacle now occurring three sub-divisions of the right and one of the center, also two of the left, and

and three of the center have doubled.---E. one of the right has moved into line, and one, more of its center has doubled, alſo one of its left has moved into line.---F. the whole diviſions have moved into line, except three ſub-diviſions of the left which are in column.---G. the three ſub-diviſions of the left remain in column, and two on the right and three at the center have again doubled.—H. the whole having arrived on open ground have moved up into line, except one ſub-diviſion on the right.

If the battalion A. inſtead of advancing in front, is ſuppoſed to have faced to the right about and to be retreating; the poſitions of the diviſions in column will be the ſame as above, they performing their movements, with their rear ranks in front.

The poſitions I, K, L, M, ſhew the paſſage of obſtacles, by the impeded parts filing round them.—At N, the line is again completed.—O, P, ſhew the paſſage of a wood, by the filing of companies.——At Q. all obſtacles are paſſed; and the ſituation of part of the adjoining battalions alſo appears during this march.

S. 175. *When the Battalion moving in Line, paſſes a Wood, or other impediment, to front or rear, by the filing of Companies.*

PASS TO THE FRONT.

Right, turn.

Fig. 84. O. P.
Fig. 85. A.

1. *If to paſs a wood or other embarraſſed ground to the front*; when it is found neceſſary to break the battalion, the commander will order it to PASS from the right of companies to the front, on which each company officer orders his company *right turn*, wheels out his leading file, and paſſes on as faſt as the difficulty of the ground will allow him, endeavouring to preſerve a relative diſtance from the left as being the head of the column, or from the other flank if particularly ſo ordered.— Each officer on arriving at the farther edge of the wood will *halt* his company, and remain till the others are come up, and till the whole are ordered to march out, and form in battalion; which will generally be done by ſtanding in open column the left in front, dreſſing pivot flanks,

flanks, and wheeling up into line.—Or, if the companies form ſeparately on the edge of the wood, they will march out and join in the battalion.

PASS COMPANIES BY FILES.
Left turn.
Q. March.
HALT, FRONT,

2. *If to paſs to the rear.*—When' the battalion retiring in line, arrives at the point where it muſt break, it is ordered to, PASS, COMPANIES by FILES.—The leader of each gives his word *left turn*, and proceeds as above directed; the heads of files are regulated from the left; and after quitting the wood, at an ordered diſtance, they HALT FRONT into column, the right in front, and WHEEL to the left, up into line.—The line then again retreats if neceſſary.

Fig. 91.

PASS COMPANIES BY FILES.
Right Face.
Q. March.

3. *If a battalion in firſt line paſſes through a ſecond which advances and relieves it.*---The ſecond marches up to within 12 paces of the firſt and halts.---The battalion of the firſt then receives the word PASS COMPANIES BY FILES.---Each leader gives his word *Right face, Q. march*, and proceeds at a quick pace to the rear through the ſecond line, which, whenever the head

T 4 of

of a divifion prefents itfelf, throws back as many files as are neceffary to give it paffage, and again immediately moves up; the retiring files who are regulated by their left, at any ordered diftance HALT FRONT into column the right in front, and WHEEL FRONT into column the right in front, and WHEEL up to the left into line.

HALT FRONT.

4. *When the fecond line does not advance to relieve the firft*---The battalion of the firft line retires, and when it comes within 12 paces of the fecond, it then receives the word to PASS COMPANIES BY FILES; each leader orders to the *left turn*, and proceeds as before directed; the column when halted and fronted, having its right in front.

PASS COMPANIES BY FILES.
Left turn.
Q. March.
&c.

Circumftances may require, that the companies fhould PASS from their proper left inftead of the right, in which cafe the leaders will fhift and conduct fuch left, until the line is formed, when they will again refume their proper places.

5. *If a battalion in fecond line paffes by files to the front, through a firft line.*---It will advance within 12 paces of the firft one.---On the command to PASS to the front by files; each company leader will give his word

word *right turn*, and move on at the head of his file in ordinary time, through the firft line, which makes openings for it.—When the rear of the files has paffed; the battalion will be ordered HALT FRONT in column the left in front—WHEEL into line—and may then advance.

There may be occafions, where inftead of halting in column, and wheeling into line.—The battalion may be ordered to form by the rear files moving up to their front leaders; but the line thereby obtained will generally be a very inaccurate one, and not fit to advance without a halt and a previous dreffing.

6. *If a battalion in fecond line advances and paffes in front, through a firft line which it is to relieve.*—The firft line will at the neceffary inftant wheel back by companies into open column, the advancing battalion will pafs through it, fuch files as are interrupted following to the right, moving up as foon as they can, and the battalion thus reformed moving on to its object,——or,—if a battalion advancing in front meets with a line retiring, this laft will throw itfelf into open column, and halt, till the advancing battalion has paffed,——or,—if a line is retiring in files, it will in fame manner halt fquare when it meets the advancing line, allow it to pafs and then proceed.

S. 176.

S. 176. *When the Battalion retires by alternate Companies in two Lines.*

Words of command		Explanation
RIGHT COMPANIES. HALT, FRONT.		The right companies stand fast, or, halt front if the battalion is already in motion.—The left retire in line a given number of paces and halt, front: on which the right companies retire in the same manner beyond the left, and halt, front.—In this way they proceed till the battalion is ordered to form.—One colour remains on the flank of its proper company in each line and directs its movement, for which purpose a serjeant will advance 6 paces before it, during the march. Distances are preserved from that colour.—The eyes of each line remain turned to their colour, and officers are on the inward flanks of their companies.—
LEFT COMPANIES HALT, FRONT.		
RIHGT COMPANIES.	ABOUT FACE. MARCH. HALT, FRONT.	
LEFT COMPANIES.	ABOUT FACE. MARCH. HALT, FRONT.	

companies.---Each line has a command.---The light infantry may be divided in the intervals of the firſt line, retire with it, and change to the other line, whenever it becomes the advanced one: in this ſituation they cover the retreat and may occaſionally fire.

S. 177. *When the Battalion advances or retires by half Battalions, and fires.*

LEFT WING { HALT. MARCH. RIGHT WING. { HALT. READY. PRESENT. FIRE. MARCH. LEFT WING---HALT. READY. &c.	1. If the battalion is in march and advancing.---The left wing HALTS when ordered, and the right one continues to move on 15 paces, at which inſtant the word MARCH being given to the left wing, the right at the ſame time is ordered to HALT, to fire and load, and the left marches paſt them, till the right wing being loaded and ſhouldered receives the word MARCH, the other wing HALTS, fires, &c. and thus they alternately proceed.

2. If

RIGHT WING, HALT FRONT. LEFT WING, HALT FRONT. RIGHT WING. { READY. PRESENT. FIRE. ABOUT FACE. MARCH. LEFT WING, HALT FRONT. LEFT WING, { READY. PRESENT. FIRE. &c.	2. If the battalion is in march, and retiring. ---The right wing is ordered to HALT, FRONT, and when the left one has gained 15 paces, and receives the word HALT, FRONT, the right wing is inſtantly ordered to FIRE, to load, to FACE about, and MARCH 15 paces beyond the left, where it receives the word HALT, FRONT, on which the left wing gets that of FIRE, and in the ſame manner alternately proceeds, every due diſpatch being made in reloading.

There muſt be a commander for each half battalion.

One colour remains on the inward flank of each half battalion, to which the men continue to look, by which they move, and before which a directing ſerjeant advances 6 paces.

The make ready, preſent, fire of the advanced wing is inſtantly to ſucceed the march of the other advancing wing, or, the halt front, of the retiring wing.

In the half battalion firing, advancing and retreating.---If formed two deep, both ranks will fire ſtanding. If formed three deep, the front, and center rank fire ſtanding, and the rear rank remains ſhouldered in reserve.

S. 178.

S. 178. *When the Battalion forms a Square, or Oblong.*

CAUTION.	1. The 4th, 5th, 6th battalion companies ſtand faſt (in conſequence of the explanatory caution that is given preparatory to forming the ſquare),
FORM SQUARE. COMPANIES INWARDS FACE.	the reſt of the battalion faces inwards, and diſengages the heads of companies to the rear; the colours and their coverers fall back, the 4th company cloſing to the left to fill up their place.
Q. MARCH.	They march quick.--The 7th, 8th, and light companies place themſelves in open column behind the 6th, the 3d, 2d, and 1ſt place themſelves in open column behind the 4th, the grenadiers place themſelves between the light company and the 1ſt.---
Halt, Front. Fig. 92.	When theſe three laſt companies cloſe up to the 8th and 2d, and face about (having each firſt countermarched, if it is thought neceſſary to have the front rank outermoſt) at the ſame time that the 7th, 8th, and the 3d, 2d, wheel outwards, the oblong ſtands complete, or, the ſquare may be a perfect one, if it is compoſed of the eight battalion

lion companies only; the grenadier and light company being in reserve in the rear, ready to be applied according to circumstances.

CAUTION. FORM SQUARE. COMPANIES BACKWARD WHEEL. Q. MARCH. *Halt, Dress.* RIGHT ABOUT FACE. MARCH. *Halt, Front.* *Dress.* Fig. 90.	2. *The square or oblong may be formed by the 4th, 5th, 6th companies standing fast.*---The rest of the battalion wheels backward, each company the 8th of the circle, on its inward flank.---They faceabout. They march to complete the square as above; each wheeling when it comes to its ground, and then fronting; and in this manner will the proper front rank of the rear face be outward.---The commanding officer, colours, and their coverers, drums, &c. &c. are within the square, as also the battalion guns, which are shifted to wherever they are most necessary.---The square is composed of the front, the right, the left, the rear faces: the front face is that on which the square originally forms.
THE SQUARE WILL MARCH, TO FRONT, REAR, RIGHT, OR LEFT.	3. *When the square or oblong is to march by any one face.*---The side which is to lead is announced; the colours move up behind its center; the opposite side faces about; and the two flank sides wheel up by sub-

MARCH.

Fig. 93. A.

HALT.
FRONT, SQUARE.

ſub-diviſions, ſo as to ſtand each in open column.—The ſquare marches, two ſides in line, and by their center; and two ſides in open column, which cover, and dreſs to their inward flanks on which they wheeled up, carefully preſerving their diſtances.—The ſquare halts, and when ordered to front ſquare, the ſub-diviſions in column immediately wheel back, and form their ſides, and the ſide which faced about again faces outwards.

THE SQUARE WILL MARCH, BY THE RIGHT FRONT ANGLE.

Fig. 93. B.

MARCH.

4. *When the perfect ſquare is to march by one of its angles in the direction of its diagonal.* A CAUTION is given by which angle, and the two ſides that form it ſtand faſt, while the other two ſides face about.—The whole then by ſubdiviſions wheel up one eighth of the circle, 2 ſides to the right, and 2 ſides to the left, and are thus parallel to each other, and perpendicular to the direction in which they are to move, the pivot flanks being in this manner placed on the ſides of the ſquare.—Each ſide being thus in Echellon, and the colours behind the leading angle, the whole are put in march, carefully preſerving the diſtances they wheeled at,

and

HALT.
FRONT, SQUARE.

and from the flanks to which they wheeled——After the HALT, and at the word FRONT SQUARE, the whole wheel back into ſquare, and the two ſides that require it face about outward.—When the oblong marches by one of its angles, its ſub-diviſions perform the ſame operation of wheeling up, each the eighth of the circle; but its direction of march will not be in the diagonal of the oblong, but in that of a ſquare, viz. of the line which equally biſects the right angle.

Fig. 93. C. *The angular march of the ſquare or oblong* may be made in any other direction to the right or left of the above one; but in ſuch caſe the ſub-diviſions of two oppoſite ſides will have to wheel up more than the eighth of the circle, and thoſe of the other two ſides proportionally leſs, in order to ſtand as before perpendicular to the new direction, the ſum of theſe two wheels will always amount to that of a quarter circle, and their difference will vary as the new line departs more or leſs from the equal biſecting line; this will be known by firſt wheeling up the two angular diviſions till they ſtand perpendicular with the new direction, and then ordering all the others to conform accordingly.—This movement is very difficult in the execution, and cannot be made with any degree of accuracy unleſs the perpendicular ſituation of the diviſions is correctly attained, and carefully preſerved.

5. *The ſquare halted changes direction on any one of its files*; by that file wheeling up on

2

on one of its flank divisions, which is previously placed; its two flank sides at the same time make a similar gradual change to comply with the alteration; and the rear side marches in file to complete the square.

6. *When the square in march halts and fronts, to repulse an expected attack of cavalry.*—The front rank kneels, and present their bayonets sloped; the two rear ranks fire standing; either companies by ranks successively, or companies (independant of each other) by sub-divisions, one firing when the other has loaded; or companies by files as ordered; the front rank remaining as a reserve.—Should the battalion be formed only two deep, the front rank will remain kneeled, and the rear rank will fire by files.

7. *The front and rear faces of the square or oblong in march are increased,* by repeatedly adding to their flanks 4 divisions from the column sides which are thereby shortened, and oblique outwards to cover; they are decreased by the 4 outward divisions of the front and rear repeatedly becoming part of the flank sides, which are thereby lengthened, and oblique inwards to cover.—Thus, either advancing or retiring, the whole may diminish to two sub-divisions in front, or, if necessary, to a double file marched off from the center of the leading face.

8. *When the square or oblong forms in line on one of its sides,* or on any named company which is placed in a given direction.—

Fig.

Fig. 94. Each other company will be WHEELED up more or lefs, till it ftands with its inward flank perpendicular to its point in the new line, to which the whole will MARCH and enter fucceffively, the outward companies taking care not to impede the inner ones, which muft form before them. According to the part of the battalion formed on, will this operation be more or lefs complex.— Or, this may be done by the facing and filing of each divifion from its inward flank, to its point in the new line where it will form up.

9. *If, from open column of march, it is neceffary to make front in oblong 3 deep to both flanks.*—The leading divifion *Halts*, the other divifions of the column will take half diftance and *Halt*: the half divifions will WHEEL outwards, *Halt*, and form an oblong, clofed in the rear by the laft divifion. When column of march is to be refumed, the half divifions will WHEEL backwards into column, and the battalion will proceed.—If there are feveral battalions in the column, each will form as above, clofed by its own front and rear divifions; and the diftances betwixt battalions will alfo be clofed.

10. *If a battalion is marching in open ground, where it is neceffary to be prepared againft the attack of cavalry.*—It may move in column of companies at quarter diftance, one named company in the center being ordered to keep an additional diftance of 2 files; in this fhape the battalion is eafily managed, or directed upon any point.—

Fig.

Fig. 95. When the column HALTS, and is ordered TO FORM THE SQUARE, the firſt company falls back to the ſecond; the laſt company cloſes up to the one before it: The whole companies make an interval of 2 paces in their center, by their ſub-diviſions taking each one pace to the flanks; 2 officers with their ſerjeants place themſelves in each of the front and rear intervals; 2 officers with their ſerjeants alſo take poſt in rear of each flank of the company from which the additional interval has been kept; and a ſerjeant takes the place of each flank front rank man of the firſt diviſion, and of each flank rear rank man of the laſt diviſion; all other officers, ſerjeants, the 4 diſplaced men, &c. &c. aſſemble in the center of the companies which are to form the flank faces. Thoſe laſt named companies having been told off each in 4 ſections, WHEEL up by ſections, 2 to the right, and 2 to the left; (the 2 rear companies at the ſame time cloſing up, and facing outwards) the inner

Fig. 95. ſections then CLOSE forward to their front ones, which dreſs up with the extremities of the front and rear companies, and 4 files on each flank of the ſecond companies, from the front and from the rear, FACE outwards.—The whole thus ſtand faced outwards and formed 6 deep, with 2 officers and their ſerjeants in the middle of each face to command it; all the other officers as well as ſerjeants, &c. are in the void ſpace in the center, and the files of the officers in the faces may be completed from ſerjeants, &c. in the interior, in ſuch manner as the commandant may direct.—The mounted field officers muſt paſs into the

center of the column, by the rear face, if neceſſary, opening from its center 2 paces, and again cloſing in.

When ordered, the 2 firſt ranks all round the column will kneel and ſlope their bayonets, the 2 next ranks will fire ſtanding, and all the others will remain in reſerve; the file coverers behind each officer of the ſides will give back, and enable him to ſtand in the 3d rank.—*When the march is to be reſumed*, the ſections that cloſed up fall back to their diſtance; the ſections then WHEEL back into column; the officers, ſerjeants, &c. take their places on the flanks; and when the column is again put in motion, the companies that cloſed ſucceſſively take their proper diſtance.

Unleſs the companies are above 16 file they cannot be divided into 4 ſections; if therefore they are under 16 file, and told off in 3 ſections, the column will march at the diſtance of a ſection; and in forming the ſquare, the 2 outward ſections will wheel up, but the 3d one will ſtand faſt, and afterwards, by dividing itſelf to right and left, will form a 4th rank to the others; in reſuming column the outward ſections wheel back, and the rear of the center ſections eaſily recover their places; as to all other circumſtances they remain the ſame.

BY

BY the foregoing REGULATIONS, and the RULES they lay down, is every battalion to direct its practice; to regulate the parades, guards, and field exercise; to disuse whatever is contrary and repugnant to them; and in no instance to deviate from the principles they contain, for, to their strict observance is every one enjoined.—Among many other essential circumstances they pointedly require hurry and disunion to be avoided; order and mutual effort to be held sacred; ranks and files closed; music to be disused in instruction, march, or manœuvre; uniformity of position; equality of step in length and cadence; accuracy of distances; precision of file marching; movements and formations made on determined points and lines, and mounted officers ready and accustomed to give such points and lines; alertness and intelligence in officers; energy and decision in their commands; modes of execution fully determined, and never varying.—Thus, previous explanation being no longer necessary, prompt performance in all situations may immediately follow the ordered measures of the commander.

D. D.

End of THIRD PART.

INSPECTION OR REVIEW

OF A

BATTALION OF INFANTRY.

THE battalion marches to its ground in open column of companies or half companies;—marches into the alignement by companies; forms in close order;—takes open order as directed in the formation of the battalion.

In this disposition, and the whole dressed to the right, the general is awaited.—He is to be received with the compliments due to his rank, as set forth in the regulation of military honours.—The colonel and lieutenant-colonel on this occasion are on foot at the head of the colours; at all other times they are to remain on horseback.

A camp colour is to be originally placed 80 or 100 paces in front of the center of the battalion, where

where the general is ſuppoſed to take his ſtation; but although he may chuſe to quit that poſition, ſtill the colour is to be conſidered as the point to work upon, and to which all movements and formations are relative.

Receiving the General.

PRESENT ARMS. — When the reviewing general preſents himſelf before the center, and is 50 or 60 paces diſtant, he will be received with a general ſalute.—The men preſent arms, and the officers ſalute, ſo as to drop their ſwords with the laſt motion of preſented arms: the muſic will play, and all the drums will beat.—The colours only ſalute ſuch perſons as from their rank, and by regulation, are entitled to that honour.

SHOULDER ARMS. — The men ſhoulder, and the officers recover their ſwords with the laſt motion.

The general then goes towards the right, the whole remaining perfectly ſteady without paying any farther compliment while he paſſes along the front of the battalion, and without facing when he goes along the flank and rear.—While the general is going round the battalion, the muſic will play, and the

 drums

drums beat; they will ceafe as foon as the general has returned to the right flank of the battalion.

REAR RANKS TAKE CLOSE ORDER. MARCH.	While the general is proceeding to place himfelf in the front, this command will be given, and the colonel and lieutenant-colonel will then mount on horfeback, in the rear of the center.

Marching paſt in Ordinary Time.

COMPANIES ON YOUR LEFT, BACKWARD, WHEEL. MARCH. *Halt, Dreſs.* MARCH.	The battalion will break into column of companies the right in front.—The column is put in motion, pioneers and mufic having been previoufly ordered to the head of it,—Points will be afcertained by the adjutant for the exact and feveral wheelings of the divifions, fo that their right flanks in marching paſt ſhall be only 4 paces diftant from the camp colour, where it is fuppofed the general places himfelf to receive the falute.
Halt, left, wheel. Halt, Dreſs. March.	The feveral companies wheel fucceffively at the firft angle of the ground.

Halt, Left, Wheel. *Halt, Dreſs.* *March.* *Eyes, Right.*	The companies ſucceſſively make this wheel at the ſecond angle of the ground, and which brings them on the line on which they paſs the general.—Each leader of a company, when it has advanced 6 paces from the wheeling point, changes quickly by the rear to the right flank of his company, and as ſoon as he has placed himſelf on that flank, he will order eyes to be turned to the right.
Rear Ranks take Open Order.	The leading company, and each other ſucceſſively, as it arrives within 50 paces of the general, opens its ranks, at which time the officers move into the front of the company, and the leading one is replaced on the right flank by his ſerjeant.

In *marching paſt* the reviewing general, the colonel is to be at the head of the grenadier company, with the major a little behind him on his left.—The muſic are in two ranks 6 paces before the colonel: The pioneers are in two ranks 6 paces before the muſic, having a corporal at their head to lead them: The drummers and fifers are on the left flank of their reſpective companies.

The lieutenant-colonel is to be in the rear; but, in the abſence of the colonel, the lieutenant-colonel will of courſe ſupply his place.—The adjutant is in the rear, behind, and on the left of the lieutenant-colonel.

The

The colours are 3 paces behind the 4th battalion company, covered by their ſerjeants.—Staff officers do not march paſt.

In marching paſt at open ranks, the ſerjeant who is on the right flank of the company is reſponſible for the proper wheeling diſtance being kept from the front rank of the company preceding him.--The leading officer muſt invariably preſerve his diſtance of 3 paces before the right of the company, and not derange its march, the rank of officers dreſs to him, eyes are turned a little to the right, and they divide the ground in order to cover the front of the company: If there is only one officer with the company, he is towards the right of it.—Supernumerary ſerjeants are 3 paces in the rear of their ſeveral diviſions.

The muſic begin to play, juſt after the leading company has made the ſecond wheel, they continue to march on, and do not draw up oppoſite the general.—They as well as the pioneers regulate their march by the head of the column.

The officers, when they arrive at their proper diſtance from the general, muſt prepare to ſalute ſucceſſively by companies, when within 6 paces of him, and recover their ſwords when 10 paces paſt him, without in the leaſt altering the rate of march, or impeding the front rank of companies.—The commanding officer, when he has ſaluted at the head of the battalion, places himſelf near the general, and remains there till the rear has marched paſt.—The drummers give a roll, each when the officers of his own company ſalute.

The

Rear Ranks, take Close Order.	The officers commanding companies will each successively, when he has passed the general by 30 paces, close his rear ranks, and at this time each individual of the company resumes the post which he held when the column was first put in motion.
Halt, Left, Wheel. Halt, Dress. March.	The several companies wheel successively when opposite the ground where the left of the regiment stood, their leading officers having shifted to their left flank when the ranks closed.
HALT. SUPPORT ARMS.	When the leading company is near to where the left of the battalion stood, the whole halt, music ceases, arms may be supported, and the quick march may instantly commence.

Marching past in Quick Time.

QUICK MARCH.	The whole march off in quick time.—No music.
Halt, Left, Wheel. Halt, Dress.	The column makes three several wheels, viz. at the point where the left of the battalion first stood: at the point where the first wheel was

Quick, March. — was made: and at the point where the ſecond wheel was made, which places it on the line of paſſing the general.

CARRY ARMS. — Before the leading company has made the laſt wheel arms are carried.—When it has completed that wheel the muſic begin to play.

In *marching paſt* the general in quick time, and at cloſe order, officers do not ſalute or pay any compliment, but are attentive to preſerve the proper intervals betwixt their companies.—The leading officer of each company ſhifts to its right by its rear in the ſame manner as in the ordinary march, 6 paces after the laſt wheel, which brings him on the line with the general, and when he has paſſed the general 30 paces he will reſume his proper pivot flank.—The ſupernumerary officers and ſerjeants march in a rank, in rear of the companies, at one pace from the rear rank, and officers ſwords are carried againſt the right ſhoulder, and ſteady.

The colonel, lieutenant-colonel, major, and adjutant, are in the ſame places as in marching paſt in ordinary time; as alſo drummers, pioneers, and muſic; which laſt will commence playing juſt after they have wheeled into the line of paſſing, and will continue to march on at the head of the column.

Eyes, Left. — The ſeveral companies 30 paces after paſſing will ſucceſſively dreſs to the left the proper pivot flank, and the officers will ſhift to that flank.

The

Halt, Left, Wheel. *Halt, Dreſs.* *March.*	The companies ſucceſſively wheel, when oppoſite to the ground where the left of the battalion ſtood.
HALT. MARCH.	When the head of the column approaches to the left of the ground on which it originally received the general, the muſic will ceaſe, and the column will be halted in order to take up the ordinary march, for the purpoſe of moving on an alignement.
Halt, Left, Wheel. *Halt, Dreſs.* *March.*	When at the point on the left of the alignement.

Forming in Line.

HALT. LEFT, WHEEL INTO LINE. MARCH. *Halt, Dreſs.*	The column prolongs the alignement, till arrived at the point where its head or right is to be placed.—It receives the word halt; pivots are inſtantly corrected, if neceſſary; it wheels up into line, and the pioneers and muſic go to their poſts behind the center.
WITH CARTRIDGE; PRIME, AND LOAD.	The battalion being now formed at cloſe order, the commanding officer will order it to prime and load with cartridge, and will proceed with *Movements* and *Manœuvres.*

But,

But, should the performance of the Manual and Platoon Exercise be required,

The commanding officer, after the line has formed, gives a CAUTION that the manual and platoon exercise will be performed, and goes to the rear of the battalion.—The major advances to the front of the battalion, OPENS RANKS; UNFIXES BAYONETS; SHOULDERS ARMS; makes the officers and colours TAKE THEIR POST OF EXERCISE in the rear, by facing to the right; MARCHING through the several intervals occupied by the serjeants; and, when 3 paces beyond the rear rank, they halt, and then receive the word FRONT: The commanding officer, lieutenant-colonel, adjutant, pioneers, music, supernumerary serjeants, drummers, fifers, are at their posts in the rear, as when the battalion is formed at close order.

Manual Exercise.

The major proceeds with the manual as directed by regulation, observing that the front rank only comes down to the last position of the charge bayonets, the others remain ported.—The serjeants who preserve in the front rank the places of the platoon officers, remain there steady during the whole of the manual, except that they charge their pikes at the same time as the bayonets.

Platoon

Platoon Exercise.

The major closes rear ranks for the platoon exercise, and platoon officers, and serjeants, and colours, and every other individual, take their places, as when the battalion is at close order.

The major proceeds with the platoon exercise, and the several ranks make ready each according to its situation of front, center, and rear; after firing they load and shoulder agreeable to the regulation.

The manual and platoon exercise being finished, the major goes to his post, and the commanding officer of the battalion proceeds to PRIME AND LOAD with cartridge, and then to commence the ordered movements.

Movements.

Movements.

Plate 16.

		Sect.	
1. *On a rear division.*	*Form close column of companies behind grenadiers* -	137	The column marches quick 20 or 30 paces to the right, and without halting begins to deploy into line on the rear division.--The commanding officer of the battalion gives the word for each division to halt, front.
	Form close column of two companies	147	
	Face and march to the right -	150	
	Deploy on the rear division -	149	
2. *On a front division.*	*Form close column of companies, in front of the left*	137	The column marches quick 30 or 40 paces to the left, and without halting begins to deploy on the front division.—The commanding officer of the battalion gives the word for each division to halt, front.
	Form close column of two companies	147	
	Face and march to the left -	150	
	Deploy on the front division -	148	
3. *On a central division.*	*Form close column of companies, on a central company, either flank in front, and facing to the rear* -	138	The close column is formed facing to the rear.—It then countermarches each division so as to return to the proper front.—In the central deployment by companies, the company officers give the words to halt, front.
	Countermarch of each division in close column	143	
	Deploy on any central named company -	146	

4. *Wheel*

		Sect.	
4. *Change of position in open column.*	*Wheel back into open column of companies, the right in front*	108	The battalion thus, at an intermediate point, enters an alignement on which it is to form.
	March forward 30 or 40 paces.	111	
	Enter an oblique line (the 3 or 4 leading companies) by wheeling successively to the left, a half wheel *Halt.*	126	
	The rear companies file into column	126	
	Wheel up into line	118	
5. *Wing thrown back.*	*The left company is wheeled back, till parallel to the original position.—The rest of the companies wheel into echellon.—March to the rear.—Form on the left company.*	160	The whole companies wheel back at the same time; the left company twice the number of paces that the others do. Should it be necessary for the subsequent movements, the line may retire 50 or 60 paces, and then fro[nt].

		Sect.	
6. Countermarch and change of position.	*Wheel back into open column, the right in front*	108	After the countermarch by files, the column stands with its left in front.—The column closes in quick time—The square is formed, and close column re-formed as in part 4th, S. 189.—The column opens out in quick time from its rear division, and halts.—The countermarch by companies from the rear to the front is in ordinary time. When the line is formed, it is then considerably to the general's right, and with its rear to him.
	Countermarch companies by files	100	
	March in column 30 or 40 paces.—Head division halts close to the head of column	138	
	Form square, and prepare for firing	189	
	Re-form in close column		
	Open out to open column from the rear, and halt	153	
	Change head of column, by the countermarch of companies, from the rear to the front	101	
	Column moves on and halts		
	Wheel up into line		
7.	*Countermarch by files on the center of the battalion*	98	This brings back the battalion to its original front.

8. For

		Sect.	
8. *March in open column.*	*Form open column behind the left company, which is put in march when the 3d company has taken its place in column* -	121	The companies that are filing incline towards the head of the column: successively front at their wheeling distances, ascertained as usual by their serjeants: take up the ordinary step, and follow in open column.
	The right sub-divisions double -	87	When the column is marching steadily, the whole sub-divisions double at once by one command, and again move up at another.
	The right sub-divisions move up -	88	
	The column halts, and pivots are corrected -		
	Wheel up into line		
9. *Echellon change of position.*	*Wheel back into open column, the left in front* -	109	The line is thus formed oblique from open column, on a central company, by the echellon march.
	The third company is wheeled back the 8th of the circle, and each of the others 3-16ths of the circle -	158	
	Form line on the third company, by the echellon march	159	
10 *nge of position.*	*The left company is wheeled up the 8th of the circle, and each of the others 1-16th—Form line by the echellon march* -	159	The line thus changes position to the front, on the left company, by the echellon march.

			Sect.	
11	*Change of position.*	*The battalion faces to the right.—Marches in file (50 or 60 paces)*	94	The column of companies is formed by the rear men of each moving up quick to the left of their leaders, and of each other: the officers move to pivot flanks, and pivots are instantly corrected.—The column halts when the colours are opposite to the general.
		Forms column of companies, on the march -	95	
		Halts.—Wheels up into line, except the light company, which files quickly to the right, and forms behind the colours.		
12	*Retreat in line.*	*The battalion retires (50 paces)—Halts, fronts—Fires twice by companies from center to flanks*	168	The light company, being previously subdivided and prepared, acts in the retreat by alternate companies as directed in S. 176, and when the line halts and fronts, it resumes its place on the left.
		Retire by alternate companies in two lines, (250 paces) each retreat about 50 paces -	176	
		Form line		
		Retire in line (50 paces) Halt, front.		

		Sect.	
13 *March to a flank in echellon.*	*Companies make a half wheel to the right*	154	At the word wheel back into line (the pivot flanks mark time and the divisions wheel back in ordinary time —At the proper instant when the battalion is formed, the commander gives his word forward, for the whole to advance by the colours, and to correct any irregularity that there may be in the battalion.
	March in echellon (250 paces)	155	
	Wheel back on the march into parallel line	156	
	Forward (100 paces).—Halt		
	Fire thrice by companies from flanks to center.		

If the battalion has hitherto been formed two deep, it will now form three deep if its, companies are of ten files each.

14 *Movements in the square.*	*Form square.* *March the square by the left angle of the front face (50 paces) — Halt — Form square.* *March square by the left face—Halt —Form square.* *March square by the rear face (60 paces) — Halt — Form square.* *Fire in square by companies.* *Form the line.*	178	The square is formed by the echellon march of companies. After the march by the left face, the square is formed when it is opposite to the general. The firings in square are as expressed in S. 178. The line is formed by the echellon wheel up, and march of companies. When the order is given to form line, the light company marches quickly, and places itself two deep and in two divisions 10, or 12 paces behind the two center companies.

Retire

			Sect.	
15	*Retiring, and filing to the rear.*	*Retire in line (100 paces)*	168	When the line has paſſed the light company 20 paces, that company extends to cover the center of the battalion, and follows at 50 or 60 paces diſtance; and when the column halts to form the light company paſſes quickly through and beyond it.
		File by companies from the proper right — Halt in open column the right in front	175	The companies file quick to the rear.
		Wheel up into line.		The battalions form line at the extremity of its ground; the light company 30 paces in its rear.
16	*Filing—Advancing—and changing to the front.*	*Advance in line 50 paces.*	166	Before the line advances, the light company quickly forms extended 30 paces before the center, and preſerves that diſtance in advancing.
		File from the right of companies to the front (50 paces)—Halt in open column the left in front—Wheel up into line	178	When the column halts to form, the light company paſſes quick to the rear, and aſſembles half of it behind each flank, and moves relatively with the flank companies till after the charge of bayonets.
		Advance in line (50 paces)		
		Advance by alternate half battalions, and fire four times		The alternate half battalions fire the 2 firſt ranks ſtanding.

Form

		Sect.	
16	*Form line——Advance (50 paces)—Fire volley.* *Advance (20 paces)—Fire volley——Charge bayonets (50 paces)—Halt—Load.*		After the volley, bayonets are ported, the battalion advances firm by the center at the quick step, and at the word Halt, the front rank comes down to the charging position — The word Prime and Load is then given, and the light company issuing from behind the flanks, pursue, return, and assemble and join on the left of the battalion.
17 *Retiring in line.*	*Retire in line (100 paces)* *Retire by alternate half battalions—Fire four times* *Retire in line, 100 paces or more—Halt, front.*	177	The whole battalion being assembled. The alternate half battalions, fire the two front ranks standing.
18 *Advancing in line.*	*Advance in line (100 paces) Halt—Fire twice, oblique to right and left* *Advance in line (100 paces) — Halt — Fire two volleys —— Port arms at the last one, and half cock* *Open ranks—Advance within 50 paces — Halt — General salute*	166	In the obliquing, and in the volleys the front rank kneels. The music may occasionally play, and drums roll, while the line advances. The music will play, when advancing at open ranks.

Such other *Manœuvres*, as may at the time be required.

The number of paces mentioned in the ſeveral movements are not poſitively preſcribed, but are ſuppoſed to be nearly ſuch as will give the intended relative ſituations.—If the ground allows the marches to the rear and front to be longer, it will be ſo much the better.

No improper pauſes ſhould be made betwixt the connected parts of the ſame movement.—The detached points neceſſary in formation ſhould be timeouſly prepared and given.

The advance of the battalion ſhould inſtantly ſucceed the forming of the line; and when it arrives and halts at the point where it is to fire, the firing ought inſtantly to commence at the word Halt; for, the battalion having been apprized, during the march, of the nature of the required firing, no improper delay need therefore be made.

The greateſt care is to be taken by the officers and under-officers in the rear (whoſe principal attention this is), that the rear ranks are well locked up in the firings, and that in loading they do not fall back.

The line, if retiring, halts fronts, at one command and inſtantly begins firing, having been apprized during its movement of the nature of the firing.

The pauſe betwixt each of the firing words *Make Ready*, *Preſent*, *Fire*, is the ſame as the ordinary time, viz. the 75th part of a minute, and no other pauſe is to be made betwixt the words.

In firing by *Companies by wings*.—Each wing carries on its fire independant, without regard to the other wing, whether it fires from the center to the flanks, or from the flanks to the center.—If there are

are five companies in the wing, two paufes will be made betwixt the *fire* of each, and the *make ready* of the fucceeding one.—If there are four companies in the wing, three paufes will be made betwixt the *fire* of each, and the *make ready* of the fucceeding one.—This will allow fufficient time for the firft company to have again loaded, and fhouldered at the time the laft company fires, and will eftablifh proper intervals between each.

In firing by *Grand Divifions*, three paufes will be made betwixt the *fire* of each divifion, and the *make ready* of the fucceeding one.

In firing by *Wings*, one wing will make ready the inftant the other is fhouldering.—The commanding officer of the battalion fires the wings.

In firing companies by *Files* each company fires independant.—When the right file prefents, the next makes ready, and fo on.—After the firft fire, each man as he loads comes to a recover, and the file again fires without waiting for any other; the rear rank men are to have their eyes on their front rank men, and be guided by, and prefent with, them.

In general, after the march in front, and halt of the battalion, company or platoon firing fhould begin from the center, and not from the flanks.—In other cafes, and in fucceffive formations, it may begin from whatever divifion firft arrives, and halts on its ground.

The intention of fixing upon fome of the moft effential infantry movements, and thus ordering them to be executed by each battalion when feen feparately, is, that thereby the *Infpecting General* may be enabled to report the more minutely and comparatively, on the performance by each battalion, of the great leading points of movement.

H.

He will therefore, among other circumftances, particularly obferve and fpecify—*Whether or not*

The original formation of the battalion is according to order.

The marches are made with accuracy, at the required times and length of ftep, and on fuch objects as are given.

The proper diftances in column and echellon are at all times preferved.

The wheelings are made juft, and in the manner prefcribed.

The formations into line are made true, without falfe openings, or neceffity of correction.

The officers are alert in their changes of fituation, exact in their own perfonal movements, and loud, decided, and pointed, in their words of command.

The march in line is uniformly fteady, without floating, opening, or clofing.

The march in file, clofe, firm, and without lengthening out.

The officers and under-officers give the aids required of them with due quicknefs and precifion.

Hurry and unneceffary delay in the movements are equally avoided.

In the firings, the loading is quick, the levelling juft, the officers animated and exact in their commands.

When two or more battalions are infpected, or exercifed together, they will be formed in one line with the ordered interval.—They will receive the *General*, march paft, and may perform the fame identical movements as are before prefcribed for the fingle battalion, obferving the additional directions that are given for thofe of the line.

When

When the line of two or more battalions is *Marching* paſt in column of companies, it muſt occupy no greater extent of ground than when it originally wheeled into column.—The order is never to be broken, or lengthened out.—No particular battalion, or the artillery, are allowed to increaſe diſtances for their own partial appearance.—The battalion guns will march two a-breaſt.—Ranks are one pace aſunder, or if ordered to be open, the diſtances between companies and battalions will not be increaſed.—The muſic of each battalion in paſſing may play, but will continue to march on.—The ordinary march is preſerved.—Officers do not ſalute marching, but when particularly ordered.

When a conſiderable body of infantry, or when infantry and cavalry are united, and to act in *corps*, their combined operations, ſuch as movements in columns, echellons, or lines, their formations, the conduct of attacks, and retreats, &c. depending on numbers, and circumſtances of ground, or ſituation, can only be determined and applied according to the views of the commander; but the great principles of movement laid down for the line will ſtill direct, and the detail of execution will remain invariable, being compounded of thoſe preſcribed for the *Company*, *Battalion*, and the *Line*.

LIGHT INFANTRY.

GENERAL ATTENTIONS.

Diſtances of files.

WHEN the LIGHT INFANTRY companies are in line with their battalions they are to form and act in every reſpect as a company of the battalion, but when not in line they may looſen their files to ſix inches.

Open order.

Open order is to be two feet between each file.— The neceſſity of increaſing this diſtance muſt depend on circumſtances, and be regulated at the moment by the commanding officer.

Manner of extending.

The files may be extended from right, left, or center, according to circumſtances; in executing it each front rank man muſt carefully take his diſtance from the man next to him, on that ſide from which the extenſion is made: the rear rank men conform to the movement of their file leaders.

When

When the company is not in extended order, all firing is to be by fingle men, each firing as quick as he can, confiftent with loading properly: the firing to begin from the flank, or from the point firft formed.

In firing in extended order, it is to be a ftanding rule, that the two men of the fame file are never unloaded together, for which purpofe, as foon as the front rank man has fired he is to flip round the left of the rear rank man, who will make a fhort pace forward, and put himfelf in the others place, whom he is to protect while loading.—When the firft man returns his ramrod he will give his comrade the word *ready*, after which, and not before, he may fire and immediately change places as before. Firing.

The fame method of firing to be obferved when advancing or retreating, which muft always be in *ordinary time* (efpecially if cannon are ordered to the front with the light companies, which may often be the cafe).—Particular attention muft be paid to ceafe firing on the firft word, or fignal for that purpofe. Advancing and retreating. To ceafe firing.

All movements of the light companies, except when firing, advancing, or retreating, are to be in *quick time*. Movements in quick time.

The light companies are never to run unlefs particularly directed, and in that cafe they are only to run at that pace in which they can preferve their order; and it is to be a rule that the two men of the fame file never feparate on any account whatever. Never to run unlefs ordered.

The utmoft care to be taken to avoid confufion, which too much hurry, even in the fmalleft bodies, will Avoid confufion.

will certainly occaſion.—The intermixture of files can never be allowed of.

File movements. Though all movements ſhould be made in *front* as much as poſſible, yet, from the nature of thoſe on light infantry, and the ground they are more particularly liable to traverſe, file movements may frequently be neceſſary.—All ſuch to be made from one of the flanks by previouſly facing to it, and the files to looſen, ſo as to march perfectly at eaſe, but not more.

Forming to the front. In forming, the inverſion of files or of ranks is not to be attended to if time is thereby gained.—*Forming to the front* to be done by the file moving briſkly up to the right or left of the leading file as ordered.

Right or left. *Forming to right* or *left.*—The leading file will halt and face as directed, as will the ſucceeding ones as they come up to their proper diſtances.

Forward to right or left. *Forming forward to right* or *left.*—The leading file halts and faces as directed; the ſucceeding files lead round the rear, and form to the ſame front as the leading file has done, and at their proper diſtances.

Marching to rear and forming. When marching to the rear by files, and to *form to the front.*—The leading file will halt and front, the ſucceeding files will go round the rear of the leading file, and form on the right or left of it as directed.—*Forming to right* or *left*, or *forward to right* or *left* is done in the ſame manner as when marching to the front.

Signals, &c. for officers commanding. All *ſignals*, *words of command*, and *directions*, are for the officer commanding the company or diviſion, who gives the neceſſary orders in conſequence.

The

The *neceſſary ſignals* will be previouſly ſettled, and as they will be very few and ſimple, the officers and non-commiſſioned officers are expected to be maſters of them. Signals.

The officer commanding the company will be on the right, covered by a ſerjeant.—The next on the left alſo covered by a ſerjeant.—The youngeſt officer in the rear.—In extended order the poſt of the officers and ſerjeants is always in the rear equally divided, where they muſt pay particular attention that the men preſerve their order, and that they level, fire, and load coolly and properly; they muſt likewiſe be attentive to direct them to the ſuppoſed object of attack. Poſt of officers.

In marching by files the officer commanding leads; by diviſions each officer leads one.—The ſupernumerary officer, if there be one, is in both caſes, with the officer commanding, ready to obey any directions he may receive from him.

When a light company or detachment is ordered to take poſt on any particular ſpot, it is to be the buſineſs of the officer commanding it to take the beſt advantage of the ground, obſerving that he muſt never diſperſe his company; but if it ſhould be neceſſary to make ſmall detachments from it, he muſt ſtill preſerve a part of his company or detachment as a reſerve on which thoſe detachments may fall back; and this is to be a general rule in all caſes where the ſtrength of the party is ſufficient to allow of making detachments from it. Taking poſt.

The officers muſt alſo ſee that in ſituations of defence the men cover themſelves with trees, walls, large ſtones, or whatever may preſent itſelf.—In firing from behind trees, large ſtones, &c. they are to preſent to the right of the object which covers them; To cover in ſituations of defence.

them; and in changing places with the other man of the file, after firing, they will ſtep back, and to the left, ſo that the rear rank man may ſtep forward without being expoſed.

Arms how carried.

The arms of light infantry in general will be carried ſloped, and with the bayonets fixed.—Flanking and advanced parties however, or parties in particular ſituations, may carry them trailed, and without bayonets, for the purpoſe of taking cooler and more deliberate aim.

Light Infantry attached to reſpective Regiments when in Line.

Diviſions cover 2d and 7th companies.

Poſt of commanding officer.

The light company will be poſted in the rear of its reſpective regiment, divided in two diviſions; that on the right will be in the rear of the ſecond company, that on the left in the rear of the ſeventh company, and they will at all times obſerve the diſtance of thirty paces.—The captain, or officer commanding, will be with the right diviſion.

Line breaks into column.

When the line breaks into column, if the light companies receive no particular directions for covering either the front or flanks of the column, they will wheel as the companies of the battalion do, and conform themſelves exactly to the movements of the ſecond and ſeventh companies, ſo as at all times to be in their proper places.

If

If the line forms a close column, and the light companies receive no particular directions, they are to form by companies, and close up in the rear of the column, in the same manner as their respective battalions.

Line forms close column.

When the column deploys into line, the light companies will face each, as its battalion does, file with it in the rear; and when the battalion forms in the line, will take its proper post in divisions behind the second and seventh companies.

Line deploys.

If the light companies are ordered to cover the line to the front, either by word or signal, the divisions will move to the front, from their inner flanks, round the flanks of the battalions; and when at the distance of fifty paces, the leading flanks will wheel towards each other, so as to meet opposite the center of the battalion, opening their files gradually from the rear, so as to cover the whole extent of the battalion; the serjeant-coverer of each division attending to the files taking their proper distance, the files are to halt and front of themselves—In this position, and in all extended order, the post of the officer commanding is in the rear of the center, and the movements are to be regulated by the company belonging to the battalion, which regulates those of the line.

Cover front of battalions.

Post of commanding officer.

When the light companies are called in, the line may either be halted or advancing. In the first case they will retire towards the line, closing to their outer flanks by degrees, so as when they come near their battalions they may be in two divisions, ready to file round the flanks of the battalion to their places.—If the line is advancing, they will only close to their outer flanks, so as to be in two divisions by the time the line comes up to them, when they will instantly face outward, and file to the rear.

Line halted or advancing when light infantry are called in.

Light Infantry Companies formed in Battalion.

Movement ſame as the line.

When the Light Infantry companies are aſſembled in battalion, their movements muſt be on the ſame principles as thoſe of the line; the officers and non-commiſſioned officers poſted in the ſame manner, and, as far as poſſible, the ſame words of command ſhould be uſed; it is in their rapidity alone that they muſt be diſtinguiſhed, to facilitate which the files are to be looſened to the diſtance of ſix inches, but great care is to be taken that rapidity does not degenerate into confuſion.

Quick time.

When two or more companies are together, they are to conſider themſelves as a battalion, the ſenior officer is to take the command, leaving the immediate command of his own company to the next officer belonging to it.—As Light Infantry ſeldom act in large bodies, all their movements may be in quick time; but, when in column, the ſame attention muſt be paid to the pivots covering, and the preſervation of diſtances, as is done by the line; the doing ſo will always be found the quickeſt way of forming, by precluding the neceſſity of much after-dreſſing.

Covering pivots, &c.

Regulating company.

In marching in line to the front, a regulating company muſt be named, by which the others muſt carefully dreſs, and whoſe movements they muſt follow.—The officer leading this regulating company muſt take points on which to march perpendicular to the front of the battalion, and muſt lead ſteadily on them, though in quick time; without theſe precautions, and great attention being paid to them, the march

march in front muſt ſoon become irregular, the files will inevitably intermix, and great confuſion muſt be the conſequence.

A battalion of light infantry may occaſionally be ordered to run, for the purpoſe of anticipating an enemy going to occupy any particular poſt; but, in doing ſo, the utmoſt care is to be taken that confuſion do not enſue; for which purpoſe the velocity muſt never exceed that at which the diviſions can keep together and be dreſſed; the diſtances muſt be preſerved as much as poſſible.—Running muſt generally be in a column; but in a caſe of abſolute neceſſity to make a very quick movement to the front, with a battalion of four or five companies or more, the beſt and eaſieſt way of doing it without confuſion will be in *echellon*, by companies, each retired ſix paces from the preceding one.

May occaſionally run.

But generally in column.

May in Echellon.

All columns of light infantry to be formed by ſub-diviſions, that is, half companies.

The forming from open column to the front may frequently be done by the diviſions obliquing to the right or left of the leading diviſion, and if neceſſary firing as they come up.—Light infantry firing in diviſions is to be always by ſingle men, as directed in general attentions.

Forming from open column.

Firing in diviſions.

Battalions of light infantry may frequently find it neceſſary to move by file through woods, and over very rough countries: in all caſes where it is practicable it is to be done from the right or left of companies, and diſtances muſt be preſerved for forming in the quickeſt manner poſſible—Whenever one company *forms*, the reſt are to do the ſame, even ſuppoſing they do not hear the word or ſignal for that purpoſe.

Movement by files.

Forming in front. If to *form to the front* the leading file of each company halts and dresses, the rest move up to the right or left of them to their proper places.

Forming in right or left. If to *form to the right* or *left*, the companies first form separately, and move up and dress with what will then be the front company, by which means the officer commanding will have it in his power to keep such companies in reserve as he thinks proper, as also in forming to throw them to the right or left of the front company, as circumstances may require; the companies which are to dress with the front company are to move up to it obliquely in line.

Advanced and flanking parties. A battalion of light infantry marching through a wood should have parties in front and on its flanks, in proportion to the strength of the battalion.—The parties should march in front with extended file, and if attacked must take post and defend themselves till supported or called in.

To secure a wood. When ordered to secure a wood of no very great extent, the battalion should go through it, and take post on the opposite side, within its skirt, so as to have the plain before it: In this, as well as in all other cases, parties should be detached 30 or 40 yards on the flanks.

Firing in line. When firing in line advancing, the march must be very slow, the line must be preserved, and the officers must take care to point out the supposed object of attack, and see that the men direct their fire to it;—very particular attention is to be paid that the fire is directed to the proper object, and that it ceases on the first word or signal for that purpose.

Co-operation with line. When the light infantry in battalion is detached from the line, the officer commanding must take care to

to underſtand thoroughly the nature of the intended movement, ſo as to be certain of co-operating with he line with exactneſs and preciſion.

In general, the method of taking poſt with a battalion of light infantry, whether large or ſmall, muſt depend upon the intelligence of the officer who commands it, but he muſt obſerve the ſame rule as was given for a company, viz. Whatever detachments he may find neceſſary to make, always to keep the moſt conſiderable part together as a reſerve. To take poſt.

The ſucceſs of any engagement in a wood or ſtrong country depends upon the coolneſs and preſence of mind of the commanding officer, and the ſilence and obedience of the men, fully as much as upon their bravery. Commanding officer.

The arms of the light infantry, when in battalion, while in movement, are generally to be ſloped, but always by order, and their bayonets are to be fixed. Arms how carried.

If at any time a battalion of light infantry is ordered into the line, the files muſt be cloſed, and it muſt in every reſpect act as other battalions of the line. Light infantry in line.

The signals.

The Signals—To *Advance*; To *Retreat*; To *Halt*; To *cease* firing; To *assemble*, or call in all parties, are to be always considered as fixed and determined ones, and are never to be changed.—The bugle horn of each company is to make himself perfect master of them.

All signals are to be repeated.

All of those signals made from the line or column are to convey the intention of the commanding officer of the line to the officer commanding the light infantry, who will either communicate them to the several companies or detachments by word or signal.

PART IV.

OF THE LINE.

ALL great bodies of troops are formed in one or more lines.

Each line is divided into right and left wings.

Each wing is composed of one, two or more divisions.

Each division is composed of one, or more brigades.

Each brigade is formed of two, three, or four battalions.

These bodies have their immediate commanders, subordinate to each other.

Battalions are formed in line at a distance of 12 paces from each other, and this interval is occupied by 2 cannon, which are attached to each battalion.—There is no increased distance betwixt brigades, unless particular circumstances attend it.—In exercise, should there be no cannon betwixt the battalions, the interval may be reduced to 6 paces.

Movements of a Line.

1. The movements and manœuvres of a conſiderable line are ſimilar to, and derived from the ſame general principles as thoſe of the ſingle battalion; they will be compounded, varied, and applied, according to circumſtances, ground, and the intentions of the commanding officer; but their modes of execution remain unchangeable, and known to all.—The greater the body, the fewer and the more ſimple ought to be the manœuvres required of it.

Circulation of commands.

2. If ſeveral regiments exerciſe or manœuvre together, the commanding officer of the line or column gives his ſhort orders of caution or execution to the commander of the regulating battalion of the line, or of the head of the column, where he himſelf generally is; and ſometimes to the commander of the battalion to which he is then neareſt, and each battalion commander repeats them loud without delay.—When any complicated or combined movement is to be made, which requires previous explanation, it muſt be communicated clearly to the commanders of corps by detached officers, before its execution can be ordered to commence.—The ſeveral chiefs of brigades, &c. watch over, and direct the interior movements of their reſpective bodies; they repeat the general orders of execution given, if they ſee that it is neceſſary, and announce ſuch preparatory ones as are verbally ſent to them.

3. When the general order is not heard or underſtood by part of a line, each battalion commander (where

(where the intention is obvious) will conform as quickly as poſſible to the movements which he ſees executed to his right or left, according to the point from whence the movement begins; but platoon officers execute only on the orders of their battalion commander.

4. The commander in chief will always himſelf loudly announce his commands of execution, as MARCH, or HALT, and the commanders of battalions will, without waiting for each other, endeavour in the ſame moment to repeat them: If officers are quick, obſerving, firm, and decided in their commands, ſuch repetition will be inſtantaneous. Commands of execution.

5. It is impoſſible to aſcertain the words of command to be given in all caſes.—Where ſuch are not pointed out, they muſt depend on the circumſtances of the ſituation, and be ſhort, clear, and expreſſive of what is to be done.—Where they are not comprehended, they muſt be repeated, and no operation begun, till its intention is well underſtood; otherwiſe that diſorder, which may be originally prevented, is not eaſily remedied if once it has taken place.

6. When troops are halted, explanatory cautions are proper before they are put in march; but when they are in motion, and in ſituations where perfect correctneſs is expected, as in the march in line, and in the prolonging of an alignement, no caution ſhould precede the word HALT, but the whole ſhould at once firmly halt.—This is to be underſtood of a column of manœuvre, but where a column of march is unavoidably, from impediments of the route, a little opened out, and that its head ſtops in order to remedy ſuch extenſion, or to form in line, the ſeveral rear battalions will be halted ſucceſſively at their juſt diſtances. Cautionary commands.

7. The

Regulating body in movement.

7. The movements of all great bodies are made either in line or column.—In line they are in general regulated by a battalion of that flank which is neareſt to, and is to preſerve the appui, or which is to make the attack: In column they are directed by its head, and the commander of the whole is with the regulating body.—There are very few caſes in which the center ought to regulate, although the direct march of the line in front appears to be the eaſieſt conducted by a battalion of the center—If an enemy is to be turned, or an attack made, it is by that flank that ſuch movements are led: It is the flank that muſt preſerve the line of appui in all movements in front: If the line is thrown backward or forward, it is generally on a flank point: If the line breaks into column, it is the head or leading flank of that column which conducts, and whoſe writhes and turnings are followed by every other part of the body, and ſuch head becomes a flank when formed into line: It is ſeldom that an attack is formed from the center, and a movement ſeldomer need be.—The commander will therefore be on which ever flank directs the operations of the line, and by which he propoſes to make the attack, or to counteract the attempts of the enemy.

Reſerves.

8. No conſiderable body ſhould ever be aſſembled, or formed for action, without a proportion of it being placed in reſerve, or ſecond line, and more or leſs ſtrong, according to circumſtances.

Supporting lines.

9. Where ſeveral and ſupporting lines of attack are formed, the ſecond ſhould out-flank the firſt, the third the ſecond, &c. the advanced one being thereby ſtrengthened and ſupported on its outward wing.

Cannon.

10. The cannon attached to battalions, whether in line or column, will accompany in all ſituations the

the movements of their proper battalions.—Thoſe that are brigaded make a ſeparate object.

11. The general firings of the line are executed ſeparately and independantly by each battalion. Firings.

12. The chief commander of a line muſt have ſeveral mounted officers, or other intelligent perſons, at his diſpoſal, both to circulate his orders, and to mark and determine ſuch original points as become neceſſary in movement.—The adjutants of battalions are in general wanted to aſſiſt in the ſeparate formations of their battalions. Neceſſary aids.

13. Partial ſignals of the drum for a battalion muſt not be given in line.—But from the battalion where the chief commander is, and by his particular direction, ſuch ſignal may when proper be made for the whole (but not repeated): If halted and ſtanding at eaſe to aſſemble: If aſſembled to be ready to march: If firing in line for a general ceſſation: and before a march to mark the proper cadence by 5 or 6 ſtrong taps.—Signals that cannot with propriety be applied in ſervice ſhould not be uſed in exerciſe; and it is evident that no loud ſignals, or even commands, or muſic, or drums, can be uſed in columns of route, or in movements made near to, though not in preſence of, an enemy, as it is moſt important on ſuch occaſions to conceal them, and not unneceſſarily to diſcover them to the enemy. Signals of the drum.

14. Although in general the INVERSION of all bodies in line is to be avoided, yet there are ſituations where this rule muſt be diſpenſed with, and the quickeſt formation to a particular front thereby obtained.—The battalion or line may be obliged to face to the right about, the more readily to oppoſe a dan- Inverſion of the line in formation ſometimes neceſſary.

danger, inſtead of changing its poſition by a countermarch: it may even be under the neceſſity of forming to a flank with its rear rank in front.—The column with its right in front may arrive on the left of its ground, and be obliged immediately to form up and ſupport that point, ſo that the right of the line will become the left.—Part of a ſecond line may double round on the extremity of a firſt line, thereby to out-flank an enemy.—A corps moving to a flank by lines may be obliged in the quickeſt manner to form up to the front of its march, ſo that the new lines ſhall be compoſed each of parts of the old ones.—Many other ſituations may be imagined, where oppoſing the rear rank admits of no choice, and where an inverſion of the diviſions of the line will gain much time, and becomes abſolutely neceſſary when the formation is required from the point of appui, and near to an enemy.—Troops muſt therefore be accuſtomed to ſuch operations; but the application of them requires great method and recollection, otherwiſe in ſuch critical ſituations confuſion is very eaſily produced, and will even be attended with the moſt fatal conſequences.

Open Column of the Line.

1. The great changes of ſituation of the line are performed in open column of manœuvre.

2. The line breaks into open column by wheels of the quarter circle.

3. The general circumſtances attending the open column have been already explained under that head, part the 3d.

4. The ſeveral general directions given for the ſingle battalion in open column, extend to each battalion that makes part of a conſiderable column, and their minute obſervance is then moſt eſpecially eſſential, and muſt be carefully recollected.

5. In open column, the leading diviſion of each battalion, will preſerve the diſtance of intervals betwixt battalions, in addition to that of its own front.—The column of companies or ſub-diviſions marching at half or quarter diſtance will preſerve an interval between battalions equal to the front of the column. **Intervals.**

6. Battalions are to a line, what companies are to a battalion.—Not only the whole diviſions of a battalion, but the whole battalions of a line or column ſhould MARCH off, and HALT together; and to enſure this in the exerciſe of conſiderable bodies, ſignals of cannon are often given for ſuch purpoſe. In moſt ſituations the quick circulation of verbal commands muſt be ſufficient.

7. The

Points of formation in open column.

7. The same rules that direct the entry and march of one battalion in an alignement on which it is to form, (S. 115. 118.) apply with encreafed attention to thofe of the moft confiderable column.—The point where the head of the column enters an alignement, and which is never quitted by a mounted or other officer but as he is relieved, and until the whole have entered; the point where the head of the leading battalion halts, in order to form; the feveral adjutants who place themfelves in the true line; the prolongation of battalions which may have formed up; all thefe are fo many marked points within the line itfelf, on which the dreffing of pivots or battalions can be regulated, either while marching in the line, or when each halts and is to be corrected, in order to wheel up into line.

Poft of commanding officer and adjutant in formations.

8. When the head of a battalion in a general column, or in its individual column, halts on a line on which it is to form, the commanding officer muft invariably be at that head point, inftantly to correct his pivots on the adjutant, who is invariably at the rear of the battalion in the true prolonged line on which it is marching or which it is to take up.—In like manner the commanding officer is with the leading divifion of an Echellon coming into line and the adjutant marks the other flank of the battalion on which the divifions are fucceffively corrected.

Diftant points are of great advantage.

9. In formations or changes of direction the commander in chief will if poffible preferve and procure confpicuous diftant points in their prolongation, which when known will affift others as well as himfelf, in keeping the line in the pofition he intends.

Situations in which movements in open column are effential.

10. The movements in open column of manœuvre are particularly neceffary.—When a line formed in order of battle is to extend in the fame direction to either

either flank in order to follow the march of an enemy, or to out-flank him if he remains posted; nor is any movement more important, or can be more securely or effectually practised against an enemy inaccurate and inferior in discipline, who in attempting the counter-movement is generally thrown into confusion.—Or, when arriving in column of march on any ground, the commander in determining the general direction that his line is to take, shall not have been able to ascertain the points where he would fix the flanks of it; but after entering into it, is obliged in consequence of the position or manœuvres of the enemy, either to stop his own movement sooner than he intended, or to prolong it, beyond the point he originally meant.

General Changes of Position of a Line.

Changes of Position of a Line composed of several battalions are according to circumstances effected by the *Echellon* march, the *filing* of divisions, or the *march* of battalion in open column,—and points in the new line will always in due time be ascertained, at which the leading division of each battalion is to enter.

1st. *When*

Fig. 96. E. D. — 1st. *When a considerable line is to take up a new position* PARALLEL *or nearly so to the old one, in front or rear of it, and facing either to, or from the old line.*

If in front of and facing as the old line. — It may be done (according as the new line out-flanks the old line, connected with other circumstances)—by the march in *line*: the march in *Echellon* divisions: the *filing* of platoons.

Or, the line will break into open column to whatever hand the new position out-flanks the old one.— The several battalions are then disengaged and put in march in separate columns; flank points of entry for each are in the mean time preparing by the detached adjutants.—The leader of the 2d battalion from the directing flank has a point in or before the new line
Fig. 97. ascertained to him his adjutant not being yet fixed, and marches upon it: The leader of the first battalion will preserve the parallelism, or give gradually the new inclination to the heads of the other battalions.— These during the march never having overpassed the line of their leading ones, nearly dressing up, and preserving their battalion distances, arrive at their adjutants and form in line by wheeling, filing, or Echellon marching, as may have been ordered.

If in front of, and facing to the old line. — The battalion columns will as before enter and form on the line. —Within themselves they need not be inverted, but the right of the line will now be the left, nor can it well be avoided, unless— by countermarching the line before the movement: or, by a

com-

plicated operation during the movement: or, by countermarching first the battalion, and then the line, after the movement.

If in rear of, and facing as the old line.

The same identical operations according to circumstances are applied as when the position in front is taken, *facing as the old line.*—The line or echellons after facing about; or the heads of battalion columns after breaking; *march* to the rear, and front or form in line *facing as the old line.*

If in the rear of, and facing from the old line.

The battalion columns will lead to the rear and enter and form on the new line, the other circumstances will take place as when the new line is in front of and *faces to the old line.*—The Echellon movements will not apply in this case without inverting the ranks.

Fig. 96. C. B.

2d. *When a considerable line is to take up a new position which (or whose prolongation)* INTERSECTS *to the right or left of the old line, and which faces either to or from the old line.*

When the new line faces from the old line.

Fig. 97.

The line will break to which ever flank is nearest to the new position.—The heads of battalion columns will be separately conducted to their points in the new line, being regulated by the leading flank battalions; they will

again

again enter into the general open column, and form in line by wheeling up.

Or the line after breaking to the flank may continue its march in column, enter and prolong the new line, 'till its head halts at its point in that line.—The divisions of the leading battalion or of such other as then ought, will *file*; and the other rear battalions will disengage their heads, and separately march off in column to their several points of entry on the new line, which are marked by their adjutants.

Fig. 104.

If the angle formed by the two lines is not above the half of a right one, and that the flank of the new line is not very distant, this change may be made by the Echellon march of divisions.

When the new line faces to the old line. — The line will break into open column towards the new position.—The general column will enter the new line at its nearest point, prolong it if necessary, and when the head halts, the rear battalions will disengage and march to their points of entry on the new line.

Fig. 96. F. 3d. *When a considerable line has to take up a new position, which (or the prolongation of which)* INTERSECTS *the body of the line, and which faces to or from the old line.*

When the new line intersects the body of the old line, and faces to either flank. — The position will be changed by the Echellon march of divisions on the central point.

Or,

Or, The division which is in the point of intersection will place its pivot flank perpendicular to the new direction, and the line will break inwards and backwards facing to that division.—The divisions of the central battalion and of the one on each side of it will *file* and place themselves in column, before and behind the standing division.—The other battalions will each be conducted in a separate column to its point of entry on the new line, where it will throw itself into the general column, and wheel up into line when ordered.

When the prolongation of the new line intersects the body of the line and faces to either flank.

The line will break to the division which stands in the point of intersection.—Every thing between that division, and the flank which is to be farthest removed from the old line will make a change of position on the named division, and stand in open column on the new line; facing to the named division.--All the divisions that have so changed position will each countermarch by files: The line will then be prolonged, 'till the rear of the column arrives at its point.

Or, The part of the line which is first thrown into the new direction may so effect it by the Echellon march on the named fixed division.—The whole will then wheel into open column and prolong the line till the rear arrives at its point.

Or, The named division being placed with its pivot perpendicular to the new direction, and fronting the way the line is to extend, the rest of the line

 breaks

Fig. 107. breaks inwards and backwards towards it.—That division is then put in march, and is itself followed in column by that part of the line whose flank will naturally first come to its ground: The other part of the line moves on at the same time in a separate column a-breast of it, the whole being thus in a double column of divisions as marched off from the center.--- The head and the column immediately behind it, *halts* when its following flank arrives at its proper point, but the other column proceeds, and throws itself into open column in front of the named division.---The line is formed by the wheeling up of divisions.

S. 179. *Taking up Lines of March, and Formation.*

Lines of march and formation, best given by mounted officers.

1. The general direction of any straight alignement on which troops are to form is always determined before they enter on it, and the point in that line at which their head is to arrive must next be ascertained. ---Whenever the troops are to march on it, in column, or to form correctly, the line must be accurately traced out, and sub-divided by mounted officers; and such officers when trained to that purpose, are the most general and surest points to move upon; particularly in situations where heights and valleys intervene, and where no remarkable objects distant or intermediate occur in the direction, which (perhaps as relative to that of the enemy) must be chosen.— Another great advantage thence arising is, that although

though a distant object of march may not be seen or known but by those at the head of the column; yet the detached marking officers must be known by every pivot leader to be there placed for the purpose of marching or forming upon.—Such officer, if he remains mounted, and which he always will do, when he can depend on the steadiness of his horse, will face to the line and have his horse's head directly over it: If he is dismounted he will himself stand on and faced to the line; and with the hand which is farthest from the column, he will hold his horse by the head, and rather behind himself.

2. Before a column of march or manœuvre approaches the ground, where it is to form, the commander will ascertain as circumstances may determine him, the advanced and distant points at which the flanks of his line are to be placed, or which he intends to be in the prolongation of the line when formed.—If he enters his alignement at one of those determined points, he continues his march straight upon the posted intermediate officer and the other point.—But if he enters the alignement, somewhere between them, it then becomes necessary to ascertain the spot where the direction of his march intersects the new alignement, for at that point the head of the column arrives in it.

Distant objects of march or formation.

3. When the head of the advancing column approaches whatever part of the ground it ought to arrive upon.—Two officers, R, S, are shewn the flank distant points of the alignement, P, T, and are sent forward to determine the intermediate point S, at which the head of the column ought exactly to enter into the new direction.—They separate from each other 80 or 100 paces, go to the side to which the column is not to wheel, and R, immediately places himself in the line of S, P, advanced before the head

Method of finding an intermediate point between two distant objects.

of the column.—They then both move on R, always preserving, S in a line with P, and each describing
Fig. 99. the portion of a circle upon P, as a center.—S, looks to R, and moves on, while the point T, continues to be advanced before him; but the instant he has brought, R, in a line with, T, they both halt, and the 4 points are then in the same line: R, remains fixed, till S, has shifted to the point S, of intersection, and to enter at which the head of the column is now approaching—This done R, also moves if necessary to within 50 or 60 paces of S, and S, R, thus become a general base, which the appointed officers and adjutants immediately prolong for the march of the column, and in which they are assisted and corrected by the known distant points.

This method of finding an intermediate point between two given, and perhaps inaccessible objects, must be thoroughly understood; and more than one column may in this manner ascertain their relative points of entry in the same line.—Officers employed to give the direction may with moderate practice take it up at the gallop, and therefore no halt, or stop of the column is to be apprehended.

To determine which of two columns arrive first at a given point.

4. When two bodies are in march to gain the same given point; the above method may most usefully be applied to ascertain which of them can first arrive at it.—The column B, and enemy D, are both in march on the point S. The leader of B. observes a distant point at C, beyond and a-head of the
Fig. 99. enemy D. If he can continue to keep this object open, and in front of the enemy, it is a certain sign that he approaches fastest to his wished for point; but if it appears as if moving towards the rear of the enemies march, it indicates his advantage, and the attempt must be given up in time.

S. 180.

S. 180. *When a considerable Open Column—Enters—Marches—and Forms—on a straight Alignement.*

1. Before the head of a considerable column of march enters a straight line which it is to prolong and form upon, the point s. of entry must be marked by a fixed person, who is to remain there till he is relieved; also another point r. at least 60 or 70 paces from the first, and in the exact direction which is to be given to the new line.—Three other persons m. n. o. immediately and successively prolong themselves on r. s. as the original base; and being also corrected from s. upon such distant point (if any), as the commander shall have taken, they place themselves at least 200 paces from s. and from each other.

Necessary points of entry and march.

Fig. 101.

2. The line being thus in time prepared, the head of the first battalion arrives and wheels into the direction at s. and the adjutant of that battalion remains at the point of entry till the last division of his battalion has entered; he then gallops on for about 200 paces, and posts himself on the line.---The adjutant of the 2d battalion, who has in his turn placed himself at the point of entry, as soon as his last division has entered at it, gallops on and relieves the first adjutant, who goes on about 200 paces farther, and again posts himself.—When the 3d battalion has entered, its adjutant relieves the second, that second relieves the first, and the first proceeds 200 paces farther, and again alignes himself.---In this manner, and till the last battalion has entered the line, do the adjutants successively and diligently relieve each other.

Prolongation of the line by adjutants.

Fig. 103.

other.—If any of the adjutants overtake or interfere with the advanced perſons, who in the front are prolonging the line, ſuch adjutants may return to their battalions, as being no longer of ſervice.

Prolongers of the march.

2. As to the perſons m. n. o. who are in the front of the column, two of them at leaſt having taken their ſtation by the time that the leading battalion enters the line, as ſoon as the head of it approaches the firſt of them, he gallops on and new aligues himſelf beyond the other two; and this operation each ſucceſſively repeats till the column halts, which has always had (independant of any accidental diſtant point) two ſuch perſons to march upon.

Fig. 103

Commanding officers of Battalions.

4. So many fixed points being thus aſcertained, all which are ſucceſſively paſſed by the pivots of the column, the accuracy of direction cannot but be preſerved; but as a farther aid, each commanding officer of a battalion is at the point of entry invariably to place himſelf on the flank of his leading diviſion, and in this ſituation, moving on the poſted adjutants, he (allowing for the breadth of his own horſe) cannot fail to keep his battalion in the true line, by frequently going before his diviſion, turning round, and correcting his flanks, if neceſſary, on the neareſt adjutant in the rear, which the wave of a hand will ſuffice to do.—As each commanding officer arrives at a poſted adjutant, he muſt go behind him, and again take up the flank of the diviſion.

Attentions in the march.

5. Every diviſion of the line having carefully taken its juſt wheeling diſtance before arriving, or at lateſt when it does arrive at the point of entry, and from thence having invariably preſerved the ſtep by a ſteady march; the pivots alſo (occaſionally corrected backwards) having preſerved the juſt line of the ſeveral adjutants, and no halt, or alteration of ſtep,

ftep, or diftance, having been made by any one divifion or battalion from the inftant that it has entered the line: The whole HALT at the fame moment, on that word being loudly and rapidly repeated by each commanding officer, who immediately examines and corrects his pivots, and the column is thus prepared for the next order of wheeling into line.

6. If the column halts when the laft battalion has entered, the adjutants remain fixed till the line is corrected and formed: but if the column is ftill carried on, then the perfon pofted at the point of entry, when he fees the rear of the column approaching the laft adjutant, quits that point, relieves that adjutant (who proceeds, &c.), and repeats that operation till the column halts and forms in line. Adjutants.

7. When the column halts in an alignement to form, the various marked points in it which then exift give the greateft facility to commanding officers inftantly to correct their pivots, if neceffary, each (as has been mentioned) on the next pofted adjutant in his rear; and which will alfo generally be on the pivot of the front divifion of the fucceeding battalion, in the fame manner as companies drefs from the pivot of one to the pivot of the next; for, fuch correction fhould be merely internal, unlefs fome inexcufable miftake has deranged the whole, and thrown the rear of the column out of its true direction. Correction of pivots.

8. If great accuracy is required in the movements of a fingle battalion column, it is evident how much more effential it becomes in a confiderable one, where faults would operate in the proportion of its extent, if they are not immediately prevented by the facility with which mounted officers can line and correct upon each other.

9. When

9. When a column halts to form, ſuch perſons as are then marking that line are not to quit their poſts till ſo ordered, or till the line is put in march.

10. In marching in an alignement, if the rear or front of a battalion has evidently deviated from the true line, the head of the ſucceeding one is not to follow its bad example, but muſt preſerve the general given direction into which the other is immediately to return.—And no commanding officer of a battalion, when marching in an alignement, is on any account to alter the rate of march, or partially to halt, and thereby to derange the whole column.

Aids in preſerving the alignement.

11. Although the poſting and ſucceſſive relieving of adjutants on the line will undoubtedly preſerve the direction, yet troops that are ſufficiently trained ought certainly to prolong and form juſtly on any line, by having 2 given points of march always a-head of the column, one point of entry marked and remaining, the commanding officers of battalions moving correctly on the flank of their leading diviſions, and the adjutants or other mounted officers only occaſionally ſtopping in the true line till the battalion they belong to has paſſed.—This ſhould ſuffice to correct any ſmall inaccuracy of the pivots, and keep the whole in the general direction given by the officers advanced in front of the column.

Step.

12. As the juſtneſs of ſtep determines the accurate movement in column, that taken by the firſt leader muſt be frequently referred to and examined by the plummet; and every battalion marching in column ſhould, in order to regulate its march, have in its front a non-commiſſioned officer, trained and ſteadied to the equality of ſtep.

13. Where

13. Where circumſtances determine the march of the column, on a conſpicuous diſtant object, T, it is an eſſential help, and muſt be immediately declared to the leaders of the column, and as ſoon as poſſible looked out for, and remarked by all mounted officers; and if ſuch another object alſo happens to be in its prolongation to the rear, it will aid in the correction of the march; and in the formation of the line: but it will oftener happen that no ſuch objects can be taken, and that the alignement depends on the direction (determined by relative circumſtances) that the commander at firſt gives to two poſted perſons, and which is afterwards prolonged by others. Fig. 102. Diſtant objects of march advantageous.

14. When part of a column is in low ground, or croſſing a valley, its march can be directed and aſſiſted by the rear points, at times when the front points of march are not to be ſeen. Fig. 103.

15. No circumſtance whatever is to occaſion an increaſe of the proper diſtance betwixt battalions in column.—The battalion guns will therefore march a-breaſt, and always well cloſed up to the rear diviſion of the preceding battalion; or, according to circumſtances, they will move on one of the flanks oppoſite to their proper intervals; and if ordered on the front or pivot flank, they can occaſionally fire if ſo required.—Muſic, pioneers, &c. are never in the intervals betwixt battalions, in line or column of manœuvre, but are on the flanks of the column, or in the rear of the line. Movement of battalion guns and juſtneſs of intervals.

16. The moſt conſiderable column ought to be able to MARCH in the alignement with perfect exactneſs; to HALT; to WHEEL into line; to MARCH forward; to HALT; and to FIRE; without more than a momentary pauſe between each operation, and without any neceſſity of dreſſing, correcting diſtance, or Correctneſs of movements.

 any

any alteration whatever; and unlefs the battalions are equal to, and can be depended on for fuch operation, no critical or advantageous meafure, when clofe to the enemy, can be attempted.

Poft of commanding officers of battalions.

17. It is only when the column of manœuvre is marching in a ftraight alignement that the commanding officer is invariably attached to the head of his battalion; for, in other fituations of march he muft by no means remain fixed at its head, but be movable on its flank in order to watch over its general progrefs.

Prolongation of a line.

Fig. 103.

18. *When a line already formed is to wheel into open column, and prolong its direction.*—Three perfons m, n, o, take their ftations in the front as points of march, and the adjutants place themfelves each clofe to the pivot flank of his own fecond divifion.—The column is put in motion, the laft adjutant, when the rear approaches the one next to himfelf, relieves him, and he going on they fucceffively relieve each other.

Fig. 102.

Change of direction.

19. *When a line, prolonging a ftraight direction, changes into another ftraight direction*, the advanced perfons m, n, o, will of courfe be firft placed in that direction, the front adjutant will be at the point of change till he is relieved, and the column will proceed as before.

General aids in marching in column.

20. *If the march of the column* (although in open ground) *is not meant to be critically ftraight*, then the placing of adjutants can be difpenfed with, and the divifions, at their true wheeling diftances, will fcrupuloufly follow the line which the head of the column traces out: but, the better to prevent any improper deviation of the rear, commanding officers or adjutants will frequently ftop at true points of the

the march until the rear of their battalion has paſſed, and always at points where the head of the column makes any conſiderable change of direction.—If every diviſion of a column does not accurately follow the path traced out by the leading one, opening or cloſing of diſtances muſt take place, running up, or ſtopping ſhort, will enſue, and the column will not be in a ſituation to form in line with preciſion.

21. *When the open column of manœuvre has prolonged a ſtraight line, ſtands halted, and is directed to make a change of ſituation on any fixed point within itſelf.*—All the diviſions before that point countermarch and ſtand faced to it; the battalion, if ſingle, or the central battalion of a line, and the one on each ſide of it will file by diviſions into the new column; the others will march in column, and enter where their *Rears* are to be placed.—If the column is intended to proceed, the diviſion facing the given one having taken ſingle diſtance, and the others of that wing being arranged behind it, they will all countermarch, and the column may then move on.—If the column is meant after ſuch change of ſituation not to proceed, but immediately to form in line, then the diviſion facing the given one having taken double wheeling diſtance, the line will be formed by a wheel up to the pivot flank.—In either caſe a previous caution will determine the poſition of the diviſion facing the given one.

When the open column changes its ſituation on any fixed point within itſelf.

Fig. 45. 48.

S. 181. *Formation in Line on detached Adjutants, from the Aſſembly or Maſs of Battalions in Columns of Companies.*

Fig. 106.

1. If a column of ſeveral battalions has halted at half, quarter, or cloſe diſtance, or that its battalions have aſſembled in contiguous columns with ſmall intervals, and that they are to extend into a line which is at ſome diſtance from their then ſituation, on their reſpective adjutants, and facing either to the front or to the rear.

General preliminary attentions.

2. A battalion is named as the one to be formed upon, and which may be either a flank or central battalion of the new line, but ſhould be that one which, being placed at the point of appui, determines the poſition of the line, and therefore will commonly be a flank one.—The general column, when arrived at, and ſtanding on, the new line, ſhould always front to the point of *appui*, whether flank or central.—Each adjutant marks one certain flank of his battalion in the new line: and each in taking up his ground allows for the front and interval of his own battalion from the laſt placed adjutant before him.—Each adjutant always marks that flank of his battalion in the new line at which its head is to enter, and at which its REAR diviſion in column is to reſt, and therefore it is that flank which is fartheſt from the point of *appui*; if his battalion is to march with its right in front, he marks its left; and if with the left in front, he marks its right. It is therefore often neceſſary, as will be mentioned, that ſome or all of the battalion columns ſhould ſepa-

ſeparately countermarch (*S.* 101.) at their point of aſſembly, in order to move off with their proper flank diviſions in front, and thereby enter the new line at their reſpective adjutants.

3. Suppoſing therefore that the battalions are ſtanding in columns (the right in front) either in general column, or in contiguous line.—If the poſition is to be taken from the *right* B, of the new line, the adjutants will from thence prolong it, each ſucceſſively marking his own left.—If to be taken from the *left* C, the adjutants will from thence prolong it, each ſucceſſively marking his own right; and the battalions, on ſeparating from the general maſs, will each countermarch, ſo as to arrive at its adjutant a column with the left in front.—If to be taken from a *central* point D, both flanks of that battalion muſt be marked; its adjutant, and thoſe of the battalions ſtanding to its left (or behind it if in column), will mark each his own left; the adjutants of the battalions to its right (or before it if in column) will mark each his own right, and thoſe battalions will in conſequence countermarch ſo as to enter with their left in front; and in this manner will the whole ſtand on the new line facing to the central point. Fig. 106. Point of appui determined.

4. Theſe circumſtances determined and underſtood, all the adjutants are ſent forward to the ground of the named battalion; the general direction of the line is aſcertained by ſtationed objects; the flank point of entry is taken by the named adjutant; and all the others from him ſucceſſively prolonging the line, mark their reſpective ordered points of entry; they are expected to give ground quickly, according to circumſtances, both by their eye, and their own ſtep, as well as by the ſtep of their horſes. Adjutants mark flanks.

5. In

Battalions enter the new line.

5. In the mean time the whole are put in motion, and when sufficiently advanced they HALT.—Such battalions as are to countermarch are ordered so to do, and each then diverges to right or left, avoids crossing or interference, and marches quick to its own point of entry, opening its divisions in the course of the march.—At that point a momentary halt is made; the head division wheels into the line, the others successively follow it at open distances, and in ordinary time (S. 125. 115.), till the word HALT is given on the arrival of their rear division at that point.—The battalion thus standing in open column, and its pivots being corrected on the adjutant, is ready to wheel up into the line, which is in this manner separately entered by each battalion, whether it is to face to the front or to the rear of the march.

6. As the adjutant always marks the point where the REAR division of his battalion column is to be placed, so the point where the head one is to rest will be of course easily known (and may be also marked in due time by another detached person), being at the distance of a proper interval and the front of a division from the preceding adjutant.—The several adjutants when placed become so many points of march to the battalions that are prolonging the line.

General rule.

7. Although unnecessary ground may seem to be gone over by the head divisions of some of the battalions, when they enter at their rear point, yet the rule that each of them shall enter the line where its REAR is to rest, is simple, general, and most readily corrects any mistakes that may be made; and all circumstances considered, it is a quicker and surer manner of forming on the new position than if the battalions were to enter at their head, or intermediate points.

8. When

8. When the enemy cannot poſſibly interrupt the movements of the detached battalions, this is an expeditious method of taking up ground in a defenſive poſition: but it requires great exertion in the diſtances given by the adjutants, for, if they miſjudge their points there will be falſe intervals in the line, which can only be remedied by the battalions marching on to their proper diſtances before they HALT.—If the battalion of *appui* is neareſt to the new line, and the firſt to form on it, then, as all the others muſt enter it ſucceſſively, any inaccurate marking of the adjutants may be remedied; becauſe each battalion, without interfering with any other one, can, before it HALTS, march up to its juſt diſtance from its preceding one; but if the battalion of *appui* is the laſt to enter the line, each muſt then HALT at the point marked by its adjutant, and no correction can be attempted till the battalion of *appui* has halted, and that the whole are in one general column.

9. Should adjutants be ordered to mark the head (inſtead of the rear) point of their battalion columns, and ſhould ſuch columns not countermarch, as is before required: In ſuch caſe, each muſt ſometimes take diſtance not for the front of his own but for the front and interval of an adjoining battalion, and the column would not face to the point of *appui*; theſe circumſtances would much tend to embarraſs the formation of the line.—When an adjutant has to allow for the front of another battalion, he muſt be apprized of the number of files, officers included, in ſuch battalion.

10. Although the adjutant does always mark the REAR flank of the battalion column, yet as its head point, or any intermediate one, is afterwards eaſily aſcertained, it can be directed (when particularly ſo

 ordered)

ordered) to enter at either of thoſe points, as well as at the rear one, for, any of thoſe operations places the whole in open column in the new line.

11. When battalions aſſemble in line of contiguous cloſe colums, they ſhould be ſo placed that no croſſing or retardment of the after-march may be occaſioned.—If the new poſition to be taken faces the ſame way as the columns do, the battalions ſhould ſtand in their natural order from right to left.—If the poſition to be taken faces to the rear of the columns, the battalions ſhould aſſemble in the reverſe order, ſo that the right one ſhall be on the left: or, if they otherwiſe aſſemble at firſt, they muſt countermarch in maſs, in order to ſtand ſo.

Poſitions taken to front or flanks.

12. If poſitions are to be taken up to the front E. or to the flanks B. C.—The circumſtances already mentioned will determine from what point the general line will be given, and what flank of his battalion each adjutant ſhall mark.—The ſeveral battalion columns (having countermarched, if neceſſary, and if ſtanding in general column having diſengaged into an Echellon poſition) march towards their adjutants, taking care to diverge to that hand which does not croſs the path of the leading battalion, or of each other; and when they approach the new line, whatever way it fronts, each is in a ſituation to enter it as its REAR point, or, if particularly ſo ordered, at any other given point.

Fig. 105.

Poſitions taken to the rear.

13. If poſitions D. are to be taken in the rear.—Each battalion will countermarch its diviſions by files, ſo that the columns ſtand with their left in front; the battalions then having the new poſitions before them, will proceed accordingly.

14. As

14. As in changes of pofition, the arrival and formation of battalions in line is generally fucceffive; the head point of each can be readily afcertained from the fituation of the preceding battalion, even before the whole of it may be fteadied in the aligne-ment, and an under officer may in time be fent for-ward the more exactly to determine it.---But the *rear* point of each, at which the adjutant places himfelf, muft as to diftance often depend on his eye alone, and being mounted he will always have fufficient time to take it up; as to the direction of the line, which is the great object of his attention, he can never fail in it, if he takes it carefully from the prolongation of fuch objects as he fees are placed in it, and of fuch part of the troops as may be formed on the line.

15. The quicknefs and accuracy of all formations of the line, and of all changes from one pofition to another, depends totally on the intelligence of each commanding officer, who always conducts the leading divifion of his battalion to its point of entry in the new line, and alfo of the adjutant, who, prolonging that line, marks the point of his laft divifion, and is himfelf the object on which the pivots of the column, or the divifions of the Echellon or column that fuc-ceffively come into line are dreffed upon.—When the adjutant marks the *rear* point for the entry of the battalion column, he muft be accurate both in his diftances and direction: When he marks it only as a point of dreffing for divifions that fucceffively arrive in line, the juftnefs of direction is then the material object.

S. 182. *When the rear Battalions of a Column break from it, in order to enter, and form on an Alignement, in which the head ones have halted.*

Fig. 104. If a confiderable open column has at any time partly wheeled into and prolonged a new direction, and that the head being arrived at its point, the whole are ordered to HALT with an intention of forming line in the new direction.—On the ceffation of march the entire battalion neareft the line, and any partial divifions of the one preceding it, that have not entered when the whole halt, fhall immediately, by FACING and FILING, gain the new line. But all the other battalions in the rear fhall break from the general column, and each MARCH quick and feparate in individual column till it arrives at its adjutant, who, having expeditioufly lined himfelf on the head objects of the new line, will be placed at its *rear* point of entry; the battalions will then prolong the line, and, as they muft have fucceffively arrived in it, each will halt when its head is at a due diftance from the preceding battalion, its pivots will be corrected on its adjutant, and it will thus be ready to wheel up into line, when the next battalion behind it fhall have three divifions at leaft correctly ftanding in column on the line.---Or, the adjutants ftill marking the rear points to their battalions, if fo ordered, the head of each may be conducted to its refpective head point (which is readily afcertained), it will then HALT, FACE, and FILE into the new line,

line, and its pivots being corrected on its adjutant, it will be ready to WHEEL up into line as in *S.* 124.

A column marching at half, or quarter diſtance, may in the ſame manner take up its ground.—The diviſion that is to ſtop at the point of *entry* being aſcertained, ſuch part of the column as is before that diviſion will ſucceſſively there enter the line, and prolong it at open diſtances.—In the mean time ſuch battalions as are behind that diviſion, breaking from the general column, will march to their reſpective points, and extend along the line.

S. 183. *When a Line of ſeveral Battalions, thrown into Open Column, changes Poſition on a fixed flank Diviſion.*

The direction of the new line being aſcertained and prolonged, and the flank company placed perpendicular to it, as already directed (*S.* 120.), the whole wheel backward into open column, facing to the ſtanding company.—The flank battalion FACES and FILES into column on the new line (*S.* 120.), but the head diviſion of each other battalion wheels and MARCHES off quick in ſeparate column to its adjutant, who marks its *rear* point in the new line; it there enters, prolongs, and wheels up, each ſucceſſively, and directed (*S.* 125.)—Or, if ſo ordered, each battalion may enter as its head point, as in (*S.* 124.) Fig. 47.

S. 184. *When a Line of ſeveral Battalions, thrown in Open Column, changes Poſition on a fixed central Diviſion of any one Battalion.*

Fig. 48. The direction of the new line being aſcertained and prolonged, and the central company placed perpendicular to it, as directed (*S.* 122.), the whole line breaks backward into open column, ſo as to ſtand faced to the central company.—The companies of the central battalion, and of the one on each ſide of it, proceed to FACE, FILE, and place their pivot flanks in column on the new line (*S.* 122.)—But the head diviſions of each other battalion wheels and MARCHES quickly in ſeparate column to which ever hand neceſſarily conducts it towards its proper *rear* point in the new line, which is marked by its adjutant, it there enters, prolongs, &c. as in the preceding ſection.

In central changes of a battalion or line.—The movements of the right wing, whether thrown forward or backward, are thoſe of a column with the left in front, the rights being the pivot flanks; and the movements of the left wing are thoſe of a column with the right in front, the lefts being the pivot flanks.---In changes of poſition on the right of a battalion or line, the movements are thoſe of a column with the right in front.---In changes of poſition on the left of a battalion or line, the movements are thoſe of a column with the left in front.

§. 185. *When a Line of ſeveral Battalions, thrown into Open Column, changes Poſition on a moving central Diviſion.*

1. The direction of the new line being aſcertained and prolonged, the named company, a. will be wheeled and placed with its pivot flank perpendicular to and on the new direction, fronting the way the line is to extend, and if to the rear it muſt therefore countermarch.—The line will then break backwards by companies, ſo as to ſtand faced to the named company.---That company, a. will now be put in march along the new direction, and be followed in double column by the remaining companies of the central battalion, and covered by one of thoſe columns, viz. by that whoſe flank in prolonging the new line will naturally firſt arrive at its proper ground, and which march with their pivots upon that line.—When the named diviſion arrives at its new point, a. 2. it will, together with thoſe that are marching behind it, receive the word to HALT: ſuch diviſions of its battalion, which are to be in front of it, and are now marching by its ſide in column, and are ſeparated from it by a diſtance of 3 or 4 paces, will move on, and by *filing* from their pivot flanks, will ſucceſſively pace themſelves in column, before and facing to it, at a double wheeling diſtance. Fig. 107.

2. The other battalions which moved when the central one did, which in the mean time have been marching, each in ſeparate column led by its inward flank

flank divifion, and which have been pointing to front or rear, relatively to the movements of the central battalion, approaching, but not entering, into its direction, except fuch as would naturally follow on the prolongation of the line: Thofe battalions will, when the central one HALTS, march quick towards their feveral adjutants who have been detached to mark their *rear* points, enter, prolong, and wheel up into line, as already directed.---In this movement fome of the battalions near the central one might form to advantage on their head points, by filing from their pivot flanks into line, and if fo ordered they may do it accordingly.

3. If the named company is a flank one of a central battalion, in that cafe the whole of that battalion will follow it in one column only, and the adjoining battalion will compofe another column, and march a-breaft of it, feparated by 3 or 4 paces, till the named battalion comes to its ground and halts; the adjoining battalion will then proceed, and, by filing round from its pivot flanks, will (ftanding faced to the directing one) take its place in the general column, in order to form into line.

4. On many occafions when the named company is to be movable, and that it is a central one of a battalion, the whole of that battalion, if it is thought advifable, may without much lofs of time be thrown into one column before and behind that company, and the companies of that battalion, which are in front of the named one, will be countermarched, in order that the whole may face the way the column is to move.---This done, the general movement of the central and other battalions, each in feparate column, may begin; and in fuch cafe, the front company of the central battalion will be the firft to arrive and HALT at the point where the column is to wheel up into line.

5. This

5. This movement of the given division is equivalent to the line marching from the center either to front or rear, and from that situation forming away to the flanks: or to the whole line first marching forward, or backward, and then making a central change on a fixed point.—At the same time that it changes the front of a line, it carries the flanks to whatever point in that line it is meant they should rest at: it is the movement, which a second line does make, in order to comply with a change of position made by the first line, on a fixed point.

S. 186. *When the head of a considerable open Column in March arrives at, or near the Point from which it is to take an oblique Position* (B) *facing to its then Rear, and at which Points its 3d, 4th, or any other named Battalion is to be placed.* Fig. 109.

1. In general, the column after entering the new line would continue its march in that direction, till the named division arrived and was halted at the point of intersection; the battalions that had not entered into the line would then break off from the old direction and gain the new one.——But if such a column was marching parallel to an enemy's flank point as far as was intended, and that the object was to take an oblique line and attack that flank: In such situation Fig. 109. B.

tion it might be too hazardous to allow the rear of the column which was deſtined to become the refuſed flank of the new line, to remain ſo long in its parallel direction, and it might be eſſential to draw it farther from the enemy as ſoon as poſſible.

2. Suppoſe the column conſiſts of ſix battalions, and that it is determined that the head of the 5th ſhall be placed at the point of interſection (d).—The column moves on and when the head of it arrives at the point (d) in the new line, the two, or any proportion of the leading battalions, may by the ſucceſſive wheeling of their diviſions enter it and march along it in the ordinary manner; but as ſoon as the leading diviſion of the column does enter it, the 3d, 4th, and every other battalion breaks off ſeparately to the rear, and march quick in columns to gain the new line: the 3d and 4th battalions aſſemble in cloſe column a little beyond the point of interſection (d) and the new line; the 5th entering at its adjutant who marks its rear, forms in open column on the new line, with its head at the point (d), and all the other rear battalions form alſo relatively in open column on the new line.—The two leading battalions having in the mean time prolonged the line, when it comes to the turn of the 3d, it gradually takes its diſtances, follows in open column, as alſo all the others, till the whole are ordered to halt, and the line to be formed by wheeling up.

3. The juſtneſs of this movement depends; on the points in the new direction being taken up quickly and with preciſion, on the previous determination that a certain battalion or diviſion of a battalion, ſhall paſs or halt at the point of interſection; and that every part of the column which is behind that battalion ſhall throw itſelf into open column on the new line behind the point of interſection, ready to prolong

prolong or to form the line whenever it comes to its turn.

4. This movement will often take place in the change of poſition of a ſecond line, and is performed by all thoſe that are behind the diviſion which is to ſtop at the point where the old and new lines interſect.—And at all times when the open column changes into a direction on which it is to form, and that the diviſion which is to be placed at the point of entry can be determined, it much facilitâtes the operation to make every thing behind that diviſion gain the new line as quickly as poſſible, without waiting till the head of the column halts.

5. Suppoſe the column marching on a line parallel to an enemy's front, to have entered oppoſite one flank, and to be marching towards the other as if meaning to form in parallel line, but that circumſtances determine to form in oblique line C, and attack the flank it has paſſed.—The column will be halted when the rear has arrived at a determined point; the direction of the oblique line, C, will be given; each diviſion of the column will countermarch; the battalion that is to reſt at the point of interſection will be named; the whole will be put in motion.---Two or three of the leading battalions continuing their march will by the ſucceſſive wheeling of their diviſions prolong the new direction; ſuch following ones as are to be before the point of interſection, a, will aſſemble cloſe to it; ſuch others as are to be behind it, will at once march off quickly and ſeparately to their point of entry in the new line, and ſtand in open column upon it: in proportion as the head advances the whole will extend along the line in open column, be halted, and formed by wheeling up. Fig. 109. C.

6. A line

6. A line formed parallel to an enemy, may change ſituation in the above manner, by wheeling into open column, marching on to the point of interſection, and then taking up the new oblique poſition.

7. If a column moving parallel to an enemy, ſhould ſtop and take up a new poſition on any point then within itſelf, ſuch formation would be a central one and made either on a fixed or movable diviſion.

Close Column, of the Line.

1. The great object of a conſiderable cloſe column is; to form the line to the front in the quickeſt manner poſſible; to conceal numbers from the knowledge of the adverſary; and to extend in whatever direction the circumſtance of the moment may require; which till it is nearly accompliſhed cannot be obvious to an oppoſite enemy: It is a ſituation for the aſſembly, more than for the march of troops: It is not formed until the head of the troops is arrived in column of whole, half or quarter diſtance near the ground where they are to extend into line.---The formation from cloſe column into line is an original one, generally protected by cannon and cavalry, made at ſuch a diſtance as not to be interrupted by the attempts of an enemy, and avoiding the enfilade of artillery. Its poſitions cannot fail to be truly taken.

2. The

2. The cloſe column ſhould not exceed 5, or 7, battalions; where there are more troops, it is beſt to form more columns if it can be done; therefore the columns of march may often be ſub-divided when they come near the points of forming into line, be directed upon them, and then cloſed up.

3. In general the battalion cloſe columns before they begin to deploy, ſhould ſtand 2 companies in front, and 5 in depth: In this ſituation the right company has its officer and his ſerjeant on its right flank, and the left company has its officer on its left, and his ſerjeant on its right. (S. 147.) Fig. 70. 72.

4. From cloſe column the whole or any part of the body may be ordered to extend into line to either hand, as circumſtances may require.

5. When a cloſe column is halted, each battalion of which it is compoſed is 3 paces from the one before it.

6. A cloſe column muſt looſen its diviſions before it can march in front, and its changes of direction muſt be made circling and on a moving point, to enable its rear gradually to comply: If too great intervals ſhould be made in the column, they can beſt be cloſed by a halt of the head.

7. Battalions ſtanding in maſs ſhould be 6 paces diſtant from each other before deploying into line.

8. A cloſe column of 2 or even 3 battalions, may occaſionally deploy in the ſame manner as a ſingle bottalion does, and on any diviſions; but in proportion to the number of diviſions does the difficulty of execution encreaſe, and at any rate the formation will probably be inaccurate and defective.—Therefore,

fore, when ſeveral battalions are halted in a cloſe column, they do firſt deploy in maſs on any named one, and thus ſtand in contiguous line of battalion columns, with any ordered interval between each. If the columns are of companies, the intervals will be equal to the front of a company and a half, they will then form columns of 2 companies each in front: and the whole will then deploy into line on any named diviſion of any battalion.

S. 187. *When a Column of March (by Companies) of ſeveral Battalions forms Cloſe Column, and then extends into Line.*

Fig. III.

When it is found proper to ſhorten the column of march, the rear diviſions are ordered to cloſe up to a certain diſtance.—The leading diviſion of the column either halts or ſhortens its ſtep, and the rear diviſions cloſe up to quarter diſtance: an interval of a company is reſerved betwixt each battalion, and the diviſions when cloſed reſume the ordinary march.

CLOSE TO QUARTER DISTANCE.

ORDINARY.

When

FORM CLOSE COLUMN. HALT.	When arrived within about 200 yards of where the line is to be formed, the head is halted, and the rear divisions move on to close column.
BATTALION COLUMNS WILL DEPLOY ON THE 3d BATTALION.	The third or any other battalion is then named as the one which is to give the ground on the line, and points in it are already marked out by the advanced adjutants.
OUTWARDS FACE.	The 3d battalion stands fast, each other one in mass FACES to its proper hand.
Q. MARCH.	Each marches quick to the flank without opening out.
MARCH. HALT, DRESS.	When the 3d battalion is uncovered, it marches forward to its place in line, and halts at its given points.
HALT, FRONT. DRESS. MARCH. HALT, DRESS.	The battalions that are marching to the flanks, as soon as they have acquired an interval of one company and a half from each other, will successively HALT, FRONT, DRESS -- MARCH---HALT, DRESS, with the 3d battalion which is now on the line. Music, drummers, &c. are in the rear of each battalion column; and also artillery, unless otherwise placed.

The

FORM GRAND DIVI-SIONS, &c.	The battalions being thus placed on the line with the above intervals, and in columns of companies, are ordered to form columns of two companies in front, as in (*S.* 147.)
THE LINE WILL BE FORMED ON THE 3d DIVISION OF THE 3d BATTALION.	The line being now prolonged to both flanks, a CAUTION is given that the whole will deploy on any named diviſion, of any one battalion: for example, on the 3d diviſion of the 3d battalion.
OUTWARDS FACE.	The two right battalions, and the front diviſion of the third, FACE to the right, and all the reſt to the left.
Q. MARCH.	The whole MARCH quick to the flanks, except the named diviſion, which advances into the alignement, and the reſt of the 3d battalion proceeds to make a central formation on it. (*S.* 150.)
---DIVISION, HALT, FRONT, &c.	The other battalions continue their march till each arrives at the point where its inward flank is to be placed; and when each does ſo, ſuch flank diviſions, whether it is the front or rear one, HALTS, FRONTS, and occupies its place in line, while the other diviſions proceed and make their deploy-

deployment upon it.—In this manner the battalions successively deploy (*S.* 148. 149.), observing the general attentions already given.

2. The points of marching and forming upon must be well defined: The head divisions of battalions that move along the line must do it accurately, and by no means get before it: The files must march correct, and the beginning of the deployment of each battalion must be well timed, otherwise the general line will be ill taken up.—The general line is that on which the battalion stood before the deployment began, and the several adjutants will carefully and quickly prolong it, each giving a point near to where the outward flank of his own battalion will extend.

3. The battalion columns FACE, and separate from the general column by a command given for the whole by the chief; but each column is halted, fronted, and brought up into line by its respective commanding officer.—In like manner when the several columns are on their line of formation, they will FACE and MARCH by word of command from the chief; but each will be ordered to DEPLOY at the proper place by its own commanding officer.

4. When several battalion close columns stand arranged along side of each other, and are in concert to deploy into line.—The named one of formation only can be required to form, either on the front, a CENTRAL, or the rear division; but each of the others necessarily form, either on its front, or on its rear one, as the circumstances of situation demand.

5. After

5. After the column of march has closed up to quarter distance, the leading battalion may, when thought proper, be at once directed to its point of halting; and the others may successively diverge from the column, arrange themselves as before along-side of it, and double up to columns of 2 companies.— The line of battalions in mass being thus formed, at such a distance from the position, it is to extend on as circumstances point out, may from thence advance on a front 1-5th of its extended one (as the several battalion columns are now 5 divisions in depth), and may then deploy into line, as near to the enemy as appears safe.—In such state of deployment the troops have not much to apprehend, as they are in a situation to resist any sudden attack; nor until they do begin to deploy, can the enemy provide against, or determine what position they will take up, as 4-5ths of their number may be thrown to either hand, and as an oblique direction may readily be given by the previous placing of the several battalion columns in such intended direction, which is an easy operation.

Fig. 106. E.

S. 188. *Oblique Deployments.*

Oblique deployment.

The deployment of the close column into a line OBLIQUE to the one on which its head then stands may in some situations be required where circumstances do not permit of the previous operation of placing

placing the column perpendicular to ſuch line; as when a wing is to be lengthened out but refuſed, or an enemy's flank to be gained by throwing forward one or more battalions which have advanced in cloſe column behind the point of a wing; or when the nature of the ground on which the column ſtands demands a deployment that will give a ſupport to a flank, or preſerve the advantage of a poſition. Fig. 112.

Such deployments muſt be made by the troops as ſtanding in one column, and by the whole as if one battalion, according to the mode preſcribed for it; they do not apply to battalions ſeparated and ſtanding in maſs on the ſame line. If more than one or two battalions take up an oblique line, it will require great attention in the commanders to preſerve order, and to form with juſtneſs.—Such formations are required on the front diviſion of the column; hardly on the rear or on a central one, the attendant difficulties are ſufficiently obvious: The column muſt be well cloſed up, and two companies in front.—Whenever circumſtances permit the column to be placed perpendicular to its line of formation it muſt always be done: oblique formations are unavoidable exceptions.

S. 189. *If a Battalion close Column of Companies should be required to form the Square.*

Fig. 108. B. The column being halted with the usual interval of one pace between the companies, receives the cautionary command to FORM THE SQUARE, on which the front half of the companies in the column take one pace forward ; the first company then falls back to the second one pace, and the 2 last companies close up 1 and 2 paces to the company before them. The whole companies make an interval of 2 paces in their center, by their sub-divisions taking each one pace to the flanks ; 2 officers with their serjeants place themselves on each of the front and rear intervals ; 2 officers with their serjeants also take post in each of the encreased intervals in the center of the sides ; and a serjeant takes the place of each flank front rank man of the first division, and of each flank rear rank man of the last division ; all the other officers, serjeants, displaced men, drummers, &c. &c. assemble behind the center of the companies which are to form the flank faces.—On the word OUTWARDS FACE, the two rear companies face outwards, and 4 files (supposing the companies of 12 files each) on each flank of all the companies (except the first and last) also face outwards, the whole lining with the flanks of the front companies, and dressing in ranks from front to rear.—At the word Q. MARCH, the 5th file from each flank of all the companies except the 2 first and 2 last, followed by the front rank

rank man of the 6th file, move up to right and left, and respectively fill up the intervals between the flanks of their own and the preceding division; the remainder of the men of the side divisions arrange themselves to their right and left, forming close in the rear of their own divisions respectively.—The whole thus stand faced outwards, and formed at least 4 deep, with 2 officers and their serjeants in the middle of each face to command; all the other officers, as well as serjeants, &c. &c. are in the void space in the center behind their companies; and the files of the officers in the faces may be completed by serjeants, &c. &c. from the interior, in such manner as the commandant may direct.—The mounted field officers must pass into the center of the column, by the rear face, if necessary, opening from its center 2 paces, and again closing in.—When ordered, the 2 first ranks all round the column will kneel and slope their bayonets; the 2 next ranks will fire standing, and all the others will remain in reserve; the file coverers behind each officer of the sides will give back, and enable him to stand in the 3d rank.—Whatever is the strength of the companies which compose the flank sides, the whole of them will face outwards except their 4 center files, which are always reserved for filling up the intervals.

To reduce the square.—On the word FORM CLOSE COLUMN, the files that faced outward will come to their proper front, and the files that moved into the intervals will face about.—At the word Q. MARCH, the grenadiers take one pace forward, and the 2 rear companies take one and two paces forward, and then face about; the files from the intervals take their proper places; officers, serjeants, &c. will quit the interior, move to their several stations, and the companies that composed the flank faces will be completed; the companies will also close inwards by subdivisions one pace.

S. 190. *When ſeveral cloſe Columns are formed form Parts of the ſame Line.*

The parts of the line which are to compoſe each column are named; each battalion forms a cloſe column on one of its own named diviſions: The ſeveral battalion cloſe columns march by a flank, and place themſelves before or behind the directing battalion of that general column to which they are to belong.

S. 191. *If ſeveral conſiderable cloſe Columns are halted at accidental Diſtances, but with their Heads dreſſed, and*

Fig. 113. 114. *are ordered to form in one Line.*

At whatever diſtance the heads of the cloſe columns are halted from each other, the ſeparate battalions will move up into line, each column upon its own named battalion: The point and diviſion on which the whole are to form will be named: The whole will extend from it: The diſtances and commencement of movement will be taken from the named point, ſo that the outward battalions may move ſucceſſively

ceſſively as it becomes neceſſary to preſerve their diſtances from the inward ones.—Or, the adjutants taking their points from the given one of *appui*, the columns will in the mean time be previouſly ſo placed as not to croſs or interfere in the march; the battalions of each will then diſengage, march, enter, and form on the line.

S. 192. *If two Columns halted at open, half, or quarter Diſtance are to exchange*
Fig. 115. E. *Places.*

The diviſions of each will face inwards and file; when they have nearly approached each other, one of them halts, the other continues in march, and paſſes through the intervals of the halted one.—Both columns then move on until they arrive, halt, and front on the ground which each other occupied, and which has been properly marked and preſerved for them: during this flank march, the heads of the files are kept nearly dreſſed, and are regulated in each column by the 2 leading diviſions.—This operation is neceſſary when a line is to be taken up and formed on facing the reverſe way to what the columns then do; and if ſuch line is in the rear of

the columns they also countermarch their divisions by files, in order to enter and prolong it.—This mode of columns exchanging situation, which is equivalent to the passage of lines, may be required on several occasions.

S. 193. *When two Columns are to form in*
Fig. 115. *Line in any given Position.*

Points are prepared.—The columns, by marching, countermarching, exchange of situation by files, or by whatever other operation is necessary, are brought up with their heads to the given points in the new line; the columns close up: the battalions disengage, place themselves on the new line: the division or divisions of formation are named, and the whole relatively deploy into line.—Or, points being prepared by the several adjutants, the battalions will disengage at a due distance, march on their respective points, and form in line.

S. 194.

S. 194. *If there are two Columns, composed each of Parts of two Lines, which are to form.*

Fig. 114.

The battalions of the ſecond line will halt at a proper diſtance from the firſt, and deploy or form in line in the ſame manner as the firſt one does.—Or, if the firſt line is to form facing to the rear, the ſecond one will have to proceed and to paſs it, in order to arrive at its relative ſituation.

If two lines march off to the front in 2, 3, or 4 columns, each compoſed of part of the two lines; advance at certain diſtances from each other to where their heads enter on 2 given parallel lines; wheel their heads to a flank into, and prolong thoſe lines to any extent: Then, as the columns of each line have of courſe joined each other, the whole will be moving in 2 columns of lines, ready to form by a wheel-up to the flanks, when the object of the movement is accompliſhed, which probably may be that of out-flanking, or turning the flank of an enemy.

If two lines, marching in columns of lines to a flank, are unexpectedly obliged to make front to that flank, then the new lines will be compoſed each of part of the old ones, by forming up to right and left.

Echellon Movements of the Line.

Echellon movements of a great corps.

1. The Echellon movements of a great corps place it in an advantageous ſituation to diſconcert an enemy, to make a partial attack, or a gradual retreat. Different previous manœuvres muſt always have diverted the attention of an enemy, and prevented him from being certain of where the attack is to be made. It may be formed from the center, or from either of the wings reinforced: If ſucceſsful the diviſions move up into line to improve the advantage: If repulſed they are in a good ſituation to protect the retreat.—In advancing, the ſeveral bodies move independant, act freely, and are ready to aſſiſt: In retiring they fall gradually back on each other, and thereby give mutual aid and ſupport.

Strength of Echellons.

2. The Echellons of a line are according to its ſtrength, of one, two, or three battalions each.—Though their flanks ſeem multiplied they are not expoſed, as they cover each other; and if they are far aſunder they may be protected by artillery and cavalry relatively poſted.

Oblique march.

3. Echellons ſeen at a diſtance appear as if a full line: being ſhort and independant lines they can the eaſier march obliquely to out-wing an enemy, or to preſerve the points of appui to a wing; and ſuch movement may not be perceptible to an enemy.

Echellon formed on any diviſion.

4. The Echellon may be formed direct from line, on a flank or any central diviſion, either marching or halted, to front or rear.

5. The

Partial formations in Echellon.

5. The whole or only part of the line may be thrown into Echellon, and that either to the front or rear.—In the first case with a view to gain the flank of an enemy, or obtain a cross fire; in the second to refuse or cover one's own flank.

Directing point.

6. When the Echellon is unconnected with a line, the advanced flank or division regulates all its movements; when attached to a line, it must depend on the motions of that line.

7. The same general principles of movement and formation apply to all Echellons similarly formed, however great or small they may be, and whether they are acting to the front or the rear.

General directing points of great Echellons in movement.

8. Echellons of half battalions or less move forward by their directing flank, which is always the one advanced from, or wheeled to.—Echellons of battalions move by their advanced serjeants.—Echellons of several battalions move in line each by its own center, and the whole by the battalion next the directing flank.

Change of directing flanks, or divisions of the Echellon.

9. By at any time halting the Echellon the leading division may be changed, and instead of one flank the other may be made the advanced one: Or, instead of an Echellon formed from a flank, it may be converted into an Echellon formed from the center; this is effected upon any named division, by the relative and perpendicular movements of the others to front or rear.—In this operation when the Echellon is a direct one, the divisions of it will exactly pass each other's flank: when it is an oblique one, which has been formed by wheeling, a part of each in passing will necessarily be intersected by the one preceding it, and must therefore double in passing, and afterwards extend into its proper place.

S. 195. *When a considerable Line changes to an Oblique Position by the Echellon March of Companies.*

1. *If the new line intersects any part of the old line.*—The battalion so intersected will make its change of position on that fixed point (flank or central (S. 159. 161.); and all the others will march in Echellon whether forward or backward to their respective points in the new line, before they successively begin to form in it. (S. 162.)

Fig. 77.

2. *If the new line intersects the prolongation of the old line.*—A point will be given in the new line where the leading flank is to be placed.—The leading division will be wheeled so that it may move perpendicular on that point, and all the other divisions of the line will wheel up the same number of paces: the whole will march up in Echellon regarding their leading flank as a movable center, and as each battalion arrives at the new line it will halt, and form in it by a new interior arrangement. (S. 157.)

Fig. 79.

In these changes of position, the whole Echellons of a line are situated, and may be considered relatively the same as the platoons or echellons of a battalion: the whole move together and connected at the ordinary step; each battalion arrives successively at its point in the new line, and each as soon as it arrives begins its formation on it.——So that whether it is the battalion or a line which so changes, the march is made with precision, and each Echellon forms up in succession.

S. 196.

S. 196. When the Line marches obliquely outwards in Echellon of Companies, and changes Pofition inwards to move upon a Flank which it has gained.

The line formed and halted marches to the flank in Echellon of companies (*S.* 155,) forms in line parallel to the one it quitted (*S.* 156.) and if it then inftantly makes an oblique change of pofition, (*S.* 159.) it will be placed in a fituation to march forward with the greateft advantage on the weak point of the enemy.——Or according to the diftance from the point of attack; the line after refuming its parallel fituation may move forward a given fpace, then make its oblique change of fituation, and again march on in the new direction it has acquired, on the enemy's flank. Fig. 86.

S. 197. *When from Line parallel to an Enemy, considerable Echellons advance from a Flank to the Front.*

The diviſions of the line and the diſtance of Echellons being announced; the flank Echellon moves
Fig. 118. 119. on; when it has taken the given number of paces, the next one follows, and thus ſucceſſively till the whole is in motion; the whole halt, when the leading Echellon halts.

1. Two under officers from each following Echellon will march in the line of each preceding one, ſo as to ſtop (when the preceding one does) in its juſt prolongation, and at the points at which the inward
Fig. 118. flank and center of the following one is to be halted when it is required to move up into line, and whoſe poſition in ſuch line muſt be thereby eaſily and accurately determined.——If the Echellon is compoſed of more than one battalion, the others, when ſuch detached under officers ſtop, will ſend forward to mark alſo their ſeveral centers in the prolonged line.

2. It depends alone on the conductor of the leading Echellon when it halts, to give it ſuch a direction that its prolongation ſhall paſs before the enemy's front; and if the others are to move up into line, and are then within reach of the enemy's fire, it is evident how much care each muſt take, not to throw forward its outward flank, and be thereby expoſed to an enfilade.

3. Not-

3. Notwithſtanding every meaſure taken to obtain exact parallel lines, the following Echellons muſt, and on the march will be guided by and conform to the leading one; their great object is to preſerve in moving on, their parallel and relative ſituations, their ordered diſtances, and proper flank interval: In this they are to act in the ſame manner as when advancing in line, and having the leading Echellon to guide them, together with the aſſiſtance of the mounted officers who attend to their movements, and prevent their outward flanks from being thrown too forward; they will execute with juſtneſs this important manœuvre.—The preſervation of intervals is alſo as eſſential an attention, as in the attack in line.

4. *When large Echellons* having marched forward are to wheel up to their advanced flank, and form in line oblique to the one from which they departed. The outward flanks which are to be the ſtanding ones, muſt be halted as ſoon as each touches the line on which the formation is to be made: and for this purpoſe a line muſt be ready marked by advanced officers (prolonged from the leading Echellon) on which ſuch flank is to halt, and on no account to paſs it.—Each Echellon forms in line by a change of poſition on that flank: but if there is not a previous arrangement of diſtances, and a degree of doubling of each in proportion to the intended obliquity of the line, there will be encreaſed intervals between the Echellons. Fig. 119.

S. 198. *When a Line formed on, and beyond an Enemy's flank, moves to the Attack in great Echellons.*

The Echellon which is then placed perpendicular to the point of the enemy's flank will move on, the reſt will ſucceſſively follow it, from each hand, and at their preſcribed diſtance; the Echellons on one
Fig. 124. flank will be refuſed, and on the other they will advance beyond the leading one, to envelope the enemy.

From whatever ſituation of Echellons a body is placed in; a CHANGE in thoſe Echellons may be inſtantly produced, by altering the leading one, and all the others immediately taking new relative poſitions to conform to it.

S. 199. *When a Line formed in front of, and obliquely to the Enemy, is to move forward from a flank to the Attack in great Echellons parallel to the Enemy.*

The number of Echellons and ſtrength of each being aſcertained and announced, the Echellous will naturally be formed to and led by the advanced flank. —As the oblique Echellons of a battalion are formed by the wheels of each company; ſo the oblique Echellons of a line are formed by wheeling up the 8th file of each flank company of each Echellon a given number of paces, and then correctly dreſſing the company to it; the other companies of the battalion or body which compoſe the Echellon, wheel each their 8th file half that number of paces, dreſs up to it, and the whole march and ſucceſſively line upon the prolongation of the given one, proceeding as in the Echellon change of poſition of one or more battalions on a fixed flank. (Sec. 159.) Great pains muſt be taken in the correct placing of the flank directing diviſion of each Echellon. Fig. 120. 121.

1. It muſt be obſerved that when the *Echellons* have been formed from the *oblique* line, ſo as to ſtand parallel to the enemy's front, they will be doubled behind each other in proportion to the degree of wheel made, and that were they to move directly forward to form in line with the leading one, a portion of each would be thereby cut off, and the general extent of the line reduced.—To endeavour by obliquing in the courſe of marching to rectify this de-

feſt,

fect, would be very difficult, and is hardly to be attempted: It muft be remedied either by an early attention to taking the neceffary and greater intervals than ufual before forming the oblique line: or, before the whole advances, making the Echellons take ground to the flanks, and place themfelves in their proper relative fituations, as they would be when formed from parallel line: This done the whole may move on, either from the advanced or retired flank, and when proper, march up into parallel line: Should this not be done, part of each Echellon would of courfe be excluded on forming the general line, and muft remain behind it.—The line may alfo be formed (provided the front Echellon halts in a fituation that will allow it); by each other one at that inftant making fuch a change of direction backward on its regulating flank, as will allow it to march perpendicularly forward to its proper point in the new line, where by another change of direction forward it will take up the prolongation of the leading Echellon.

2. Whether the original line is formed *parallel* or *oblique* to the enemy's front, the Echellons before marching are always to be placed perpendicular to the line on which they are to move.——From this fituation a diagonal march on the enemy's flank may be made, and in fuch cafe large Echellons muft be broke into companies; but it is an operation difficult in the execution, that would require much circumfpection, and if attempted too near would be very dangerous, as the flank thrown up is much expofed to the enemy's enfilade.

3. This ATTACK can be at once formed from a column of march, or the open column of a line, which is prolonging a direction upon, and oblique to that of the enemy.—The column will halt, wheel into line,

line, and without any ſenſible pauſe the leading flank of each Echellon will wheel up parallel to the enemy, the other diviſions of the line will each wheel the half of that ſpace, and move on into their ſeveral Echellons, the whole will then be ready to advance led by any named Echellon. Fig. 121.

The ATTACKS of conſiderable bodies are almoſt always conducted on the principles of the ECHELLON; there are few ſituations where the whole could act at the ſame time, or where it would be prudent or eligible ſo to do: they are therefore made by fractions of a line well ſupported and reinforced.

S. 200. *With reſpect to the Enemy, and the intended Movement*; *the* ECHELLON *poſition may be taken from the*	*Parallel* *Oblique* *Column*	*Poſition.*

1. *If from the line parallel to the enemy.*—It is previouſly divided into the ſeveral Echellons which are to compoſe it; and the diſtance at which they are to remain behind each other is announced.—The reinforced flank or center which is to attack is then ordered to advance; each Echellon of 2 or more battalions moves on when the preceding one has gained the

the ordered diſtance of (perhaps 100) paces, and thus being regulated by the head, acts according to the event of the attack.

2. *If from the line oblique to the enemy.*---This poſition having been taken from the column of march, or in the courſe of advancing in line; and the diviſions of the Echellons being aſcertained; they are formed by wheeling up parallel to the enemy and to each other: The advanced or retired wing reinforced may then proceed to the attack, and ſupported by the others will act according to circumſtances.------ One may attack upon any degree of obliquity, and by abſolutely refuſing one wing, place it in a ſituation the more readily to protect a retreat ſhould it be neceſſary, and which will be greatly ſtrengthened if a point of appui can be given to ſuch refuſed wing.

Fig. 120. 121.

3. *If from columns halted perpendicular or nearly ſo to the enemy.*---Their heads are halted at given relative points, and given diſtances; the attacking bodies form in one or more lines; the others extend to the flank in Echellon, being ſeparated perpendicularly a ſpace equal to the diſtances they halted at in their ſeveral columns: This ſpace is augmented if neceſſary when the whole move on, and lines of two or more battalions each are thus formed.---From the Echellon poſition by flank marching the order of column may again be reſumed.

Fig. 122. 123.

4. *The advanced Echellon* being arrived at its object, the attack begins, and the others attend the event.---If it ſucceeds they move up into line to perfect it.---If it fails, each falling back on each is ſtrengthened and ſupported every inſtant of the retreat; this will generally be done by the Echellons in the courſe of retiring, at the ſame time making a gradual wheel backwards on the poſted flank of the corps,

corps, from which the fire of artillery will much check and enfilade an advancing enemy.

5. *The second line* when there is one, follows in every thing the Echellon movements of the firſt.---The battalions make the ſame degree of wheel, preſerve the ſame relative poſition, and ſerve as a ſupport to the firſt; the attack of the ſecond line moves on therefore at the ſame time with that which it is to ſupport.---The Echellons of one or more lines are generally retired from 100 to 150 paces, each behind the one preceding of its own line.---When neceſſary the Echellons of the firſt line may retire through thoſe of the ſecond and be relieved in the attack.

6. *Where a line is paſſing a defile to the front, and from or near its center.*---After paſſing it may firſt form at the head of the defile, in the Echellon poſition; the ſeveral diviſions are then ready to move up into line, or by wheels towards the flanks to form in oblique lines, and protect thoſe flanks.---It may alſo in the ſame manner paſs a defile to the rear retiring from the flanks by Echellon, while the center protects the movement.

7. *When the line has to advance a conſiderable diſtance in front*, it may occaſionally be done with much convenience in a degree of Echellon poſition, by each battalion being retired 5 or 6 paces or more behind its preceding one.---The battalion of direction is the leading one, which muſt march with the greateſt exactneſs, and when ſo ordered, the whole can in an inſtant move up into line.

8. *A line* B, *formed parallel or oblique* to the enemy E, threatens and commences an Echellon movement from its left; but on the arrival of the left at a favourable point of appui C, the whole halt, and an

 Echellon

Echellon attack from the right (which has been ſtrengthened) then begins; this attack D, having been ſupported as long as is proper and having failed, the whole fall back in Echellon F, on the left which remains poſted.-------From this ſituation an oblique line G, is taken to the left and from the left, by each adjutant marking his own right in the prolonged line: the battalions ſucceſſively again retire, and then break into column the left in front, march behind each other, enter at their adjutants, and take up the new line.---This poſition G, may be quitted by throwing back the left of the line; retiring by alternate lines; or in any other manner as circumſtances may require.

MARCH OF THE LINE IN FRONT.

General intentions. 1. The chief object of every other movement is the quick and juſt formation into line when neceſſary, and the conſequent advance of that line in front towards the enemy.------If the correct march of a ſingle battalion requires ſo much attention and preciſion, it is evident that theſe muſt be redoubled to procure the juſt movement of a line, which is the operation that immediately leads to the enemy, and is the moſt difficult, and material of all manœuvres.---To hurry and bring up troops to the attack in imperfect order is to loſe every advantage which diſcipline propoſes, and to preſent them to the enemy in that very ſtate, to which after his beſt efforts he has hoped to reduce them.

2. The

2. The ſame principles that direct the march of the battalion direct that of the line; beſides which ſeveral peculiar obſervances are required, and in proportion as difficulties encreaſe, muſt attention be given.

3. No body of troops can advance in line with firmneſs and order, unleſs the original formation of that line has been perfectly ſtraight, and its correct preſervation during the march requires every attention. Juſtneſs of the line.

4. The cadence of the march is not to be altered by particular battalions; but when it is neceſſary each will lengthen or ſhorten its ſtep by word from its own commander. Cadence.

5. The march, and halt, and attention in line of the officers and men of each battalion, are by its own center; the commander alone regards the regulating battalion.—Dreſſing to a flank is by a ſeparate direction, and given when neceſſary and proper after halting. Attentions.

6. Battalions in line, marching over heights, or acroſs valleys, will require more time to paſs them, than others who are moving on the ſame extent, but of level ground; in order to preſerve equality of front, the laſt muſt therefore in general be ordered to ſhorten their ſtep. March.

7. The march of a conſiderable body in line can only be at the ordinary ſtep, a quicker movement would produce diſorder, nor could artillery well attend its motions when advancing to the enemy: But there are ſituations, where a brigade or ſmaller front ſhould move on to a particular object or to an attack General pace.

at a lengthy ſtep, or where even a quicker cadence may be required from them.

Intervals. 8. When a line of ſeveral battalions is formed and halted; there is an interval of 12 paces between each for two pieces of artillery; the men are generally dreſſed to a flank; ranks are cloſed up; the whole ſtand ready for movement; and for which the directing ſerjeant of each has prepared himſelf as required in the ſingle battalion.

S. 201. *When the Line is to march in Front.*

One of the battalions is *named* as the regulating one, to whoſe movements all the reſt are to conform. —The *Commander* of the line is himſelf with that battalion, every precaution as already preſcribed is taken to enſure its perpendicular march, and its directing ſerjeants are ordered to advance.

THE LINE WILL ADVANCE.

At a *Caution* quickly circulated, that THE LINE WILL ADVANCE, the directing ſerjeants of each other battalion, move out their 6 paces; it is almoſt impoſſible that they ſhould not halt in perfect line; but if any ſmall alteration is neceſſary, the ſerjeants on either ſide of the regulating one, being from that laſt ordered to move forward or backward as much as appears neceſſary for this correc-tion,

tion, will, together with the regulating one, give a line to which all the others will immediately conform.

The *Directors* of the march being thus placed parallel to the line, muſt take care that their bodies are perfectly ſquare to the front, and they will again remark their near points of march, for they muſt not look out for diſtant ones, but take ſuch as accidentally occur on the ground; thoſe of the battalion of direction are not liable to be altered, but all the others are to be conſidered only as relative helps to begin the march, ſubordinate to thoſe of the regulating battalion, and liable to be changed from the inſtant that they appear to the commander of the battalion to produce a movement which does not correſpond with the regulating one, whoſe march is here ſuppoſed accurate, and as juſtly taken as poſſible; for, ſhould that battalion take a falſe direction, univerſal diſorder muſt take place, unleſs it immediately aſſumes and perſeveres in a true one, perpendicular to the front of the general line.

From the circumſtances in which lines muſt generally be expected to move, as thick weather, ſmoke of cannon, duſt, &c. &c. it is evident that *diſtant* objects of march cannot be looked for or taken, nor any other obſerved than ſuch as are near, and derived from the eye and the ſquareneſs of the body moving upon them.

The *Commander* of each battalion is ten paces behind the rear rank, in the file of the directing ſerjeant, and will there remain; his adjutant is behind the flank next that of direction, and the major is behind the other flank.—The commander of the line, or ſome perſon that he appoints, is near the directing

directing ferjeant of the regulating battalion, and with coolnefs and judgement may make fuch fignal to the ferjeant of a neighbouring battalion as will gradually bring him forward or backward, and by then being a direction to the others, will tend to preferve the parallelifm of the line; but this correction is not to be attempted without great and gradual difcretion, and fo as not to occafion any confiderable alteration to a flank of the line.

MARCH. At the word MARCH given to the battalion of direction, and rapidly repeated, each battalion at the fame inftant is put in motion by its refpective center.

From the firft moment of movement the quickeft and greateft attention muft be given by the commanding officer to obferve whether the direction of the regulating battalion is juft; this will be feen in the courfe of 20 or 30 paces; for, if the reft of the line is moving fteadily, and that this battalion is clofing to one flank, and opening to the other, its direction muft be changed accordingly by advancing a fhoulder; but if the whole are fteady, or that the battalion is not altering within itfelf, or with refpect to the general line, its direction muft be perfevered in, and not afterwards changed. Till this circumftance is afcertained with refpect to the directing one, and which muft be immediately done, its contiguous battalions will make no alteration in their pofition.

2. The *Regulating* battalion muft be regarded as infallible, the commander of the line watches over it, and, from the moment that its direction is afcertained, the commander of each other, and their directing ferjeants, are to confider their movements as fubordinate to it, and to conform accordingly: It is the helm which guides the line, and muft not change cadence,

cadence, nor will it lengthen or ſhorten its ſtep, but from unavoidable neceſſity, and by particular order.

3. The inſtant communication of the word MARCH is particularly important, that the advanced ſerjeants of the whole may ſtep off together, and thereby maintain their line parallel to the one they quitted, and which becomes the principal guide for their battalions; each preſerves its 6 paces from its advanced ſerjeant; this diſtance is to be kept by, and depends on, the replacing officer next to the colour, who covers the directing ſerjeant; and if theſe trained ſerjeants do ſtep equally, and in parallel directions to each other, they muſt be dreſſed themſelves in line, and of conſequence the centers of their following battalions.

4. But as the *Flanks* of battalions are apt to be behind their centers, the majors and adjutants will particularly attend to this, and alſo the flank officers of each battalion, who, being unconfined in their perſons, may preſerve themſelves in the general line of the colours.—When a flank officer obſerves that the line drawn from himſelf, through the colour of his battalion, paſſes before the general line of colours, he may conclude that he himſelf is too much retired; but when ſuch line paſſes behind the line of colours, he may conclude he is too much advanced, and will regulate himſelf accordingly.—The great object in movement is to have the whole of each battalion perpendicular to the direction it marches upon, the whole of the ſeveral battalions in one ſtraight line, and their ſeveral marching directions parallel to each other.

5. As the movement of the *directing* battalion is infallible, and muſt be conformed to, and as the preſervation of intervals is the firſt and principal atten-

attention in the march in line, it is to that object, and of consequence to the direction of the march, that the exertion of the commanding officer of each battalion must be turned, and therefore the preservation of his interval, from the directing hand, is what will determine and regulate every alteration he orders, and from the warning of his adjutant he will be always apprized when the interval begins to increase or diminish. As to the other flank, he need never look towards it, that must necessarily follow and accommodate itself to the colours, under the correction of the major; but, previous to making any alteration, he is quickly and decidedly to observe whether the error arises in his own battalion, or whether it originates in one nearer than himself to that of direction; and which the battalion that alone has closed or opened to one flank will naturally remedy, by the counter movement, without affecting the order of the rest of the line.

6. The *regulating* battalion being supposed on the *right*, the commander of any other subordinate battalion, who finds himself closing the interval to the right, and that he ought to correct it, will instantly order the directing serjeant RIGHT SHOULDER FORWARD; or, if he is opening from the right, he will order LEFT SHOULDER FORWARD; these changes the serjeant makes by a small but gradual alteration in his own position, and of course must change his points of march towards the ordered hand—the degree of such change it is impossible to ascertain by words; but, by the subsequent movement of the battalion, the commander must farther correct it, if necessary; it must in all situations be very small, and will be proportionally greater or smaller, as made sooner or later after beginning to advance, or from the last time of correction.—If, for example, before he has marched 20 or 30 paces, the serjeant is ordered to change

change his direction, he may conclude that he had taken one confiderably wide of the true perpendicular; whereas, if it is ordered, after he has advanced 100, or 150 paces, he may judge that he has deviated but little from it. When fuch change of direction has effected the firft object, a very fmall *counter-change* will be generally required to preferve the diftance gained and the required front.—The replacing officer and colour in the center of the battalion will, on each command of change given to the directing ferjeant, make fuch relative movement as is neceffary to correfpond with his new pofition.

7. When a battalion is marching in a true direction, but that occafioned by the fault of others, an opening from, or clofing towards, the regulating battalion comes from that hand and muft be complied with, the word OBLIQUE (to right or left) is given; the battalion, without lofing its parallel front, or eyes being altered, obliques till it receives the word FORWARD, when the croffing of the ftep ceafes; and the directing ferjeant proceeds in full front, but in a line parallel to the one he quitted, and removed from it as far as the line did incline.

8. Should a battalion, from any partial reafon, be behind or before the line.—It will receive the words STEP OUT, or STEP SHORT, and when the line is regained the word ORDINARY.

9. In *correcting* the movements of battalions in the line much judgement muft be exercifed, and wherever the fault does originate the remedy fhould in general from thence begin.—The MARCH and HALT, and attention of each battalion in line is by its own colours, the commander alone is obfervant of the regulating one, and it is only from the centrical fituation prefcribed to him that he can truly adjudge and

and remedy the beginning of defects.—The major and adjutant, by being close to the rear rank, can keep up the flanks.

10. A battalion which is near to the point of appui, or the point of attack, will in general be the *regulating one*, therefore a flank battalion will commonly direct the movements of the line, and should the commander change it, he must announce such change.

11. In the course of marching should an *obstacle* break the center of the regulating battalion, immediately before such operation takes place, one of the battalions near it must be named to the adjoining ones (but not necessarily to the rest of the line) as replacing it, and may continue to direct in future, or, at least, till the colours of the former one have, after passing the obstacle, again regained their true position in the original direction, and which, by the operation of detached persons, must have been truly found and traced for them.—Whatever impediments present themselves to the march of the line will be avoided by the peculiar battalions, according to the modes already prescribed, and the openings made by such parts as are obliged to quit the line will be carefully preserved, in order to their re-entering into it as soon as the ground permits.

HALT. The *Line* thus marching in perfect order is at every moment prepared to receive the word HALT given to the regulating battalion, and in the most instantaneous manner circulated by the commanders of each other battalion, who, constantly looking towards the regulating one, can lose no time in its repetition.—The whole halt firm at the instant the word

word is given, and no dreſſing or correction of intervals ſhould take place (till ſo directed), but the line ſhould be ready immediately, and without farther preparation, to commence its FIRE.—The advanced ſerjeants on the halt fall back to the battalions.

S. 202. *When the Line is to Dreſs.*

DRESS. If the *Commander* gives the word DRESS, it is immediately to commence from the center of each battalion, the men looking to their own colours, and the correcting officers lining them upon the colours of their next adjoining battalion; the platoon officer on the left of the colours performs this operation for the left wing by placing his own platoon in the direction of the colour to his left; and the officer on the left of the right wing (or if there is none ſuch the center directing ſerjeant) performs this for the right wing, by placing the platoon beyond him in a line with the next right colour: this done without delay, and without too much nicety, the wings of each battalion immediately conform to their two placed platoons, towards whom they are then looking.

By

By this means, when a ſingle battalion halts, it is dreſſed on its right center company, and is therefore in a ſtraight line.—Two battalions thus dreſſing from their ſeveral centers on each other's colours, and their outward wings conforming, muſt therefore be in a ſtraight line.—When 3 or more battalions thus dreſs from the center of each on its next colour, if all the colours happen to have halted in a line, the general line will be ſtraight; but if they have halted irregularly, then the portions of the line between each 2 colours will be ſtraight, and no flank will be expoſed, which is giving it the beſt firing ſituation that diſpatch and circumſtances may allow.—In this operation the two center dreſſers of each battalion muſt be very alert.

DRESS. But if the commander finds it neceſſary to give a more exact *dreſſing*, he immediately orders the firſt colour of one of the adjoining battalions to move out two or three paces, to be planted upright, and the bearer to FACE towards him.—He then himſelf advances a pace or two, and plants the colour of the regulating battalion, ſo that the line of the two prolonged ſhall occaſion as little change as poſſible at the diſtant flanks, conſiſtent with his views; the colours and flank officers of the other battalions inſtantly move into that line, all the colours facing to the regulating battalion, and the flank officers to their own colours. So many fixed points being thus aſcertained, the platoon officers are immediately ordered to cover in it, facing to their own colour, and the men of each battalion to move up, as preſcribed for the ſingle battalion.

The

The advantage that arises, if platoon officers can at once take their covering and distances from the left, has been already mentioned.

The line may also be correctly dressed, by one colour of a battalion near the directing one advancing a few paces; one colour of the directing battalion is then placed in the intended line; a colour from each other battalion immediately prolongs this line.—The grand divisions of each battalion are then successively dressed from their own colour upon the adjoining one.

With practice and alertness, the *dressing* of a line of very considerable extent may be quickly and readily accomplished; but the correction of an improper interval is not to be done without the side movement of every thing beyond it, which is no easy operation, and shews the necessity of the most indefatigable attention being given to this object; every increased interval presents a weak point, which is studiously to be avoided; and every ill-dressed line in movement will naturally create such intervals; nor is such a line in a proper situation to march up to an enemy whom its fire may have shaken, for disorder must attend its unconnected movements.

S. 203. *When the Line is to retire.*

When the Line is to retire the neceffity of its being previoufly correctly dreffed is full as effential as when it is to advance; if that preliminary is not taken care of, its movements muft be difordered in proportion to its extent.—The feveral battalions will prepare for the retreat in the manner prefcribed for the fingle one, by receiving the caution that the *line will retire*, and then by *facing* to the *right about*.

THE LINE WILL RETIRE.

But, as there may not always be time to give it the wifhed-for degree of exactnefs before the *Retreat* begins, fuch aids may be applied as will greatly affift it in the courfe of its movement.—On the caution that the LINE WILL RETIRE, the directing ferjeants, &c. move to the rear 6 paces, taking their feveral directions as already prefcribed, one of the colours next the regulating battalion will be confidered as a fixed point, the colour of the regulating battalion will then be placed, fo that the prolongation of the line which unites the two fhall give the required front of the march; the other advanced ferjeants and colours, without regard to diftance from their refpective battalions, will place themfelves on this line.—The line then

FACES

R. ABOUT FACE. MARCH.	FACES to the RIGHT about.—At the word MARCH, the whole move on, the advanced ſerjeants preſerving their poſition and line, and the battalions by degrees acquire their juſt diſtance of 6 paces from them.

When the *Line*, in moving to the front, *halts* and renews its march, without any previous dreſſing, the ſame method may without delay, be employed to regulate its advanced ſerjeants, before the word MARCH is given.

HALT, FRONT.	*When the Line is to front*, each battalion receives the word HALT—FRONT, and immediately faces about; if it is then to move forward, the colours and ſerjeants are ordered to advance before the front rank, and are there correctly lined, ready to conduct its march.—But if it is to remain halted, the dreſſing is then ordered in the manner already preſcribed.

1. Notwithſtanding every direction that can be given for the *march* of the *line* in *front*, the ſucceſs of its execution will totally depend on the complete dexterity and training of its component parts; on the quick eye and ready deciſion of the commanders of battalions; on the accurate cadence, length of ſtep, and lines of march taken by the ſeveral advanced ſerjeants, and by the battalions; together with the perfect ſquareneſs of each individual's perſon; all theſe juſtly combined are neceſſary to procure that preciſion which is not unattainable, and is ſo eſſential in this moſt difficult and important movement.

For

For the halt taking place near to the enemy, and when the firing ſhould begin, there is no time then to rectify errors, and redreſs the line, but every thing muſt remain in the ſituation of that inſtant; and though a line a little irregularly halted may not be deficient in fire, yet it will preſent expoſed flanks of battalions, and will not be in a ſtate to advance farther without diſorder, or without firſt correcting its front, even ſhould an enemy give way.

2. Although no *Caution* ſhould ever be given before the HALT of the ſingle battalion, yet it might ſometimes help to aſſiſt that of the line, if there was not a danger that, in permitting it, the march of the line would be habitually made with leſs accuracy, truſting to this correction, than if an inſtant *halt* was always to be expected; for, this ought to be required of a line of any given extent; and experience has ſhewn that it is to be attained when made with great attention, and on juſt principles.

3. *Echellons* of attack have generally a conſiderable front, as of three or four battalions, and equal to that, of the part of the body, againſt which they are directed.—But was a *Line*, in order to render its movements eaſier, to advance up to an enemy's line in echellon of battalion, retired five or ſix paces behind each other, although perhaps the intervals might be taken with ſufficient correctneſs, yet in ſuch ſituation flanks would be liable to be thrown up, the general line not ſo well attained, and the battalions as they halted would be expoſed to an oblique, as well as direct fire, till the others came up.—The firſt part of a movement in front may be made in *Echellon* of battalions, but the *Line* ſhould be completed before the laſt ſteps of it approach near to an enemy; for, nothing can then ſupply the place of, or be depended on, but the accurate *March* in *Line*, acquired from attentive habit, and juſt training.

4. *A change*

4. *A change* in the direction of a line, when the whole is in movement, can never be confiderable; and muft be made gradually, with great attention, and on the fame principles as thofe of the battalion. (*S.* 169.) Change of direction.

5. When the line is advancing in full front, or in Echellon, for any confiderable diftance, the *Mufic* of one regulating battalion may at intervals be permitted to play for a few feconds at a time, and the drums of the other battalions may be allowed occafionally to roll. Mufic.

6. Although a fingle battalion may, by opening its companies and files, *from 3 deep form 2 deep*, by introducing its rear rank into the other two, yet a confiderable line pofted, which is to be lengthened out to one or both flanks by its rear rank, muft to greater advantage perform fuch operation, by each company wheeling the fub-divifions of its rear rank backward, and facing to the hand they are to march to; the laft rank of each company clofes up to its firft; the fub-divifions of each battalion move up to open diftances from their refpective head ones, and from each other; officers from the rear are appointed to command them; thofe of each, or of every two battalions being confidered as a battalion, they march on in column and prolong the line. By this mode of lengthening out the line, the two front ranks remain undifturbed, and they protect the movement which is made unfeen behind them. Rear rank lengthening out a line.

S. 204. *When a confiderable Line has to pafs a Bridge or Defile.*

Line paffing defiles.

1. It will proceed in the manner prefcribed for (and as if it was) a fingle battalion, in paffing to front or rear.

—

2. When there are feveral bridges or defiles to be at once paffed, the line will be divided into relative portions, each compofing a paffing column.

3. When fuch movements are performed in prefence of an enemy, the fafety and protection of them by artillery and pofted troops is a matter of previous difpofition.

Advancing lines.

4. As the lines of infantry are generally formed not nearer than 12 or 1500 paces from an enemy's pofition, unlefs peculiar circumftances of ground favour a clofer approach, there will often therefore be fuch obftacles to moving on, as befides the partial ones occurring to parts of battalions, may oblige large portions of the line to be again broken.—This becomes a matter of particular arrangement, in which the great object is the fubfequent quick formation of the troops, and where confiderable clofe columns, or redoubled lines of battalions at fmall diftances will be employed.—Such fituations are always hazardous if the enemy is fo pofted as to profit of the movement of paffing, or if favourable ground, and a fuperior artillery, do not oblige him to keep at a confiderable diftance.

5. Where

5. Where defiles are to be paſſed in approaching the poſition of an enemy, the mouths of them muſt be ſtrongly occupied; the columns of march muſt paſs on the greateſt front they will allow of, be previouſly arranged, well cloſed up, and ready to deploy in an inſtant. Columns of march.

6. When in preſence of an enemy, a retiring line is to break, and to paſs defiles in one or more columns, much ſteadineſs and diſpoſition are required.—The line approaches near to the defiles before it fronts; the object is to paſs quick, but without diſorder; commanding grounds are previouſly occupied, and flanks are covered; if bridges are to be paſſed, protecting artillery will be placed on the other ſide. Retiring lines.

S. 205. *When the Line advances or retires by half Battalions, and fires.*

1. *If the line is in march and advancing.*—On the order from the officer commanding the line, the left wings HALT, and the right ones continue to march 15 paces, at which inſtant the word MARCH being given to the left wings, the right at the ſame time are ordered to HALT, FIRE, and load, during which the left march on and paſs them, till the right wings, being loaded and ſhouldered, receive the word MARCH, on which the left ones HALT, FIRE, &c. and thus they alternately proceed.

 2. *If*

2. *If the line is in march and retiring.*—The right wings are ordered to HALT FRONT, and when the left ones have gained 15 paces, and receive the word HALT FRONT, the right wings are inſtantly ordered to FIRE, load, FACE ABOUT, and march 15 paces beyond the left ones, where they receive the word HALT FRONT, on which the left wings FIRE, &c. and thus alternately proceed.

General attentions.

3. In addition to the battalion directions (*S.* 177.) there muſt be a regulating battalion named, by the half battalions of which each line will move, halt, and fire: The commander of each line will be with ſuch half battalion, and in giving his ſeveral commands muſt have an attention to the general readineſs of the line, eſpecially after loading, that the whole are prepared to ſtep off together at the word MARCH. The firing of the advanced wing ſucceeds the MARCH, or the HALT, FRONT, of the retired wing inſtantly; and each half battalion fires independent and quick, ſo that no unneceſſary pauſes being made betwixt the firing words, the fire of the line ſhould be that of a volley as much as poſſible; and the whole being thereby loaded together, will be ready for the next command of movement.—In theſe firings of the line advancing or retiring, the two firſt ranks will fire ſtanding, and the rear rank ſupport their arms.

4. In this manner alſo may the alternate battalions of a line advance or retire, and when the whole are to form, and that the laſt line moves up to the firſt, every previous help of advanced perſons will be given to enſure its correctneſs.

S. 206. *Firing in Line.*

1. The chief object of fire against cavalry is to keep them at a distance, and to deter them from the attack; as their movements are rapid, a reserve is always kept up.—But when fire commences against infantry, it cannot (consistent with order, and other circumstances) be too heavy or too quick while it lasts, and till the enemy is beaten or repulsed. Object of fire.

2. The fire of 3 ranks standing is hardly, with our present arms to be required, especially if the ground should be broken, and that the soldiers are loaded with their knapsacks.

3. Where infantry are posted on heights that are to be defended by the fire of musquetry, the front rank will kneel, that one third of the fire that may be given should not be lost, for otherwise the rear rank in such situation could not sufficiently incline their pieces to raise the slope.—As soldiers generally present too high, and as fire is of the greatest consequence to troops that are on the defensive, and who are posted if possible on commanding grounds, the habitual mode of firing should therefore be rather at a low level than a high one; and the fire of the front rank kneeling, being the most efficacious as being the most raising, should not be dispensed with when it can be safely and usefully employed. Defensive fire.

4. When infantry marches in line to attack an enemy, and in advancing makes use of its fire; it is perhaps better to fire the 2 first ranks only standing, In line advancing.

reserving

reserving the third, than to make the front rank kneel and to fire the whole; but volleys fired at a considerable distance, or on a retiring enemy, may be given by the three ranks, the front one kneeling.

Platoon firing.

5. A line posted, or arriving at a fixed situation, will fire by *platoons*, each battalion independant, and such firing generally commencing from the center of each.—The first fire of each battalion will be regular, and establish intervals; after the first fire each platoon shall continue to fire as soon as it is loaded, independant and as quick as it can, till the battalion or line is ordered to cease.

File firing.

6. Behind a parapet, hedge, or abbatis, the two first ranks only can fire, and such fire may be *file firing*, deliberate and cool, the 2 men of the same file always firing together: It may begin from the right or left of platoons, and should be taught in situations adapted to it, not in open ground.—Should the parapet, hedge, or abbatis, be but little raised, platoon firing may be used.

Oblique firing.

7. *Oblique firing* by battalions is advantageous on many occasions, as when it is proper, or that time does not allow to give an oblique direction to part of a line, or that their fire can in this manner be thrown against the opening of a defile, the flanks of a column, or against cavalry or infantry that direct their attack on some particular battalion or portion of the line.

Regularity of firing.

8. As long as the fire by battalion, half battalion, or companies, can be kept up regular, it is highly advantageous and can be at any time stopped; but, should file-firing be allowed, and once begun, unless troops are exceeding cool and well disciplined, it will be difficult to make it finish, and to make them advance in order.

9. When

9. When a line halts at its points of firing no time is to be loſt in ſcrupulous dreſſing, and the firing is inſtantly to commence.—But a line that halts and is not to fire, or when its firing ceaſes after the halt, may immediately be ordered to dreſs from colours to colours.

10. The attention of the officers and non-commiſſioned officers of the rear to the locking up of the ranks in firing cannot be too often repeated.

S. 207. *When the Square or Oblong is compoſed of more than one Battalion.*

1. Two battalions may form column of companies, each behind its inward flank one, and cloſe the interval between them. The oblong when formed will be ſix deep, if the companies are at half diſtance and wheel outwards by ſub-diviſions, except the 2 firſt and 2 laſt which cloſe and face outwards: The grenadier and light companies may be conſidered as making no part of the oblong, but be applied according to circumſtances. Fig. 110. B.

2. If a greater degree of ſpace is required in the interior of the figure, the ſide columns will be of ſub-diviſions. and formed behind the 2d or 3d company from the inward flank; a proportional number of the laſt companies will compoſe the rear face; the oblong when formed will be 3 deep, and the grenadier and light companies will be in the interior, to be applied as is found neceſſary.

3. If

Fig. 108. C. 110. C. 3. *If 3 or more battalions are to form a ſquare or oblong.*—It depends on circumſtances what part of the line, whether flank or center, compoſes the front face, but the line is ſub-divided accordingly, and the parts of it protecting each other in the movement, march in echellon or column to take up their different ſituations.—The flank faces when the ſquare marches will move in columns of ſub-diviſions.—*When the ſquare is halted*, the 2 flank ſub-diviſions of each face wheel back the quarter circle, and obtain a croſs fire at the angles: The grenadier and light companies are ready to reinforce any particular part. *When the retiring ſquare* has arrived at a point where it can diminiſh in ſafety, the rear face may halt and front inwards; the ſide faces continue their march in column, and their heads if neceſſary unite; the front face, halts, fronts, when it arrives at the rear face; that face then retires in 2 columns, followed by the front face, which in this operation is protected by ſuch poſted companies as make the rear of the whole. *If the retiring ſquare* arrives at a favourable poſition, as a wood, heights, &c. which it is to occupy, the flank faces extend along it in columns of ſub-diviſions, protected by the other 2 faces, which afterwards take up their own ground. Theſe operations being ſuppoſed of neceſſity, will invert parts of the line, which muſt be afterwards remedied as opportunity offers.

4. *The ſquare or oblong* is a ſhape which infantry have at all times taken, when obliged in open ground to march in the face of cavalry.—Though the mode of placing one or two battalions in this manner may be preſcribed, yet the various formations, of which a greater number are ſuſceptible, depend on ground, the poſition of the troops, the movements of the enemy, &c. and muſt be made in conſequence of the local orders of the commander: It is therefore from circumſtances, and from the flexibility of

of the military order; that in an inſtant, he will determine into what ſhape the body which he conducts muſt be thrown.——Should ſuch bodies be at the ſame time liable to the united attacks of a very ſuperior infantry or artillery; ſuch ſituation would be critical indeed, and from which nothing but the moſt determined reſiſtance could extricate them.

Chequered Retreat of the Line.

1. *All manœuvres of a Corps retiring*, are infinitely more difficult to be performed with order, than thoſe in advancing.—They muſt be more or leſs accompliſhed by chequered movements; one body by its numbers or poſition, facing and protecting the retreat of another; and if the enemy preſſes hard, the whole muſt probably front in time and await him; as the ground narrows or favours different parts of the corps muſt double; mouths of defiles and advantageous poſts muſt be poſſeſſed; by degrees the different bodies muſt diminiſh their front, and throw themſelves into column of march when it can be done with ſafety.

2. *The chequered retreat*, by the alternate battalions or half battalions of a line going to the rear, while the others remain halted, cover them, and in their turn retire in the ſame manner, is the quickeſt mode of refuſing a part of a corps to the enemy, and at the ſame time protecting its movement, as long as it

it continues to be made nearly parallel to the firſt poſition.

3. If ſix battalions are in line, the 2d diviſion or the three even ones (2d, 4th, 6th) counting from the right, will go to the right about, retire in line about 200 paces, and then halt front, having carefully preſerved their intervals.—The two outward battalions of the retiring ones will each, when it firſt faces about, form a flank of its outward platoon.—As ſoon as the ſecond diviſion begins to retreat, all the battalions of the firſt one will immediately throw back their wing platoons 1-8th of the circle, and thereby when neceſſary procure a croſs fire in the intervals, and along the front.

Fig. 126.

4. When the 2d diviſion fronts, the firſt one moves up its flanks and is ordered to RETIRE through the intervals, and to form at an equal diſtance in the rear: As ſoon as the firſt diviſion arrives near the ſecond one; that ſecond one begins to *fire* by platoons ſtanding in the ſame manner as the firſt hath already done.—The wing platoons of all the ſecond diviſion battalions, place themſelves on the flank, as ſoon as the firſt diviſion hath paſſed them, and remain ſo, till their turn of retiring is again come.

5. *During the retreat* ſhould favourable heights or ſituations preſent themſelves to either of the diviſions, they ſhould be for the time occupied by the moſt contiguous battalions, who will halt, or incline as is neceſſary, without ſcrupulouſly adhering in that caſe to the alignement, or intervals; and any battalions that may happen to poſſeſs an advanced height, ſhould throw their wings back, and aligne them on their neighbouring battalions, that they may be flanked by ſuch battalions.

I 6. The

6. The retiring diviſion will move by a directing battalion, and any faults in the halt of the line can eaſily and muſt be corrected, before the other diviſion arrives at it.

7. The ſecond retiring diviſion having the intervals of the firſt to paſs and to move on, as a guide, can have no difficulty in its movement or direction.

8. During the retreat ſhould any of the flank platoons be ordered to preſerve their flank poſition, ſuch platoons will then march in file.

9. The operation is repeated till the commanding officer halts and fronts a retiring diviſion in the intervals of a ſtanding one.

10. *In the courſe of the chequered retreat, a poſition oblique to the original one may be taken up.*—The diviſion of the line which is to retire, after facing to the rear, will immediately wheel up its platoons (   ) paces, according to the degree of obliquity which will be required for the line, it will then march on in this echellon poſition, and, when ordered, form, as before directed (*S.* 157.) to the leading battalion, and front: The other diviſion of the line, when it is to retire, will perform the ſame movement, the battalions forming in their proper intervals, and completing the line as they ſeverally arrive at it.—Or the retiring diviſion, after facing to the rear, will march on, till arrived at the diſtance where one flank is to be poſted, it will there halt, and upon that flank inſtantly make a change of poſition by the Echellon march, and then front: The other diviſion will then retire in the ſame manner, till it arrives at the poſted one, and it will there inſtantly commence its change of poſition, take its place in the intervals, and front in full line.——From this ſituation the Fig. 126. B

parallel

parallel retreat may continue to be made, or a new oblique direction be again required.

11. In situations of retreat not very critical, the oblique position which the retiring division takes up, may be quickest and easiest gained by the filing of platoons.

12. *In the chequered retreat*, the following rules must be observed.—The battalions of the division nearest the enemy, will form flanks as soon as there is nothing in their front to cover them; but the other divisions will have no flanks except to the outward battalion of each. The battalions always pass by their proper intervals, and it is a rule in retiring, that the left of each shall always pass the right of the neighbouring one.—Whatever advantages the ground offers are to be seized, without being too critically tied down to intervals, or to the determined distance of each retreat.——The division next the enemy must pass in front, through the intervals of the division immediately behind, and any battalion that finds it necessary must incline for that purpose.——The retiring division must step out, and take up no more time than what is necessary to avoid confusion.——The division nearest the enemy *fires* by platoons standing: the flanks of its battalions only fire when the enemy attempts to push through the intervals; when that division retires, it fires on skirmishers by men detached from its light company if present, or from platoons formed of rear rank men of one or two of the companies and placed behind the flanks of the battalions. But should any of its battalions be obliged to halt and to fire, a shorter step must then be taken by the line; and should the enemy threaten to enter at any of its intervals, besides the fire of its

flanks,

flanks, ſuch platoons of the line behind it, as can with ſafety, muſt give it ſupport.

13. *If a line with reſerves,* finds it neceſſary to retreat in face of an enemy.——The alternate battalions and the reſerves will retire 200 or 300 paces, and then front. The other battalions will then retire: and when they join the firſt, the reſerves alſo will again march, and front at like diſtances, the reſerves always leading the retreat.——— This will continue, till it is proper or ſafe to break into column of march; the cannon and ſkirmiſhers of the whole, covering the front of the retiring line.

14. *Two full lines* will generally make their retreat by paſſing alternately through each other.——Or they may retire by the chequered movement of each line.

15. *If by the chequered movement*; and that the diſtance between the lines is 300 paces, each will give to its ſecond diviſion 150 paces for its retreat, and thus divide the diſtance.—When the ſecond diviſion of each line hath retired and fronted; the firſt diviſion of the firſt line will retire through the intervals of its own ſecond diviſion; it will then when it arrives at the firſt diviſion of the ſecond line paſs by files through the battalions of that diviſion; and in the ſame manner will it paſs through the intervals of the next diviſion; and when 150 paces in the rear of the whole, the platoons will halt, front, and wheel up into line.——The 2d diviſion of the firſt line having prepared its flanks, begins to retire, as ſoon as its own firſt diviſion hath paſſed the firſt of the ſecond line: That ſecond diviſion will march through the intervals of that firſt; it will then proceed and paſs by files through the battalions of the ſecond diviſion.

fion of the fecond line; it will continue in that fhape, and pafs through the intervals of its own 1ft divifion, which is by this time re-formed, and when at its 150 paces in the rear of the whole, the platoons will halt front, and wheel up into line.—The divifions of the fecond line proceed in their turn, exactly in the fame manner.

Passage of Lines.

In narrow grounds, where there are redoubled lines, and in many other fituations, it becomes neceffary for one battalion to PASS directly through another, in marching either to front or rear.—But this muft particularly happen, when a firft line, which has fuffered in action, retires through, and makes place for a fecond line which has come forward to fupport it;—or—the fecond line remaining pofted, when the firft falls back, and retires through it, and thus alternately, till a fafe pofition is attained.

Paffage of a firft line, when the fecond line advances.

Should the fecond line be ordered to advance, and occupy the ground which the firft is to quit.——As foon as it has approached within 20 paces, and halts, the *front line* battalions receive the word pafs to the rear; each platoon is ordered to face to the right, and difengage its head: at the word march, each platoon moves off in file, at a quick ftep to the rear, and paffes ftraight through the fecond line.—The officers of the retiring line having been cautioned that they are again to form at 150, or 200 paces from

Fig. 127. A.

from the other line, and having begun to take and count them from the paſſing of that line, will accordingly be ordered to halt and front; the officers place themſelves on the pivot flanks, take their juſt diſtances, and aligne to the front of the column, on the three or four firſt leading platoons, which will be inſtantly arranged in a true line by a mounted officer. Fig. 127. B.

Wherever the heads of the retreating files preſent themſelves, the officers of the ſecond line cauſe four files of their platoons to fall back, and again to reſume their places when the others have paſſed.—During the march to the rear, the heads of files muſt preſerve their accurate diſtances from the left, that when the column halts and fronts, it may immediately be in order to wheel up into line.

Paſſage of a firſt line, when the ſecond line is poſted.

If the ſecond remains poſted.—The *firſt* retires in front, till within 20 paces of the ſecond.—At the word paſs by files, each officer turns his platoon to the left—marches quick in file through the ſecond line, and halts fronts, at his determined number of paces from that line, by word of command.—The pivots of the column are dreſſed, and the platoons wheel up into line.

Re-forming the firſt line by a flank battalion.

When a line of ſeveral battalions hath paſſed in this manner, and fronted in column, it is neceſſary to dreſs their pivots correctly, before wheeling up into line.——The commander of the head battalion will inſtantly place the pivots of his three firſt platoons in a true direction, and order the officers of his other platoons to line on them, himſelf remaining with the head platoon as the point d'appui, will ſee that this is correctly done.——The firſt battalion thus ſteadied, will become a ſufficient direction for the ſecond, and every other one to prolong it by their adjutants; and this operation, though ſucceſſive from platoon

to platoon, and from battalion to battalion, may be performed quickly and correctly; if the adjutants are timeously detached, and if the head of the column is quickly arranged.

Re-forming the first line on a central battalion.

Should it be thought proper to give the *alignement from a central* (c), rather than a flank battalion.—In this case, after halting and fronting, the platoon pivots of the given battalion are from its head accurately lined by its commander, in the true direction.—This battalion being placed, from which distances and dressing are taken, the others will instantly proceed to line their pivot flanks upon it; those that are behind it will readily do this; those that are before it will find more difficulty, as they must take their distances from the rear;—to facilitate this, their platoon officers will face to the directing battalion, and will then successively take their distances and covering from their then front; as soon as each has acquired his true position, he will face about, and make his platoon join to and dress to him.—The line will then be ready to form by wheeling up to the pivot flank.

Fig. 127.

First line re-forms in an oblique position. Fig. 127.

Should a new position (D), not parallel, be taken by the passing battalions.——The commander, with his two leading platoons, will first enter it, and direct the others to regulate their flanks by them; and if several battalions are passing the second line, the NEW alignement is thus made easier for them.

Crowning a height.

When a height (E), in the rear is to be *crowned* by a retiring line.—Each officer must not dress exactly to the platoon that precedes him, but in joining it, he must *halt*, and arrange his own in such a manner, that the SLOPE of the rising can be entirely seen and commanded, which is here the great object, and

Fig. 127.

would

would not be attained if the troops were to adhere to a ſtraight line.

A line which hath paſſed, will often before forming, throw back a *wing*,—in order to occupy a particular poſition,—to prevent the enemy's deſigns on that wing; or at leaſt to make him take a greater detour to effect it,—or—that he may be obliged to aligne his own on a height which is occupied, and from which he may be flanked.

When the movement is foreſeen, and according to the wing which is to be refuſed, ſhould the platoons of the line paſs.——If the left is to be poſted, and the right refuſed, the platoons may paſs from their *left*, the column will thereby have its left in front, will be more readily directed on the point d'appui, and the preſervation of diſtances will be facilitated, as they will then be taken from the front. If the right is to be poſted, the platoons may paſs from their right.

The line (A B), is here ſuppoſed to *refuſe* its four right battalions (D), after having retired and paſſed as a column with its left in front.——All the battalions of the line to the left of the fourth, proceed as already directed, and take up their line from the left or head battalion, which, in the courſe of the movement, is conducted to the point d'appui, where its head is to reſt, and from whence the direction of formation is to be given; but the left of the fourth battalion becomes a new point d'appui, upon which the four battalions of the right are thrown back into any ſituation which the nature of the ground, and the views of the commander may require.

Refuſing a wing.

Fig. 128.

It may happen where the *paſſing* line is to *poſt* one flank, and *refuſe* the other, that the officers will have

 their

their distances to take from behind; the original remedy for this inconvenience has been shewn; another also may be readily applied, which is to halt the whole, at any time after passing, and to countermarch each platoon, which will then cause the future formation to be taken from the front of the column.

A retiring line may also *refuse* a wing, by forming in line very soon after passing, and then taking up an oblique position to the rear, by the echellon march, or some other of the modes already prescribed.

OF SECOND LINES.

1. No considerable body should ever be formed, without a proportion of it being placed in *reserve* or in *second line*, and more or less strong, according to circumstances.—The movements of such second line will always correspond to those of the first, and it will always preserve its parallelism, and distance.—If the first line makes a flank, or central change of position, the second must make a change also on such point, as will bring it into its relative situation.

2. The march of the second line in front, is regulated by its own division or battalion of direction, which moves relatively to that of the first line.—In forming in line it will march upon its own points which are parallel to and ascertained in consequence of those of the first.

3. Whe-

3. When the lines break in columns to the front; the ſecond will generally follow thoſe of the firſt.— When the march is to the flanks; the ſecond line will compoſe a ſeparate column, or columns.—When the march is to the rear; the ſecond line will lead in columns.

4. The diſtance betwixt the lines, may be in general ſuppoſed equal to the front of two battalions, and an interval.

5. Second lines are ſeldom compoſed of as many battalions as the firſt; they are often divided into diſtinct bodies, covering ſeparate parts of the firſt line.

6. Second lines will not always remain extended, they will often be formed in column of battalions, or of greater numbers, ready to be moved to any point where their aſſiſtance is neceſſary.

7. Whenever the firſt line breaks and manœuvres by its right to face to the left, or by its left to face to the right.—The movements of the ſecond line are free and unembarraſſed, and it may turn round the manœuvring flank of the firſt line, and take its new poſition behind it, by extending itſelf parallel to that direction, how oblique ſoever it may be.

8. The central movement generally required from the ſecond line to conform to that of the firſt, is equivalent to that line marching in two columns of platoons, from near the center obliquely to the front, and from that ſituation forming to both flanks.

9. The movements of the central columns being well underſtood.—Thoſe of the battalions of the wings, are ſimilar in the two lines.

 10. The

10. The officer commanding the second line, must always be properly informed of the nature of the change to be made by the first, that he may readily determine his corresponding movements.

11. It requires much attention—To conduct heads of battalion columns of both lines nearly parallel to their lateral ones, and perpendicularly or diagonally to front or rear, according to the nature of the movement.—To determine with precision, and in due time, their points in the new line, that wavering and uncertainty of march may be avoided.—In great movements to allow the soldier every facility of motion, without encreasing the distances of divisions, and to require the most exact attention on entering the new line and in forming.—To avoid obstacles in the course of marching, but as soon as possible to re-enter the proper path of the column.—While out of that path, the colours of that battalion column may be lowered, (as a mark for the neighbouring column, not to be then entirely regulated by it,) and again advanced when it regains its proper situation.

12. In many cases, and where great concert of movement is not required, a second line may form battalion columns at half distance, each behind its flank nearest to the new position, and relative points being prepared, each will march up, and prolong the line.

13. All the battalions of a second line, must at the completion of every change of position, find themselves placed in the same relative situation with respect to the first, as they were in before the commencement of the movement.

14. All changes of position of a first line are made according to one of the modes already prescribed; in general

general in critical situations they are made on a fixed flank, or central point, and by the echellon march of platoons.—But the movements of a second line being protected, more complicated, and embracing more ground, are made by the march of battalion columns regulated by a certain determined division of the line.

15. In all cases where a change of position is made on a flank or central point of the *first line*, the movement of its *corresponding* point of the second line determines the new relative situation of that second line.

16. *To find this point*, it is necessary to premise, that if a circle is described from any point A. of a first line AE with a radius equal to the distance betwixt the two lines; then its corresponding point a, in the second line will be always in the circumference of that circle, at such place as the second line becomes a tangent to the circle.—Should the first line therefore make a change of position AR either on a flank or central point A; its *corresponding* point a, at that time in the second line, will move so as still to preserve and halt in its relative situation a, 2; and by the movement and halt of that part, preceded by the one d, of *interfection*, every other part of the second line either by following them, or by yielding from them is regulated, and directed.—Betwixt the old and new situation of the corresponding point, a, and equidistant from each lies the point d, where the old and new positions of the second line *interfect*, and which is a most material one in the movement of that line. Fig. 117. 12

S. 208. *When two Lines change Poſition on a central point of the firſt Line.*

1. A. is the point on which the change is to be Fig. 129. made; a. is obviouſly its correſponding point in the ſecond line whoſe diſtance in paces is known.—The direction of the firſt line AR, being aſcertained, it becomes immediately neceſſary to mark the *correſponding* point a, 2. in the ſecond line, and alſo the point of *interſection* d, that the prolongation of that line may be alſo determined.—From the point A, therefore and in a direction perpendicular to the new line, a perſon accurately paces the known diſtance between the two lines, and halts at a, 2; and from thence obſerves by his eye, the perpendicular to the line which he has juſt paced, and alſo its interſection with the ſecond line, which gives the platoon of point d, together with the direction of the new ſecond line.——The points a, 2. and d, being thus fixed, the lines proceed to make their movement, viz. the firſt line by the echellon march (S. 195); the ſecond line B breaks inward to the platoon d; that platoon moves its pivot flank along the new line followed by all thoſe betwixt it, and a, till a, arrives at the point a, 2.—The other platoons and battalions of the ſecond line move relatively to the part a, d, the whole performing the preciſe operation already detailed in the change of poſition of the line on a movable central point S. 185.

2. But in order to accelerate the movement of the ſecond line in *central* changes; a platoon or flank point

point o, as much beyond a, as a, is removed from d, may be taken; this point is evidently the one, which will rest at the point of interfection d, when a, is arrived and halted at a, 2.——As soon therefore as the points o, d, are ascertained and without waiting for the progressive movement of this center part of the line, every thing that is in rear of o, may march and form in the new position, regarding o, 2, as its leading flank point, and every thing that fronts to d, regarding d, 2, as its leading flank point will march and form upon it, in the new line accordingly. S. 186. Fig. 129.

g. In order the better to ascertain the parallel direction of the new second line, 2 persons separated from each other about 100 paces, may set out from different points of the new first line, and accurately pace the known distance of the second; when they halt, the line of their prolongation gives the new direction, and also the interfection of the second lines. ——Or if the first line points on any very distant object the second line from the point a, 2, will be readily judged to pass a very little behind that object. Fig. 129.

S. 209. *When two Lines change Position forward, on a flank of the first Line.*

The direction of the first line being ascertained, that line will march into it by the echellon march,
Fig. 130. *S.* 195. In the mean time the corresponding flank point a, 2, in the new second line having been taken, and also the point d, in the intersection of the two lines; these points serve as the base of formation.—— The second line will break into open column facing to the platoon d, of intersection; the whole will proceed as in *S.* 185. that platoon marching along the new line till a, arrives at a, 2: and when the other battalions which have moved forward are anew arranged in open column, they wheel up into line.

S. 210. *When two Lines change position backward, on a flank of the first Line.*

The direction of the first line being ascertained, that line will march into it, by the echellon movement to the rear, S. 195.—The corresponding points a, 2, and d, in the new second line serving as a base of formation, having been ascertained as well as the Fig. 131. point o, that line breaks into open column facing to the point of intersection: The part of the line between a, and o, marches on to the point of intersection, and from thence prolongs the new lines: The part of the line behind o, regarding d, as its leading flank point of formation, will march and form upon it, in the new line accordingly. S. 186.

S. 211. *When two formed Lines wheel into open Column, march to a Flank, change Direction, and take up a new Position.*

Fig. 132. 1. *If the new position is a retired one.*—Both lines wheel into open column (suppose the left in front) and move on.—C. is a point where the head of the first line is to change its direction into that of C. D. by wheeling on its pivot flank: The leader of the second line being apprized of this point sends forward to ascertain his corresponding point c. and his parallel direction c. d.; these two points become the base of formation for the second line, and d. is in the intersection of the old and new lines.—Both columns proceed in their first direction, and when the first line arrives at C. the head wheels on its pivot into the direction C. D. followed by the rest of its column; but the second line then changing its head on the point c. moves towards it, there to enter its corresponding direction.—The first line halts, and such parts of it as are in the new direction remain so; while the rear of the column, by the movement of S. 182. gains the new direction, and by wheeling up forms in line; or, if the ground permits, it enters the new line by the echellon march of S. 158, each division first counter-marching by files, and then facing about, so that its rear rank may lead.

2. When the first line halts, if the head division of the second line *has not entered* the new direction, it still moves on to its point of entry c. prolongs the line

line till it arrives behind its correſponding point A. 2. of the firſt line, it then halts, and alſo all ſuch others as have arrived in the new direction, while the rear of the column, which ſince the halt of the firſt line has been gradually (by obliquing) and regularly throwing itſelf to the left, places itſelf in open column on the new direction, and wheels up into line.

3. When the firſt line halts, if the head of the ſecond *has entered* the direction, it moves on till it arrives behind its correſponding point of the firſt one, and the rear of the column obliques to avoid interfering with, and to make place for the forming of the firſt line.—When the head halts, ſuch part of the column as is not in the new direction gains it by the movement of S. 182.

4. If the head of the firſt line when it arrives at E. *waits* till the 2d line arrives at the correſponding point c. they will then proceed equally.—Or, the march of the ſecond line may begin proportionally ſooner than that of the firſt.

5. *If the new poſition is an advanced one.*—The firſt line changes its direction at C. by a wheel to the reverſe hand into C. D. marches on till the head is halted; ſuch part of the column as is not in the new line enters it, by the diviſions of the column wheeling back into echellon, and then marching up ſucceſſively into line.—The ſecond line which has aſcertained its correſponding points c. d. moves on, enters the new direction at d. by a wheel to its reverſe hand, and prolongs the line till it arrives at its flank point, when the whole halt, and the battalions of ſuch part of the column as are not then in the new direction gain it by the movement of *S.* 182. Fig. 133.

6. The

6. The ſecond line muſt take care not to paſs its point d. but after arriving at it muſt wait till the head of the firſt line, which has more ground to go over, arrives equal with it in the new line, it will then move on.

Of the Column of Route.

By companies or other diviſions.

1. The column of route formed by diviſions of the battalion is the foundation of all great diſtant movements, and even of evolutions and manœuvres.—It is in that order that the battalion ſhould at any time be permitted to move; that the columns of an army ſhould perform their marches; that an enemy ſhould be approached; and that ſafety can be inſured to the troops in their tranſitions from one point to another.—All marches are therefore made in column of diviſions of the line, and never on a leſs front than 6 files where the formation is 3 deep, or 4 files where it is 2 deep, nor does any advantage ariſe from ſuch column, if it is an open column, exceeding 16 or 18 file in front, where a conſiderable ſpace is to be gone over.

Diſadvantages of file marching.

2. At no time whatever ought a column of manœuvre or of route to occupy a greater extent of ground in marching than what is equal to its front when in order of battle; no ſituation can require it as an advantage.—Therefore, the marching of great bodies

bodies in file, where improper extension is unavoidable, must be looked upon as an unmilitary practice, and only to be had recourse to when unavoidably necessary.—Where woods, inclosures, and bad or narrow routes absolutely require a march in file, there is no remedy for the delay in forming, and man may be obliged to come up after man; but these circumstances, which should be regarded as exceptions from the primary and desired order of march on a greater front, should tend the more to enforce the great principle of preventing improper distances, and of getting out of so weak a situation as soon as the nature of the ground will allow of the front of the march being increased.

Rate and circumstances of march.

3. In common route marching, the battalion or more considerable column may be carried on at a natural pace of about 75 steps in a minute, or near two miles and a half in an hour: The attention of the soldier is allowed to be relaxed, he moves without the restraint of cadence of step, or carried arms; rear ranks are opened to one or two paces; files are loosened but never confounded; in no situation is the ordered distance between divisions ever to be increased, and the proper flank officers and under-officers remain answerable for them.

Attentions in march.

4. If the column is halted, the whole must be put in march at the same time.—The movement of the head division must be steady and equal; the descending of heights must not be hurried, that the part of the column ascending may properly keep up.—Alterations occasioned by the windings of the route are executed without losing distance.—Soldiers are not to break to avoid mud or small spots of water.—The pivots must trace out such a path for themselves as will best avoid small obstructions, and the men of the divisions will open from, and not press upon their

pivots.—

pivots.—When platoon officers are permitted to be mounted, each will remain on the flank of his division watching over its exactneſs, and that the proper diſtance of march is kept by the flank pivot under the officer appointed to preſerve it.

5. Where the arrival of a column at a given point is to be perfectly punctual, in that caſe the diſtance being known, the head muſt move at an equal cadenced ſtep, and the rear muſt conform; and a perſon, expreſſly appointed, will, at the head of the column, take ſuch ſtep as the nature of the route ſhall permit the column to comply with.

6. Nothing ſo much fatigues troops in a conſiderable column, and is more to be avoided than an inequality of march.—One great reaſon is, that the rear of the column frequently and unneceſſarily deviates from the line which its head traces out; and in endeavouring to regain that line, and their firſt diſtances, the diviſions muſt of courſe run or ſtop, and again take up their march.—It is unneceſſary to attempt the ſame ſcrupulous obſervances in common route marching, as when going to enter into the alignement; but even a general attention to this circumſtance will in that caſe prevent unneceſſary winding in the march, which tends to prolong it, and to harraſs the ſoldier.

7. When the probable required formation of the line will be to a flank, then the column of march is an open one, and, except the cannon, no impediment or circumſtance whatever muſt be allowed betwixt the diviſions or in the intervals of battalions.—When cannon can poſſibly move on the flank of the battalion they ought, and mounted officers or bat-horſes muſt not be permitted betwixt the diviſions.—If the probable formation may be to the front, then diſtances

5

distances are more closed up, and bat-horses, &c. may be allowed betwixt the brigades of a column, but not betwixt the battalions of a brigade.

8. It is always time well employed to halt the head of a considerable column, and enlarge an opening, or repair a bad step in the road, rather than to diminish the front, or lengthen out the line of march. No individual is to presume to march on a less front than what the leader of the column directs, and all doublings must therefore come from the head only.— The preservation of the original front of march, on all occasions, is a point of the highest consequence, and it is a most meritorious service in any officer to prevent all unnecessary doublings, or to correct them as soon as made; no advantage can arrive from them, and therefore each commanding officer, when he arrives near the cause, should be assured that it is necessary before he permits his battalion so to double: On all occasions he should continue his march on the greatest front, that, without crowding, the road or overtures will allow, although the regiment or divisions before him may be marching on a narrower front.

9. All opening made for the march of a column should be sufficient for the greatest front on which it is to march, they should all be of the same width, otherwise each smaller one becomes a defile. Overtures of march.

10. At all points of increasing or diminishing the front of the march, an intelligent officer, per battalion or brigade, should be stationed to see that it is performed with celerity; and the commandant of a considerable column should have constant reports and inspections made that the column is moving with proper regularity; he should have officers in advance to apprize him of difficulties to be avoided, or obsta- Avoiding of difficulties in the march.

 cles

cles to be paſſed, and ſhould himſelf apply every proper means to obviate ſuch as may occur in the march. (And at no time are ſuch helps more neceſſary than when regiments are acting in line on broken ground, and when their movements are combined with thoſe of others.)—When the column arrives near its object of formation or manœuvre, the ſtricteſt attention of officers and men is to be reſumed, and each individual is to be at his poſt.

11. The great principle on all occaſions of diminiſhing or increaſing the front of the column in march is, that ſuch part as doubles or forms up ſhall ſlacken or quicken its pace, as is neceſſary to conform to the part which has no ſuch operation to perform, but which continues its uniform march, without the leaſt alteration, as if no ſuch proceſs was going on; and if this is obſerved, diſtances can never be loſt, or the column lengthened out.—Unleſs the unremitting attention and intelligence of officers commanding battalions and their diviſions are given to this object, diſorder and conſtant ſtops and runs take place in the column; the ſoldier is improperly and unneceſſarily harraſſed; diſeaſe ſoon gains ground in a corps thus ill-conducted, which is not to be depended on in any combined arrangement, is unequal to any effort when its exertion may be required, and is ſoon ruined from a neglect of the firſt and moſt important of military duties.

Importance of exactneſs in the march.

12. The moſt important exerciſe that troops can attend to is the march in column of route.—No calculation can be made on columns which do not move with an aſcertained regularity, and great fatigue ariſes to the ſoldier: A general cannot depend on execution, and therefore can make no combination of time or diſtance in the arrival of columns at their ſeveral points: In many ſituations an improper extended

tended column will be liable to be beat in detail, and before it can be formed.—Troops that are feldom affembled for the manœuvres of war can hardly feel the neceffity of the modes in which a confiderable body of infantry muft march and move.

Columns and their dif-tances.

13. The diftance of columns from each other, during a march, depends on the circumftances of ground, and the object of that march, with regard to future formations.—The more columns in which a confiderable corps marches, the lefs extent in depth will it take up, the lefs frequent will be its halts, and the more fpeedily can it form in order of battle to the front.

Combinations of march.

14. On the combinations of march, and on their execution by the component parts of the body, does the fuccefs of every military operation or enterprize depend.—To fulfil the intentions of the chief every concurrent exertion of the fubordinate officer is *required*, and the beft calculated difpofitions, founded on local knowledge, muft fail if there is a want of that punctuality of execution which every general muft truft to, and has a right to expect from the leaders of his columns.

Nature of marches.

15. The compofition of the columns of an army muft always depend on the nature of the country and the objects of the movement.—Marches made *parallel* to the front of the enemy will generally be performed by the lines on which the army is encamped, each marching by its flank, and occupying when in march the fame extent of ground as when formed in line.—Marches made *perpendicular* to the front of the enemy, either advancing or retiring, will be covered by ftrong van or rear guards.—The columns will be formed of confiderable divifions of the army, each generally compofed both of cavalry

and infantry; they will move at half or quarter distance, and the nature of the country will determine which arm precedes.

General objects in marches to the front.

16. During a march to the *front*, the separation of the heads of the columns must unavoidably be considerable; but, when they approach the enemy, they must be so regulated and directed as to be able to occupy the intermediate spaces, if required to form in line.—Some one column must determine the relative situation of the others, and divisions must be more closed up than in a march to a flank, and in proportion as they draw near to the enemy must exactness and attention increase. The general, in consequence of the observations he has made, will determine on his disposition; the columns which are now probably halted and collected will be subdivided and multiplied; each body will be directed on its point of formation, and the component parts of each will in due time disengage from the general column, and form in line.

General objects in marches to the rear.

17. The safety of marches to the *rear* must depend on particular dispositions, on strong covering rear guards, and on the judicious choice of such posts as will check the pursuit of the enemy.—In these marches to front or rear, the divisions of the second line generally follow or lead those of the first, and all their formations are relative thereto. The heavy artillery and carriages of an army form a particular object of every march, and must be directed according to the circumstances of the day.—The safety of the march, by the arrangement of detachments and posts to cover the front, rear, or flanks of the columns, depends also on many local and temporary reasons, but are an essential part of the general disposition.

General

General Remarks.

1. All these Operations in Line, Column, or Echellon, are applied according to circumſtances.—As *Counter-movements of Defence.*—*Movements of previous Formation.*—*Movements of Attack*—as well as *Movements of Retreat.*

2. Where there is equal ſkill in the execution of movements, the *defenſive* alteration of poſition is ſooner made than the *offenſive* one, as much leſs ground is gone over to oppoſe than to attack; the great advantage however attending the latter is, that the meaſure being previouſly determined on, every thing is prepared for rapid execution before the deſign is obvious; whereas the counter-movement, depending on the appearance of the moment, requires quick obſervation, immediate deciſion, inſtant arrangement, and a diſpoſition ſimple and that cannot produce hurry and confuſion in the execution.—It is in theſe ſituations that the juſtneſs of diſtances and of the march in columns allows of deciſive operations, which durſt not be attempted, unleſs the moving body could be depended on as ready at every inſtant to form up in complete order.—Manœuvre will chiefly operate where an enemy is inferior in number, inexpert in movement, weakly poſted, and where the weak point is found out and attacked before he can move to ſtrengthen it. Advantage of offenſive movements.

3. If the flank of one body is thrown forward, by the ſame means may that of the other be thrown back.—If one body prolongs its line to outflank, the Counter-movements of defence.

the other may by the fame movement maintain its relative fituation.—Whatever change of pofition is made by one body, the other may counteract it by a fimilar change.—If the wing of one body is refufed, the wing of the other may be advanced to feize an advantage.

Movements of previous formation.

4. A body of troops, which has a confiderable march to make previous to the *attack*, muft always approach an enemy in one or more columns, at open or other diftances, according to circumftances.—Some general knowledge of an enemy's fituation determines the manner in which he is approached, the compofition of the columns, the flank of each which leads, and their combination in forming.—A nearer view determines a perfeverance in the firft direction, or a change in the leading flanks, and direction of the columns, in order to form in the fpeedieft and moft advantageous manner.

Original pofitions.

5. *Original Pofitions* are taken up from the connected movements of columns of march, and entered upon in fome of the modes prefcribed.—Different feints are ufed to prevent an early knowledge of the pofition intended to be taken, or the point to be attacked, and light troops, cavalry and artillery, where the ground, &c. allows, cover all movements of the infantry.—Such original pofition is either *parallel* or *oblique* to that of the enemy pofted, and is often changed previous to the attack.—When a confiderable corps of troops is to act offenfively, it muft form in line at lateft within 1200, or 1500 paces of a pofted enemy, unlefs the ground particularly favours, and covers from the fire of his artillery, the enfilade of which is what chiefly prevents bodies in column from approaching nearer; and that fpace, under the unceafing fire of their own artillery, troops in line will march over in 18 minutes.—However quickly

quickly columns could move up close to an enemy, yet, as they must then form in line, no time would be gained, and their loss be heavier than when the original formation is made at a due distance.

6. From *parallel* position the attack is made either in line, or by a flank of the line in echellon, that flank being reinforced, and the other refused; or, from a new and advantageous position taken up and not provided against by the enemy.—From *oblique* position the attack is directed against a comparatively weak point of the enemy.—Attacks from the *center* are more liable to enfilade, and sooner guarded against than from the flank.—It is generally wished to post one wing, and refuse it, and to make the attack with the other, reinforced by detached corps, to which the whole strength of the second line is endeavoured to be added: and for these purposes the movement in *echellon*, the *change of position* which gains the flank of the enemy, the *march* on one or more lines, and the *passage* of lines, when redoubled ones are destined to replace each other, are particularly applied. Movements of attack.

7. General movements of *Retreat* executed by an army must be considered as combinations of columns of march, covered by positions and a strong rear guard.—Troops are occasionally taken out of the retiring columns of march to occupy positions and heights; they remain till the rear has passed, and then become the rear guard; this they continue to be, till they find other troops in like manner posted; these last in their turn become also the rear guard, and in this way are the troops of columns in such situations relieved.—A rear guard will fall back by the *retreat in line*—the *chequered retreat*—the *passage of lines*—the *echellon* changes of position. Movements of retreat.

8. When

8. When a confiderable line formed in front of an enemy muft retire or relinquifh an attack made, or intended, one wing ought to be originally fo pofted, that the other, by fome of the above movements, can fall back upon it, and take a new pofition, being protected in the operation by the enfilade of the pofted wing, which in its turn can fall back upon the other.—The mixed confiderations, and fupport of CAVALRY, INFANTRY, and ARTILLERY, on fuch occafions, require a very intricate difcuffion.

D. D.

End of FOURTH PART.

MILITARY REGULATIONS,

Directions to the Bookbinder.

To be bound in One Volume, in the following Order,

Title Page, and Adjutant General's Order,

Introductory Preface.

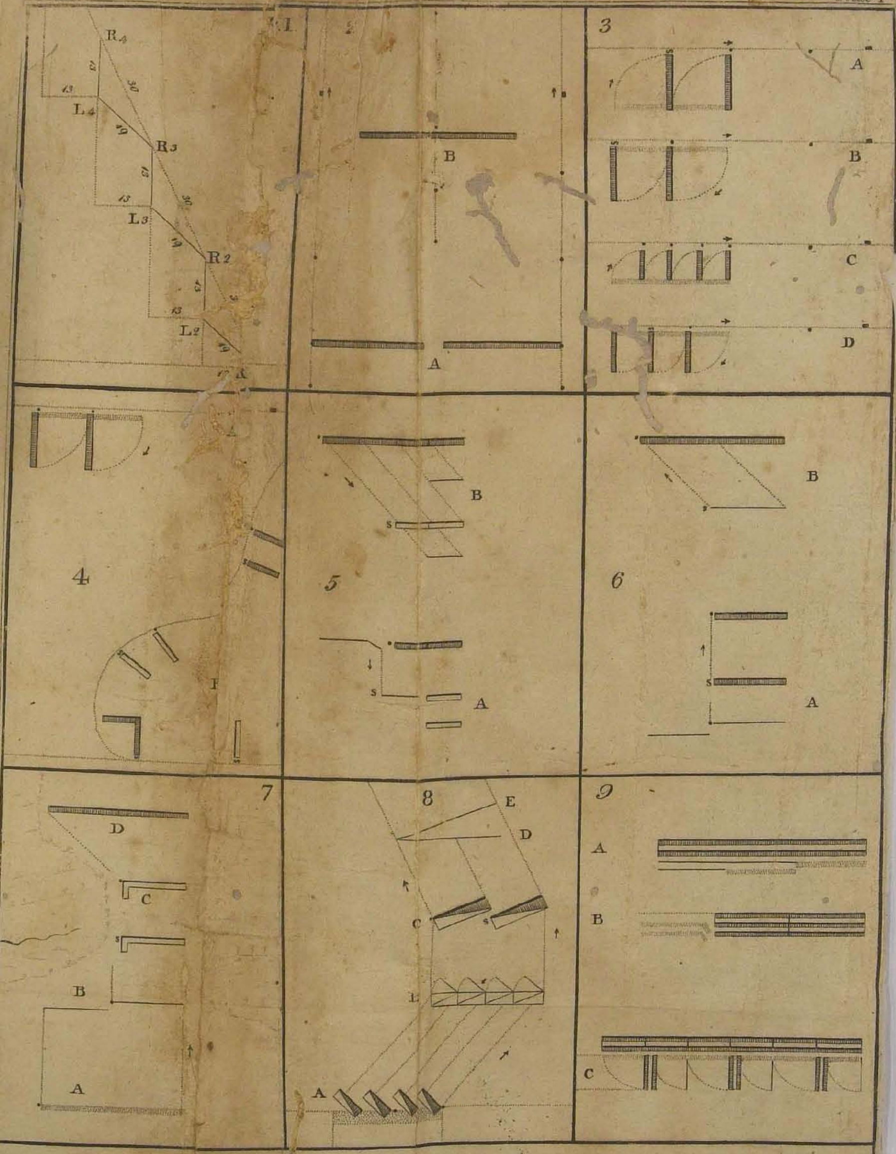
Contents of the Four Component Parts.

Parts { First.
Second.
Third.

Inspection or Review——Light Infantry.

Part——Fourth.

The Plates in their proper Order, from 1 to 16, at the end.



The Positions are in general represented

The first by Yellow.......

Intermediate { Blue....... Buff....... Green.......

The last by Red.......

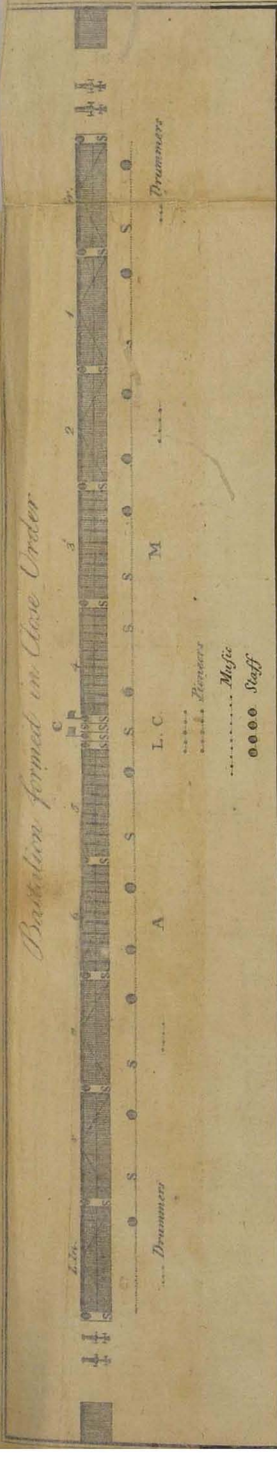
The dotted Lines & Arrows express the direction of the Movement.

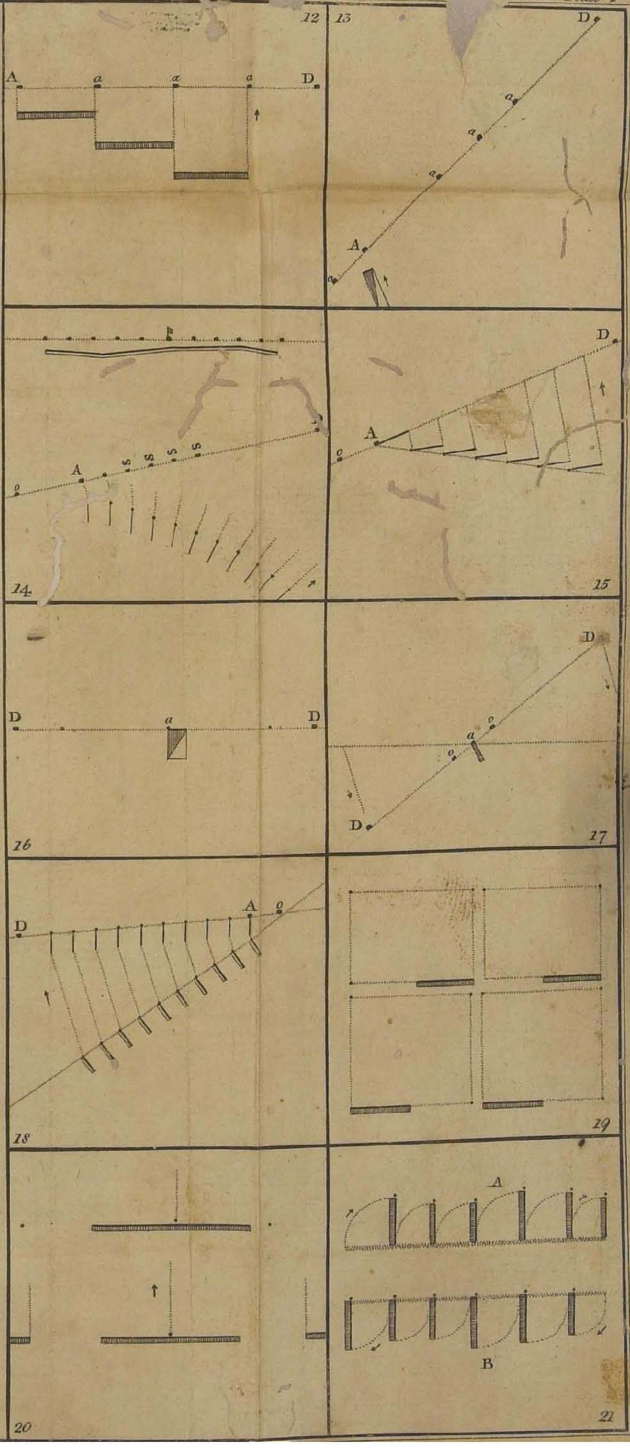
The round Dots . express the position of Leaders of Divisions.

The Square Dots ▪ express points of March or Formation.

The Letters AB. &c. denote different Movements in the same Figure.

Plate 2


Battalion formed in Close Order
Drummers
L.C.
M
A
Pioneers
Music
Staff
Drummers


12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
A
D
a
B

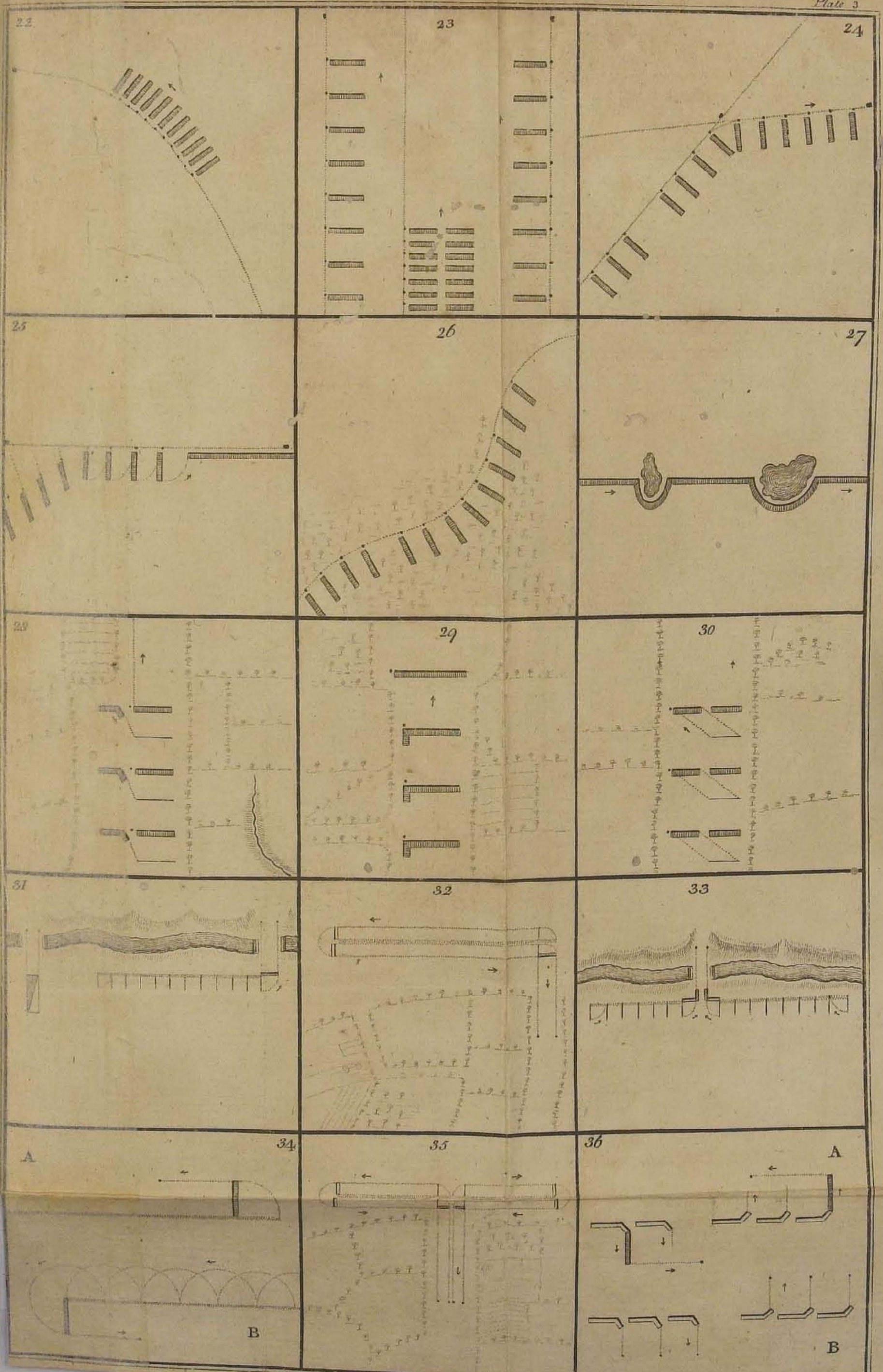
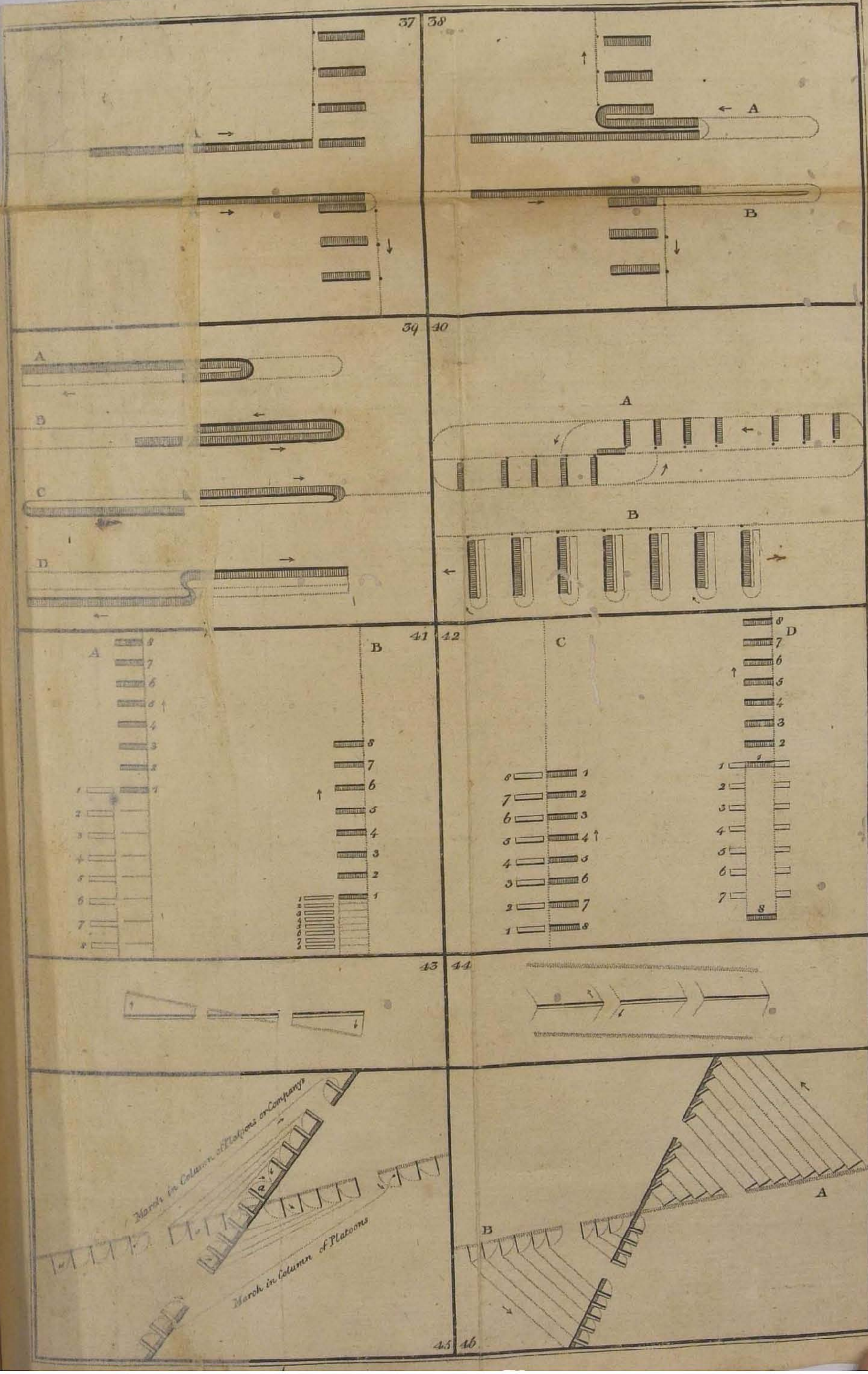
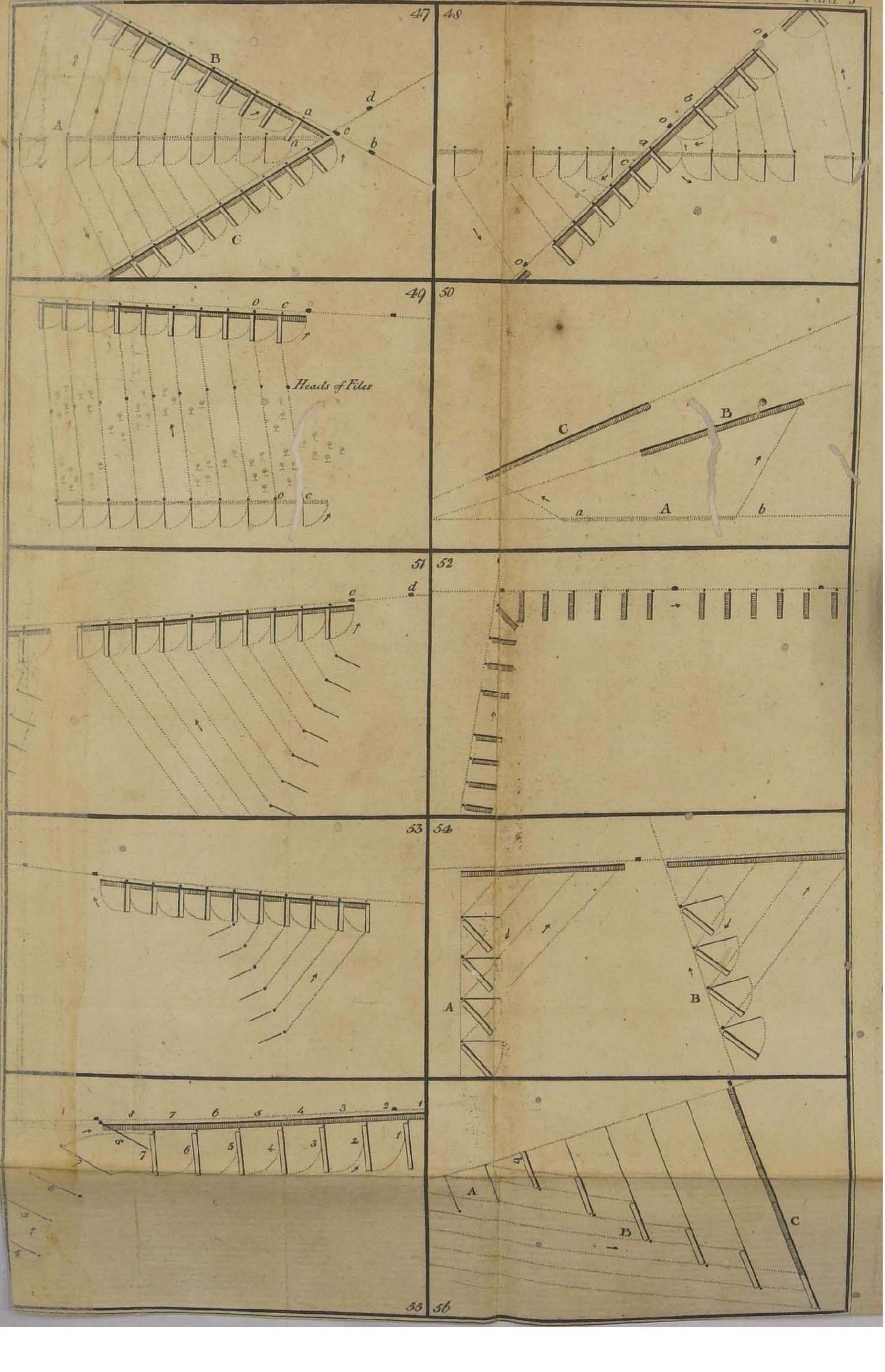
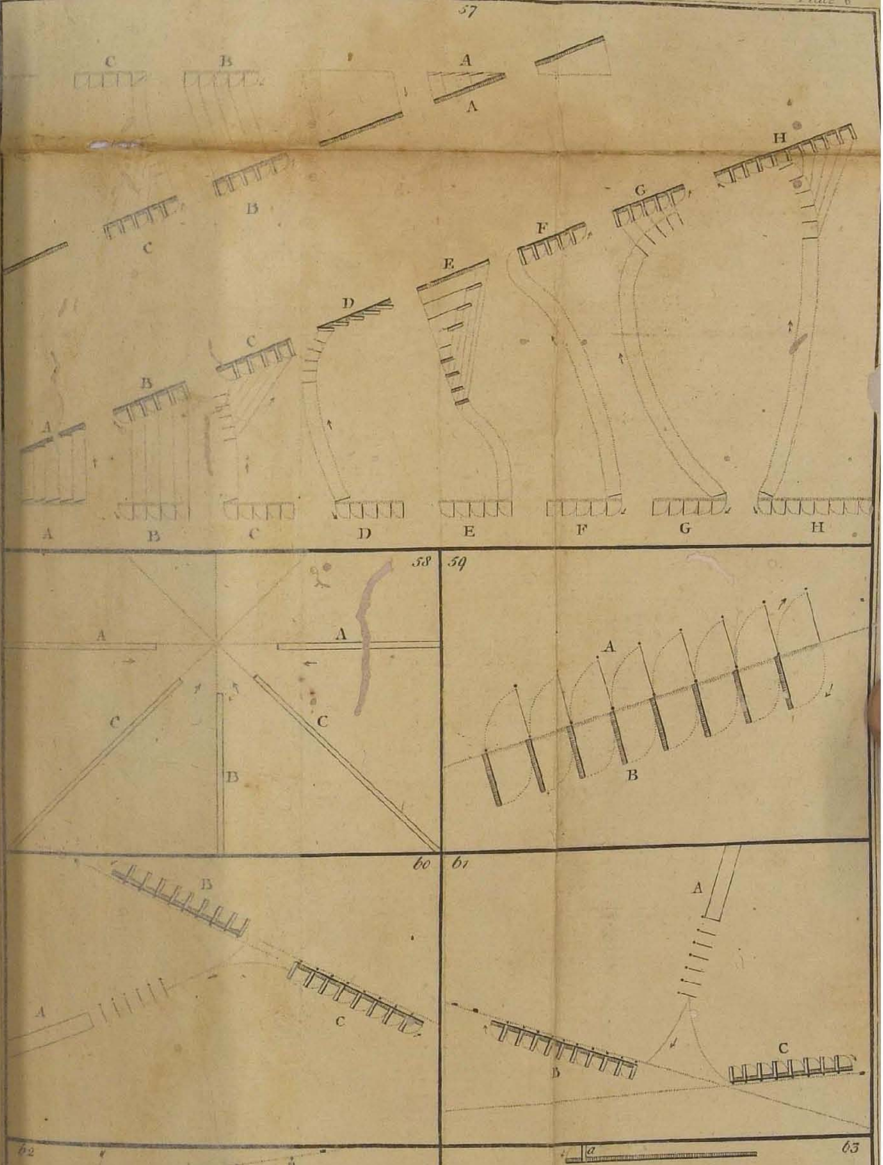
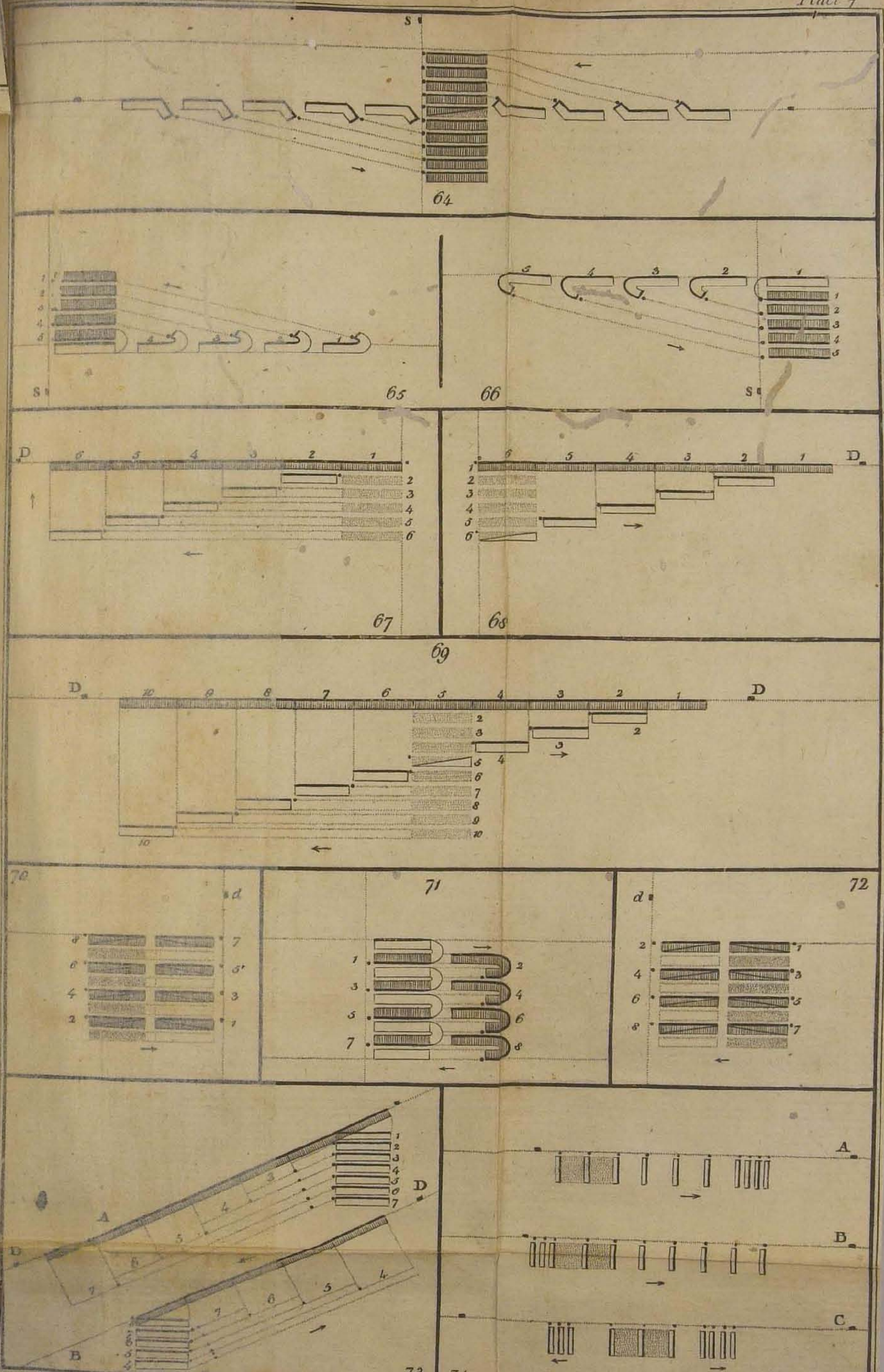

22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
A
34
B
35
36
A
B

Plate 4.


37
38
A
B
39
40
A
B
C
D
41
42
A
B
C
D
43
44
March in Column of Platoons or Companys
March in Column of Platoons
A
B
45
46


47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
A
B
C
a
b
c
d
o
Heads of Files
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8


57
A
B
C
D
E
F
G
H
58
59
60
61
62
63
a
b
c


64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74

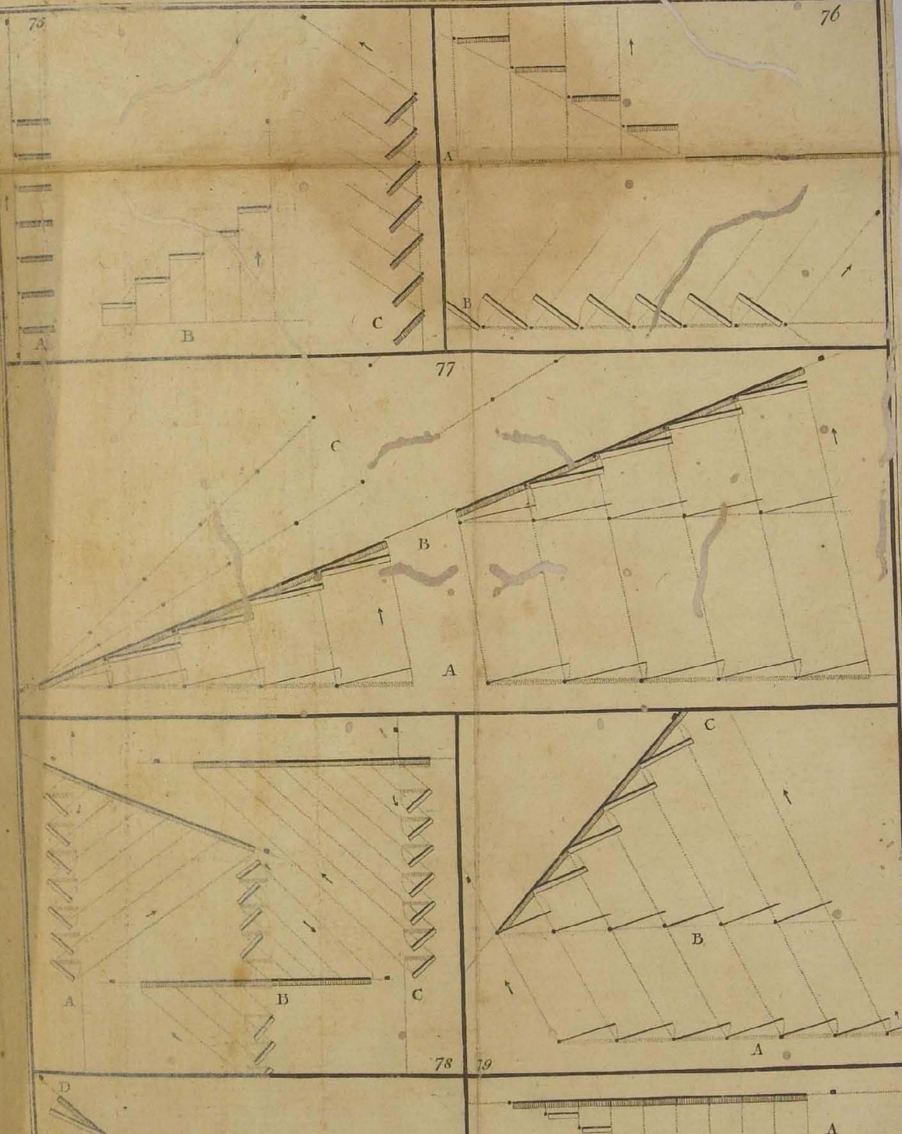
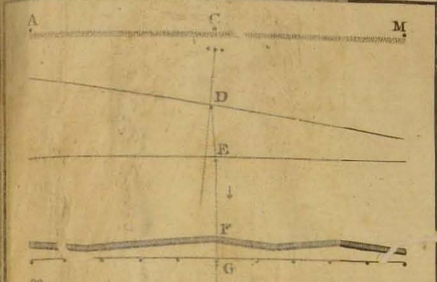
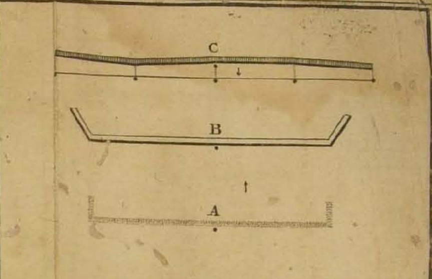

75
A
B
C
76
A
B
77
C
B
A
A
B
C
C
B
A
78
79
D
D
80
A
C
B
81

Plate 9



82



83

84

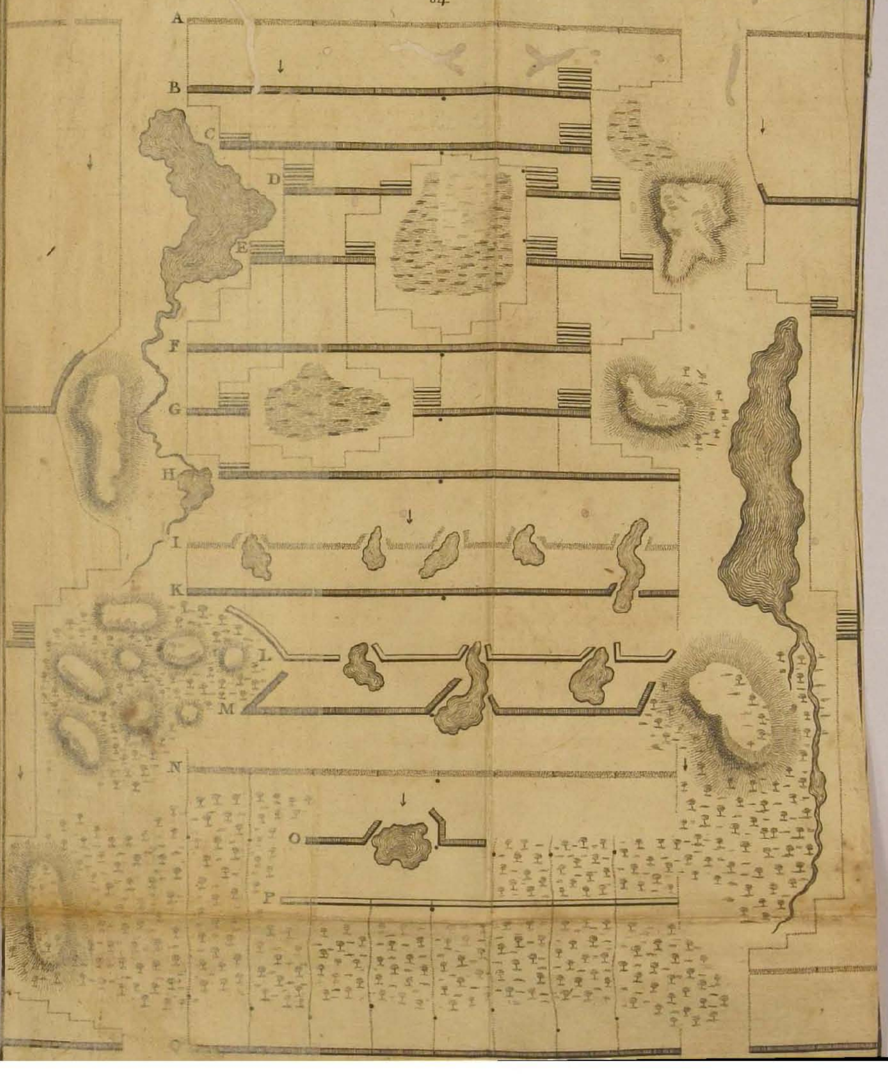
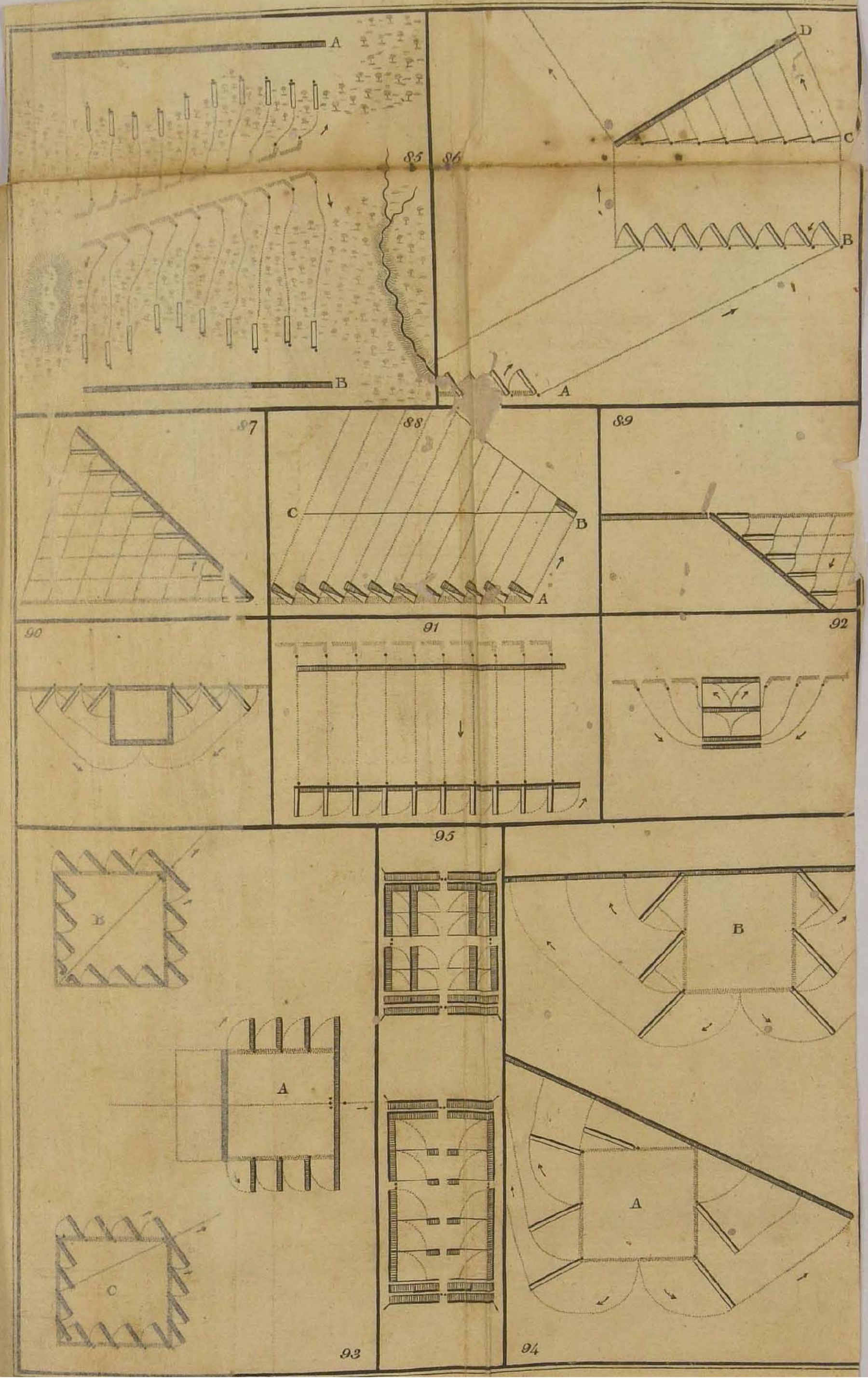


Plate 10



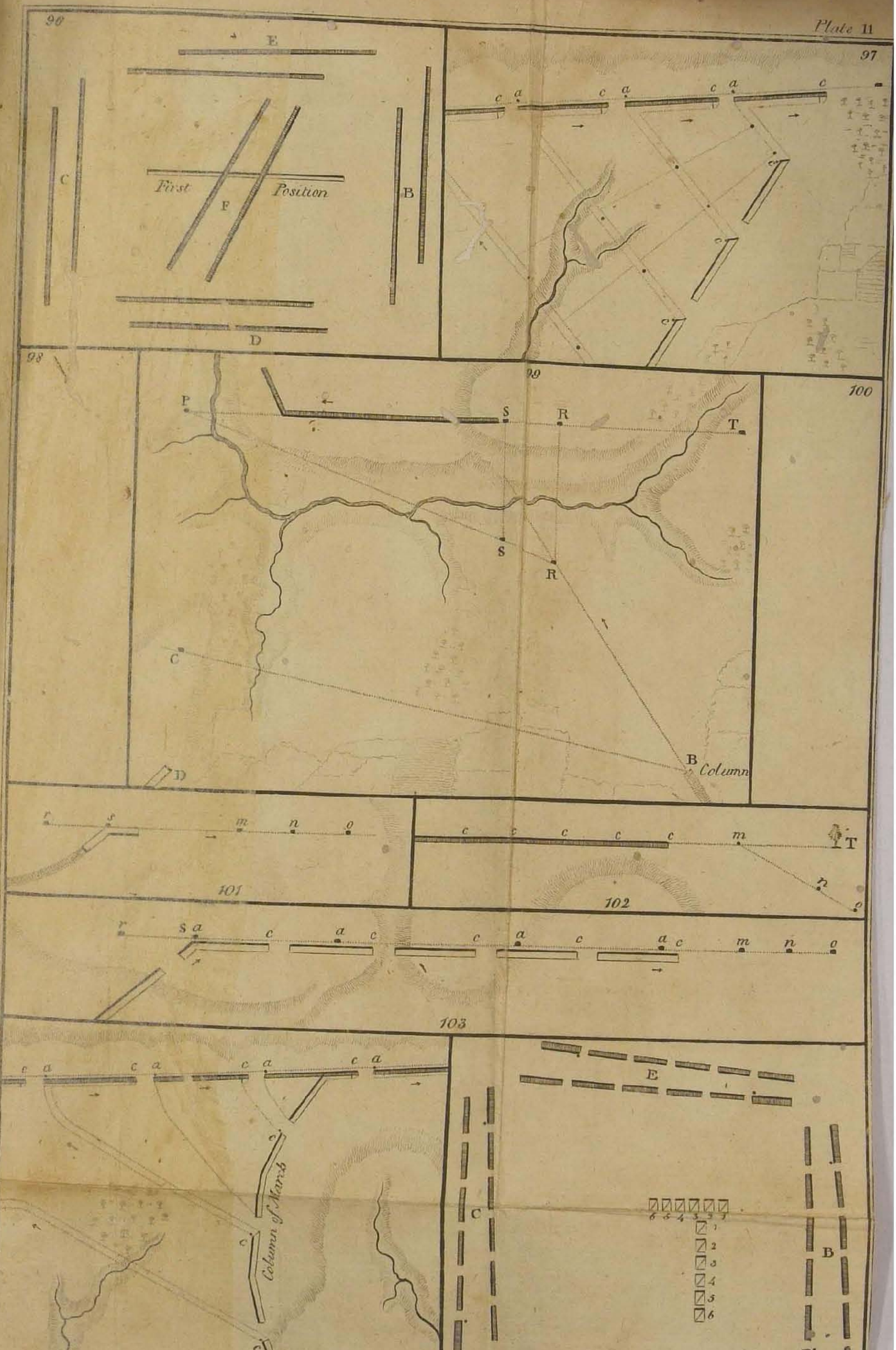
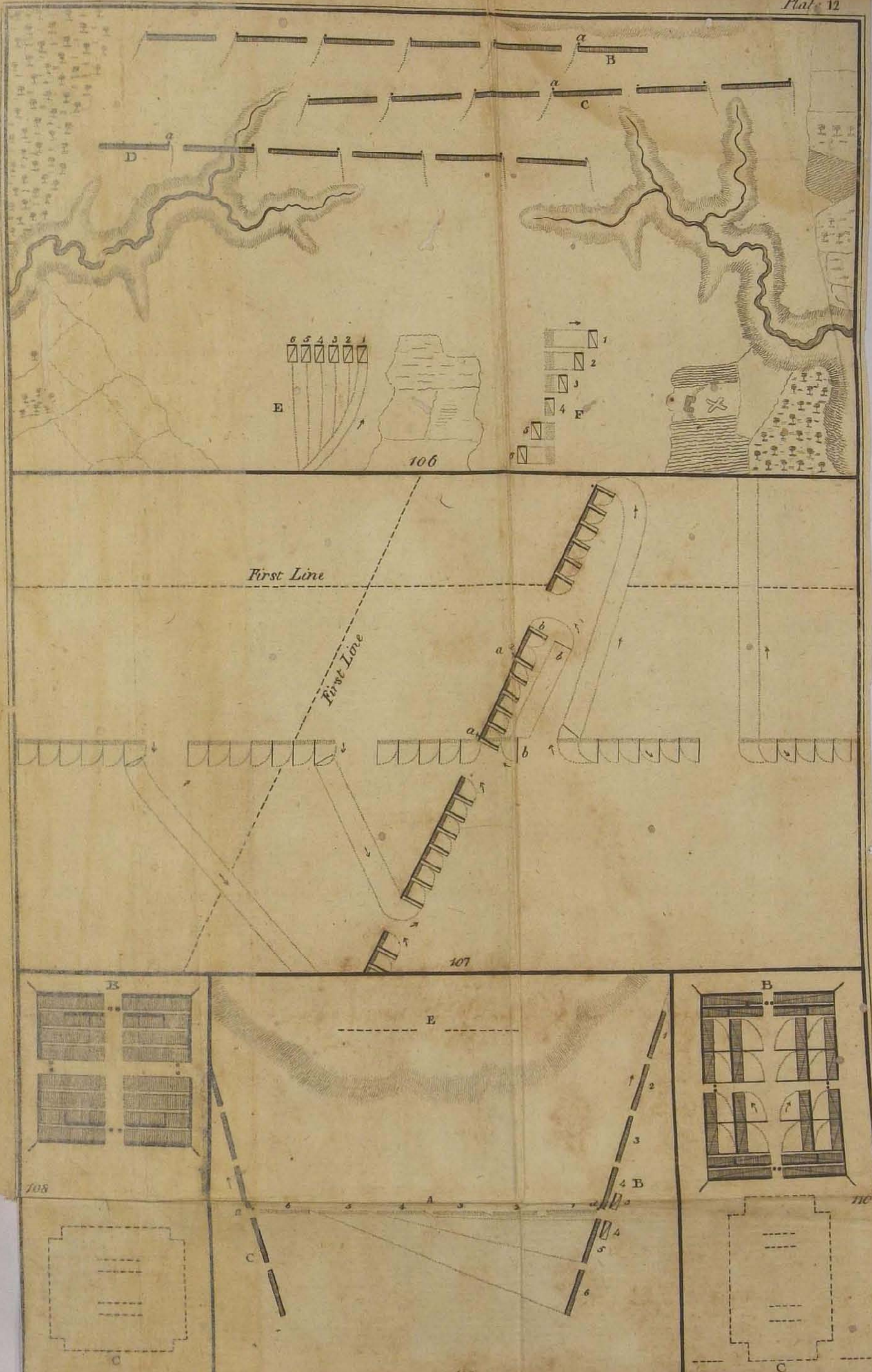


Plate 11
96
E
First
Position
F
C
B
D
97
c a c a c a c
98
99
P
S
R
T
S
R
C
D
B
Column
100
r s m n o
101
c c c c c m
T
n
o
102
r S a c a c c a c a c m n o
103
c a c a c a c a
Column of March
c
c
c
104
E
C
B
D
6 5 4 3 2 1
1
2
3
4
5
6
105

Plate 12


a
B
a
C
a
D
6 5 4 3 2 1
E
1
2
3
4
F
5
6
106
First Line
First Line
a
b
b
a
b
107
B
E
1
2
3
4 B
A
C
4
5
6
108
B
110
C
C
109

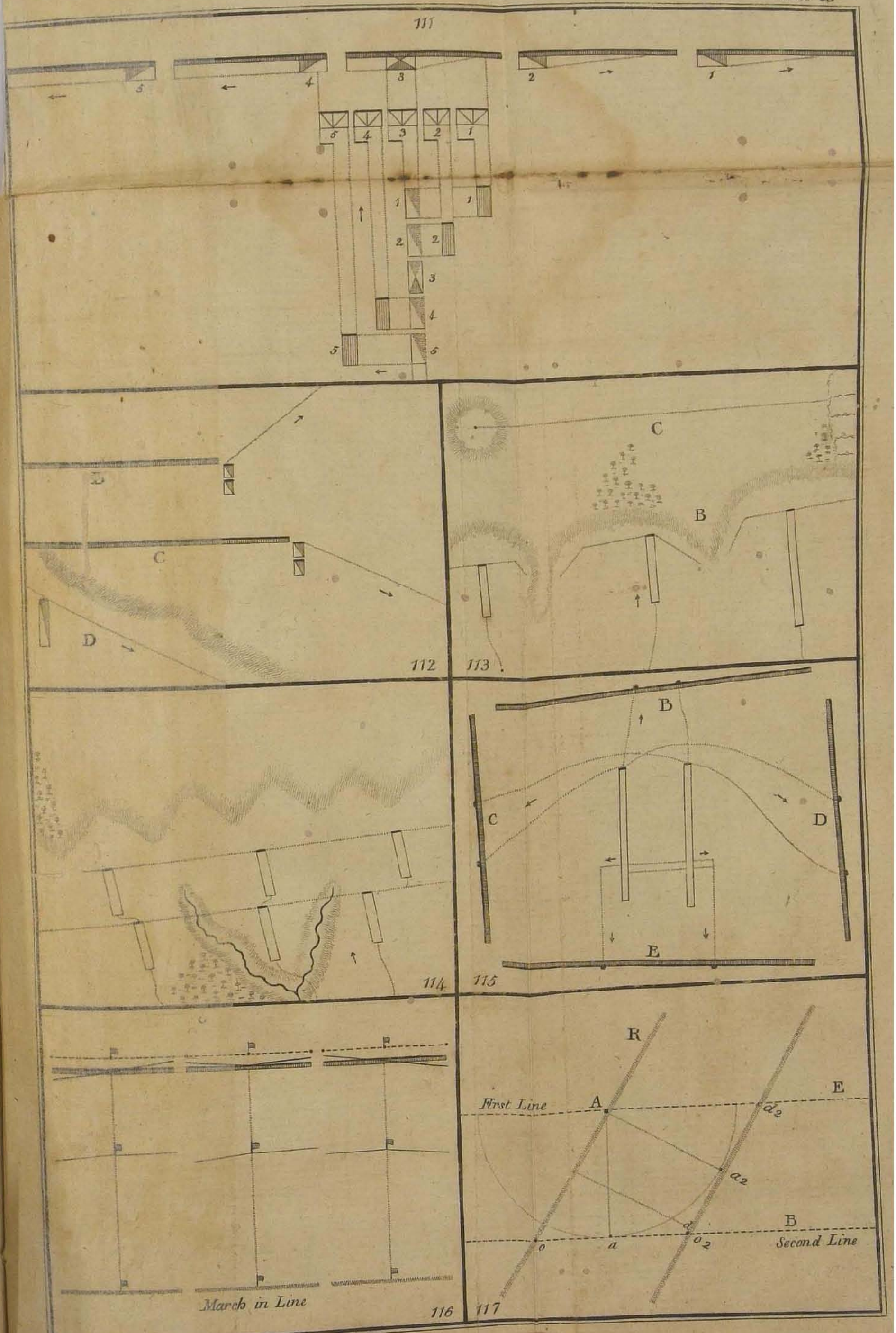

111
5
4
3
2
1
C
D
112
113
C
B
114
115
B
C
D
E
March in Line
116
117
R
E
First Line
A
d_2
a_2
B
o
a
o_2
Second Line

Plate 14

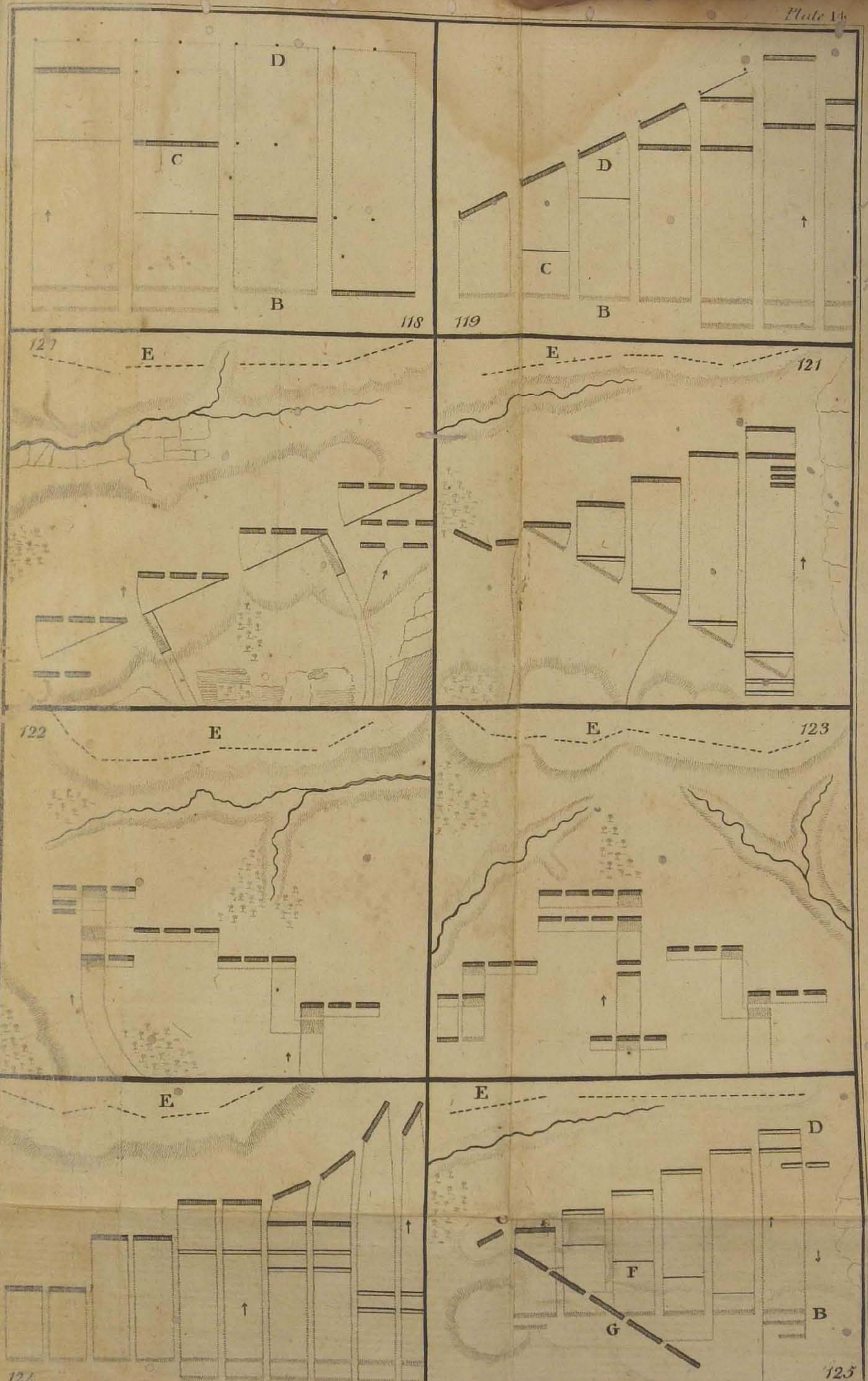
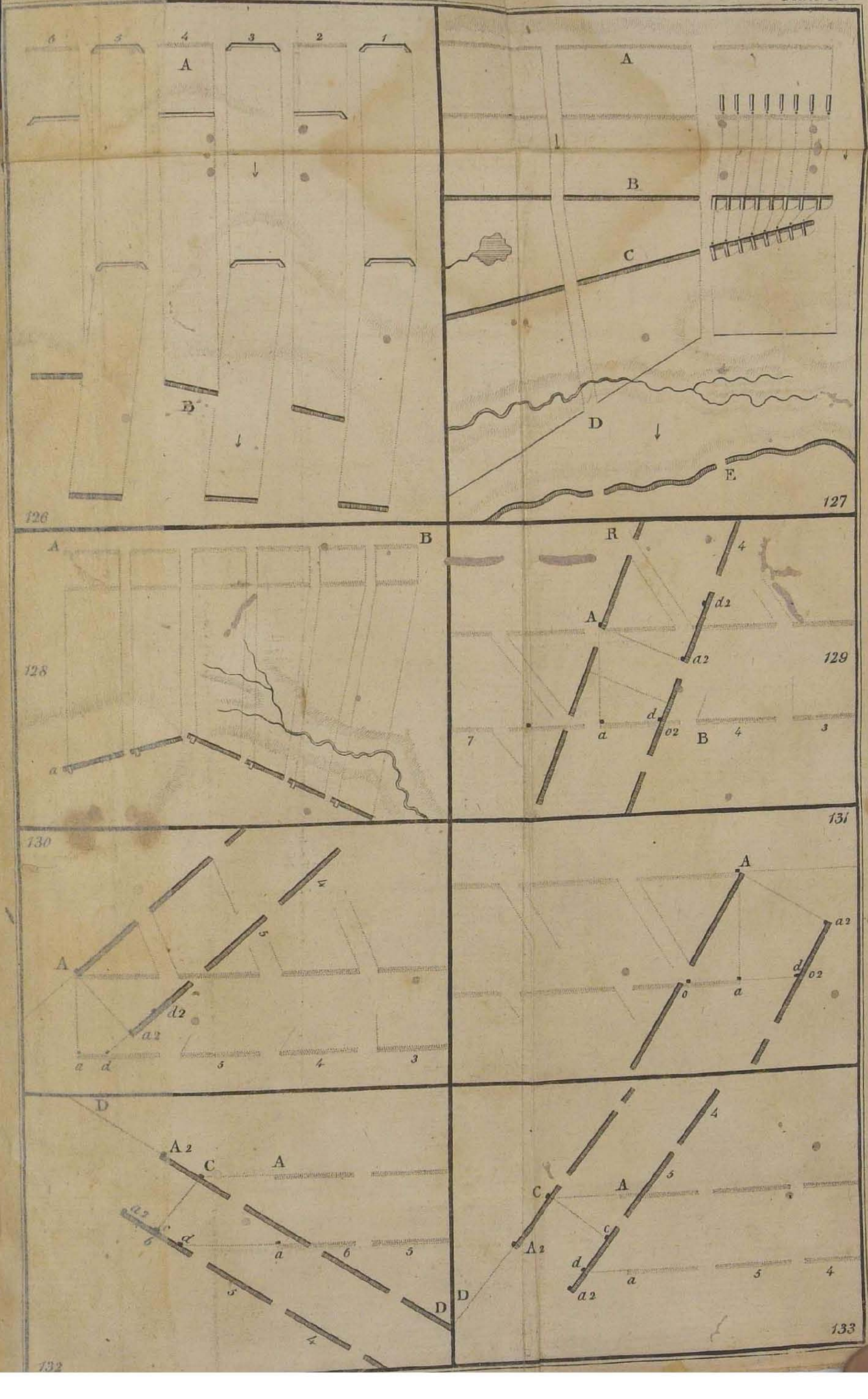


Plate 15



6 5 4 3 2 1
A
B
126
A
B
C
D
E
127
A
B
128
a
R
4
d2
A
a2
129
d
a
o2
B
4
3
7
131
130
A
4
5
d2
a2
a
d
5
4
3
A
a2
d
o
a
o2
D
A2
C
A
a2
6
d
a
6
5
5
4
D
D
132
4
5
C
A
A2
c
d
a
5
4
a2
133

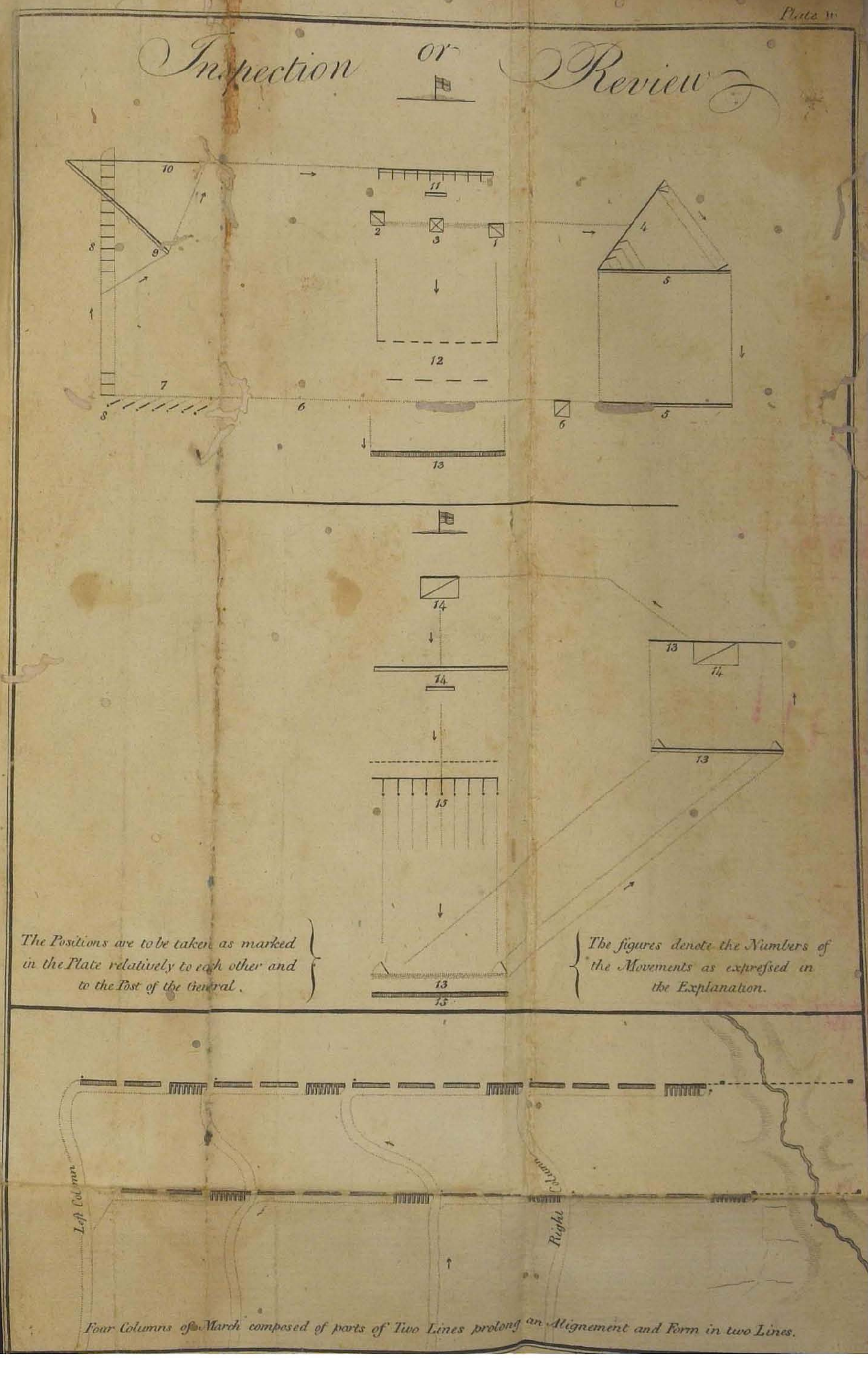


Plate
Inspection or Review
10
11
8
9
2
3
1
4
5
12
7
8
6
6
5
13
14
14
13
14
13
15
The Positions are to be taken as marked in the Plate relatively to each other and to the Post of the General.
The figures denote the Numbers of the Movements as expressed in the Explanation.
13
15
Left Column
Right Column
Four Columns of March composed of parts of Two Lines prolong an Alignement and Form in two Lines.